

SWEDISH GRAMMAR AND READER

by

AXEL JOHAN UPPVALL

Professor of Scandinavian Languages
University of Pennsylvania

assisted by

GÖSTA ROBERT STENE

Chairman of the Modern Language Department
Admiral Billard Academy



DISTRIBUTOR

ALBERT BONNIER PUBLISHING HOUSE
561 THIRD AVENUE
New York, N. Y.

Send
100-11
100-262

P R E F A C E

The purpose of this book is to enable any student of average mentality and diligence to read Swedish "intelligently and with a fair amount of ease" in about one scholastic year. Although the work has been planned chiefly for beginners in institutions of college grade, it should also be suitable for beginners in well-equipped high schools, and for second year students of Swedish who have used brief introductory works during the first year.

The table of contents will reveal that while the book recognizes the "reading objective" in modern language study, it also emphasizes the study of grammar. The latter should, however, be made entirely subservient to the reading aim.

Part I, Pronunciation. Swedish, like English, is a language whose orthography falls short of giving an accurate picture of its pronunciation. To remove this obstacle to progress, the International Phonetic Alphabet has been introduced in this book. By this means, not only the sounds of vowels and consonants are easily mastered, but also the dynamic accent, and the musical accent which involves gradation of both tone and stress within the same word. Teachers who do not care to use the transcript may, of course, disregard it.

Part II, Accidence, Syntax, Reading. The general plan of each lesson is: A. Grammar, i.e., form and function of the parts of speech, treated *en bloc* so far as possible; B. Reading Selection; C. Vocabulary to reading selection; E. Oral Composition; F. Written Composition, English into Swedish. Beginning with Lesson XVII the student is referred to the general vocabulary.

A charming story for boys by the famous Finlander, Zacharias Topelius, constitutes the reading material for lessons XI - VII. Parallel phonetic transcription accompanies the text. Of the remaining reading selections, sixteen consist of standard prose dealing with a variety of interesting and informative subjects, e.g., A glance at the map of Sweden; Stockholm; At the Stadium; Swedish history; College examinations; The educational system of Sweden; The battle between the "Monitor" and the "Merrimac", etc.

Part III, Verb Paradigms. This part presents paradigms of the 1st, 2nd and 3rd(weak)conjugations, and the 4th (strong) conjugation, all tenses and moods, active and passive, and of the temporal, modal and passive-forming auxiliaries. Verification of verb-forms is thus possible without waste of time. The verb paradigms are followed by an alphabetical list of strong, irregular and defective verbs.

Vocabularies. In harmony with the general aim to make this book a real tool in the hands of the student, every part of speech (after lesson VII), subject to change of form (sing., pl., declension, conjugation comparison, etc.), has been so plainly and fully defined that the student need not guess at or be in doubt as to the correct form of the word desired.

The Phrase. Throughout the vocabularies the phrase formula, a subject seriously neglected by most American authors of textbooks for the teaching of Germanic languages, has been emphasized by the use of the tilde (~).

The vocabulary of lessons I - VII is representative of that of books written for children under fourteen years of age.

Index. The comprehensive index, covering the entire book, imparts to the work the character of a reference grammar.

During the preparation of this book the following works have been consulted and made liberal use of:

- Björkagen, Im., *Modern Swedish Grammar*, Stockholm 1930.
- Danell, Gideon, *Svensk Ljudlärা*, Stockholm 1926.
- " " *Svensk språklärа*, Lund 1927.
- Elfstrand, Daniel, *Engelsk Grammatik*, Stockholm 1902.
- Elmquist, A. Louis, *Swedish Phonology*, Chicago, 1915.
- " " *Swedish Grammar*, Rock Island, 1923.
- Lyttkens, I. A. och Wulff, F. A., *Svensk ordlista med uttalsbeteckning*, Lund 1921.
- Moreen, A., *Vårt språk*, Lund 1903-07.
- Rebbe, Carl, *Svensk språklärа för realskolan*, Stockholm, 1931.
- Sundén, D. A., *Svensk språklärа i sammandrag*, reviderade 28:e uppl., Stockholm 1936.
- Vickner, Edwin J., *Swedish Grammar*, Rock Island, 1927.

I am grateful to Alb. Bonniers Förlag, Stockholm, for permission to use *Lasse Liten* by Zacharias Topelius; to Norstedt & Söners Förlag for an article entitled *Stockholm* by Carl G. Laurin, and one entitled *På Stadion* by John Zander, both articles forming part of *Läsebok för Folkskolan, Andra Avdelningen, Del II*; to A.-B. Historiska Förlaget, Stockholm, for excerpts from *Svenskarna i Amerika* edited by Hildebrand and Fredenholm; to Alb. Bonniers Förlag for *Gunnel Fatburs hustru* (from *Karolinerna* by Verner v. Heidenstam); to the publisher of the works of D. Bergman (pseud.Dan) for *Spårvagnssamtal*; to Wahlström & Widstrand, Stockholm, for excerpts from Fredrika Bremer's: *Det unga Amerika*, edited by Klara Johanson. *Den nya stranden*, Yankseen, Emerson för sista gången, Sista synen; to Bokförlaget Natur och Kultur, for excerpt from *Ur Svenska Språkets Hävder*, Stockholm 1926, by T. Wennerström.

In addition to my indebtedness to Mr. Gösta Robert Stene, who has aided in selecting some of the material, furnished four of the reading selections, made the first draft of practically all vocabularies and constructed all questions and exercises, oral and written, on the basis of the reading selections, I have the very pleasant duty to acknowledge the interest which has been evidenced by colleagues and others during the preparation of this text-book, and to thank them most heartily for their valuable assistance. The following deserve particular mention:

Professor Chester N. Gould, University of Chicago; Visiting Professor, Dr. Dag Strömbäck (Lund), University of Chicago; Dr. Folke Leander, Gothenburg; Baron Johan Liljencrants, New York City; my former students, Dr. Allan Lake Rice, University of Pennsylvania, and Joseph H. Müller, B.A., Philadelphia, Pa; Dr. E. W. Olson, Rock Island, Ill.; Emeritus Professor of Germanic Philology of the University of Pennsylvania, Daniel B. Shumway; Karl G. Fredin, Esq., Editor-in-chief of *Svea*, Worcester, Mass.; and lastly, my constant collaborator, my wife Alma, without whose untiring assistance the work could not have been completed.

Philadelphia, Pa.

August 17, 1938.

A.J.U.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	PAGE
PART I	
PHONOLOGY	
Sounds and their Symbols.....	1
The Alphabet.....	1
Phonetic Symbols.....	2
Classification of Vowels (Diagram).....	2
Syllabication.....	3
Quantity.....	3
Description of Swedish Speech-sounds (Vowels).....	4
" " " " (Diphthongs).....	9
Classification of Consonants	10
Description of Swedish Speech-sounds (Diagram, Consonants)	10
Accentuation.....	19
USE OF CAPITALS AND PUNCTUATION MARKS	
Capitalization.....	22
Punctuation.....	23
Titles and Forms of Address.....	25
Classroom Expressions.....	25

PART II

GRAMMAR. READING. ORAL EXERCISES. COMPOSITION.	
Lesson I. A. GRAMMAR. Gender. Number. Case. Present and Past Indicative of <i>vara</i> , <i>hava</i> , <i>sitta</i>	28
B. READING SELECTION WITH PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION. <i>Den avbrutna sagan.</i>	
II. A. GRAMMAR. Word Order. The Expletive <i>det</i> . The In-definite Article. Classification of Nouns.....	31
B. READING SELECTION WITH PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION: <i>Lasse Liten.</i>	
III. A. GRAMMAR. The Definite Article. The Noun: 1st Declension. The Verb. Present and Past Indicative: <i>bliva</i> , <i>skola</i> , <i>vilja</i> . B. READING SELECTION WITH PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION: <i>Lasse Liten</i> (cont.)	36
IV. A. GRAMMAR. The Definite Article (cont.). The Noun: 2nd Declension. The Adjective: Indefinite and Definite Declension. Omission of the auxiliary <i>hava</i>	42
B. READING SELECTION WITH PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION: <i>Lasse Liten</i> (cont.)	
V. A. GRAMMAR. The Article (cont.). The Noun: 3rd Declension. Adjective. Use of the Indefinite and Definite Declensions. Indeclinable Adjectives.....	48
B. READING SELECTION WITH PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION: <i>Lasse Liten</i> (cont.)	
VI. A. GRAMMAR. The Article (cont.). The Noun: 4th Declension. Comparison of Adjectives.....	53
B. READING SELECTION WITH PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION: <i>Lasse Liten</i> (cont.)	
VII. A. GRAMMAR. The Article (cont.). The Noun: 5th Declension. Notes on the Use of Cases.....	59
B. READING SELECTION WITH PHONETIC TRANSCRIPTION: <i>Lasse Liten.</i>	

Lesson	PAGE
VIII. A. GRAMMAR. Conjugation of the Verb. Survey of Personal Endings of the Verb, Weak and Strong. Present and Past Indicative. Formation of Tenses. Uses of the Tenses of The Indicative.....	66
B. READING SELECTION: <i>En blick på Sveriges karta.</i>	
Agreement of the Verb with the Subject	68A and 68B
c. Explanations to Vocabulary of Lesson VIII.	
IX. A. GRAMMAR. Conjugation of the Verb. 1st Conjugation: Indicative and Subjunctive; Active and Passive. Numerals: Cardinals and Ordinals.....	74
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Stockholm.</i>	
X. A. GRAMMAR. Conjugation of the Verb (cont.). 2nd Conjugation: Indicative and Subjunctive; Active and Passive. Personal Pronouns. Possessive, Reflexive, and Reciprocal Pronouns. Demonstrative and Determinative Pronouns.....	83
B. READING SELECTION: <i>På Stadion.</i>	
XI. A. GRAMMAR. Conjugation of the Verb (cont.). 3rd Conjugation: Indicative and Subjunctive; Active and Passive. Relative Pronouns and Adjectives. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives.....	93
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Ur Sveriges historia.</i>	
XII. A. GRAMMAR. Conjugation of the Verb (cont.). 4th Conjugation. Forms of the Passive. The s-Passive. The Auxiliary Passive: <i>bliva, vara, varda.</i> Substitute for the Passive: <i>Man + The Active</i>	102
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Om svenskarna vid Delaware.</i>	
XIII. A. GRAMMAR. Reflexive Verbs. Compound Verbs.....	111
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Om svenskarna vid Delaware</i> (cont.).	
XIV. A. GRAMMAR. Deponents. The Impersonal Verb. Expletive <i>det</i>	118
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Gunnel Fatburshustru.</i>	
XV. A. GRAMMAR. Auxiliary Verbs.....	126
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Studentexamen.</i>	
XVI. A. GRAMMAR. Imperative. Infinitive. Participle and Supine....	133
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Om Sveriges undervisningsväsen.</i>	
XVII. A. GRAMMAR. The Subjunctive. Definition, Forms and Use of the Subjunctive.....	141
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Spärvagnssamtal</i>	
XVIII. A. GRAMMAR. Conditional Sentences.....	145
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Striden mellan Monitor och Merrimac</i>	
XIX. A. GRAMMAR. The Adverb. Comparison of Adverbs. Pronominal Adverbs. Position of Adverbs in the Sentence. Notes on the Use of certain Adverbs.....	151
B. READING SELECTION: <i>John Ericsson.</i>	
XX. A. GRAMMAR. List of Prepositions and Prepositional Expressions of Common Occurrence. Government of Prepositions. Position of Prepositions. Notes on the Use of Certain Prepositions.....	159
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Den nya stranden.</i>	
XXI. A. GRAMMAR. Coordinate Conjunctions. Subordinate Conjunctions. Notes on some Conjunctions.....	170

Lesson	PAGE
XXI (cont.) B. READING SELECTION: <i>Yankeen.</i>	
XXII. A. GRAMMAR. Interjections.....	177
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Emerson för sista gången.</i>	
XXIII. A. GRAMMAR. Word Order. Definition of Word Order. Use of Normal Word Order. Use of Inverted Word Order. Position of Verbals. Prepositional Attributive.....	180
B. READING SELECTION: <i>Sista synen.</i>	
XXIV. A. GRAMMAR. Indirect Discourse.	184A and 184B
B. READING SELECTION: <i>George Washington</i>	185

PART III

A. Verb Paradigms	
I. THE WEAK VERB. 1st Weak Conjugation.	
§366. Active: (att) älska, (to) love.....	186
§367. Passive: (att) älskas, (to) be loved.....	187
2nd Weak Conjugation.	
§368. Active: (att) böja, köpa, (to) bend, buy	188
§369. Passive: (att) böjas, köpas, (to) be bent, bought..	189
3rd Weak Conjugation.	
§370. Active: (att) tro, (to) believe	191
§371. Passive: (att) tros. (to) be believed	192
II. THE STRONG VERB. 4th Conjugation.	
§372. Active: (att) gripa, (to) grip, seize.....	193
§373. Passive: (att) gripas, (to) be gripped, seized ..	194
III. AUXILIARY VERBS.	
§374. (att) ha(va).....	196
§375. (att) skola	197
§376. må	197
§377. mätte.....	198
§378. måste.....	198
§379. månde.....	198
§380. (att) kunna.....	199
§381. (att) vilja.....	200
§382. (att) böra.....	201
§383. tör.....	202
§384. lär.....	203
§385. (att) vara.....	202
§386. (att) varda.....	203
§387. (att) bli(va).....	204
B. Alphabetical List of Strong and Irregular Verbs.....	206
Abbreviations.....	27
VOCABULARY	
Swedish - English Vocabulary.....	220
English - Swedish Vocabulary.....	249
Index.....	259

PART I

SOUNDS AND THEIR SYMBOLS

§1. Sounds. The Swedish language has forty sounds if due regard is paid to the finer shades of quality. If, on the other hand, the sounds are not subjected to such scrutiny, they constitute twenty-seven in all.

The letters of the alphabet are 28 in number, not counting *w*. Of these characters 9 are vowels and 19 consonants. Three consonant sounds having no individual symbols (letters) are represented by the following combinations: *ng* = Eng. *ng* in *singer*; *sj* = *sh* in *hush*; *tj* approximately = *ch* in *child*. See §3.

§2. The Alphabet.* The letters of the alphabet, with their Swedish names, are as follows:

A a [ɑ:]	I i [i:]	Q q [kvw:]	Y y [y:]
B b [be:]	J j [ji:]	R r [er:]	Z z [se'ta:]
C c [se:]	K k [ko:]	S s [ss:]	Å å [o:]
D d [de:]	L l [el:]	T t [te:]	Ä ä [æ:]
E e [e:]	M m [em:]	U u [uw:]	Ö ö [ø:]
F f [ef:]	N n [en:]	V v [ve:]	
G g [ge:]	O o [ə:]	W w [dub:əl(t)və:]	
H h [ho:]	P p [pe:]	X x [ek:s]	

§3. Swedish, like English, is not a phonetic language, that is, the letters used in writing words do not always enable us to pronounce the word correctly, since ~~some~~ many letters are pronounced differently in different words. In order to avoid the usual confusion and waste of time incident to the learning of the pronunciation of a foreign language, the *International Phonetic Alphabet* has been introduced in this book. This alphabet uses the regular letters in most cases. The following modifications and special characters are used in cases where the letters of the alphabet are inadequate to represent the sounds of the language.*

Swedish	Phonetic Symbol	Approximate Sound	Swedish	Phonetic Symbol	Approximate Sound
a	[ɑ:] = Engl. a in <i>father</i>	[fa:ðər]	e	[ə] = Eng. e in <i>father</i>	[fə:ðər]
o	[ɔ] = " o " <i>comet</i> [kɒmɪt]		u	u [u:] = Fr. u " <i>lui</i>	[lɥi]
ä	ä [æ(:)] = " a " <i>maze</i> [mæz(i)z]		ö	ö [o(:)] = Eng. oo " <i>goose</i>	[gu:s]
e	" = " e " <i>let</i> [let]		e+u	[ɛ+u] = Brit.-eph- " <i>nephew</i>	[nefju:]
ÿ	ÿ [ɛ] = " e " <i>there</i> [ðe(ə)rə]		a+u	[a+u] = Eng. ou " <i>cow</i>	[kau]
e	e [e] = " e " <i>merry</i> [meri]		j	[j] = " y " <i>yes</i>	[jɛ:s]
ö	ö [ø:] = Fr eu " <i>pieu</i> [pø]		sh	[ʃ] = " sh " <i>shoddy</i>	[ʃɔdi]
"	" [æ(:)] = " coeur [kœ:r]		-ti-	[tʃ] = " -ti- " <i>addition</i>	[ə'diʃən]

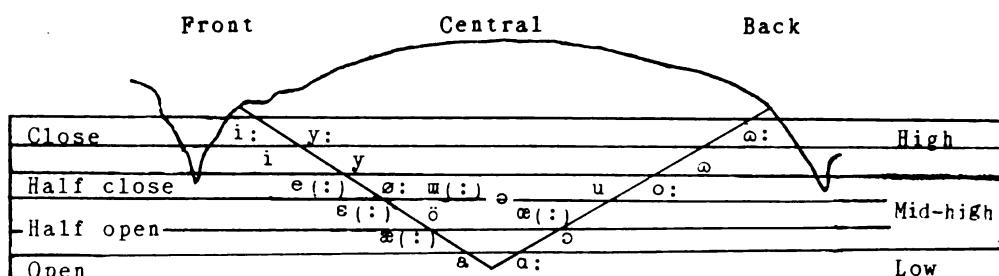
* Pronunciation of the names of the letters may be deferred until the learner has become acquainted with the phonetic symbols, §3, and Swedish sounds in general, §§4 - 46.

• Transcription of words used for illustrative purposes is based on the phonetic dictionaries of Daniel Jones, Michaelis et Passy, and Wilhelm Viator.

Swedish	Phonetic Symbol	Approximate Sound	Phonetic Symbol
ng	[ŋ]	Eng. <i>ng</i> in <i>Bangkok</i> [bəŋkɔk]	In Swedish the symbol [ʃ] repre-
rd	[d̥]	" <i>rd</i> " <i>bird</i> [bə:(r)d̥]	sents at least 24 different spell-
rl	[ɿ]	" <i>rl</i> " <i>curl</i> [kə:(r)ɿ]	ings (native and foreign words)
rn	[n̥]	" <i>rn</i> " <i>burn</i> [bə:(r)n̥]	[ʃ] of the so-called <i>sje</i> -sound: <i>sj</i> ,
rs	[ʂ]	" <i>rs</i> " <i>Pershing</i> [pə:ʂɪŋ]	<i>sk</i> , <i>skj</i> , <i>stj</i> , <i>ssj</i> , <i>sch</i> , <i>ch</i> , <i>che</i> ,
rt	[ʈ]	" <i>rt</i> " <i>short</i> [ʃo:(r)t̥]	<i>sh</i> , <i>shi</i> , <i>sc</i> , <i>si</i> , <i>ssi</i> , <i>ti</i> , <i>sti</i> , <i>ci</i> ,
tj	[t̥ʂ]	" <i>ch</i> " <i>church</i> [tʂə:t̥ʂ] or [tʂə:t̥ʂ]	<i>gi</i> , <i>g</i> , <i>ge</i> , <i>j</i> , <i>je</i> , <i>x</i> , <i>xi</i> , <i>xj</i> .

Note. A colon (:) placed after a phonetic symbol indicates that the sound is *long*. When the colon is placed in a parenthesis, it signifies that the sound may be *long or short*.

§4. Classification of vowel sounds.



Vowel sounds are arranged according to the point of articulation of the tongue, position of the lips and angle of the jaws. Depending upon whether the lips are rounded or not rounded while the sounds are being formed, the vowels are classified:

- a) As rounded (labialized): $y[y:, y]$, $\ddot{o}[\theta:, o, \alpha(:)]$, $u[u:, u]$, $o, \dot{a}[o:]$, $\ddot{o}[\omega:\omega]$, $a[a:]($ slightly rounded $)$.*

b) Not rounded: $i[i:, i]$, $e[e:]$, $\dot{a}, e[\varepsilon, \varepsilon]$, $a[a]$.

The vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *å* are designated *hard*, because *g*, when preceding them, has the *hard* sound of English *g* in *go*; *k*, the sound of English *k* in *Kansas*.

The letters *e*, *i*, *y*, *ä*, *ö* are called soft, because in most instances when *g* occurs before them, it is pronounced like English *y*, phonetic symbol [j], §31, 2; *k*, on the other hand, resembles English *ch* in *child*, phonetic symbol [tʃə] or [tʃ], §34, 2. Cf. also §3.

* It should be noted that the majority of Swedish vowels are rounded.

§5. The purpose of the above vowel triangle, §4, is to show the approximate interrelation of the vowels and their sounds. The curved line forming the base of the inverted triangle represents the roof of the mouth. The horizontal lines drawn across the legs of the triangle indicate the levels of the tongue as it moves from its extreme anterior to its extreme posterior position, thus restricting or enlarging the oral cavity as required for the production of each individual sound. In the production of the sounds - vocalic and consonantal - the lips play, next to the tongue, a very important part, as we shall see in the discussion of the sounds. The movements of the lower jaw, though far less important than those of the tongue and the lips, must also be taken into consideration. The position occupied by the individual vowels, letters and phonetic symbols inside or outside of the legs of the triangle, marks roughly, the relative points of articulation with reference to the so-called *cardinal vowels* which need not be discussed here.

SYLLABICATION *

§6. In Swedish, as in most other modern languages, each syllable within the word begins, if possible, with a consonant. Ex. u-ni-ver-si-tets-bib-li-o-te-ket [u'ni'versite'tsbibliote'ket], the university library.

Simple words are divided into syllables as follows:

a) A single consonant between two vowels goes with the second vowel.

Ex. ä-ra [a'ra'] honor.

b) Two or more consonants between two vowels are so divided that at least one consonant goes with the second vowel. Ex. hed-ra [he'dra'] to honor, skval-lra [skval'ra'] to gossip.

Note 1. The consonant combinations *sch*, *sj*, and *sk* as symbols of the *sje*-sound [ʃ] are not broken up. Ex. vyssj-a [vyʃ'a'] to lull, to hush, mar-sche-ra [maʃe:ra] to march, män-ni-ska [men'iʃa'] human being.

Note 2. The compound character *x* [ks] may be joined to the preceding or following vowel. Ex. läx-a (lä-xa) [lek'sa'] lesson. *ng*, [ŋ], is either joined to the first vowel or it is separated according to rule. Ex. mång-en or män-gen [mɔŋ'en'] many (a).

Note 3. In words of foreign origin, i.e., loan-words, the initial syllables of which are unstressed, a following consonant group capable of opening the next syllable is not broken up. Ex. ak-tris [aktri:s] actress, pa-stej [pastej:] pie (pastry), ka-strull [kastrul:] saucepan.

c) Compounds are divided into their component parts. Ex. fram-om [fram'om'] in front of, miss-tag [mis'ta:g] mistake, be-trakta [betrak:ta] contemplate. Certain endings, e.g., -aktig and -skap are treated as if they were component parts of a compound. Ex. skilj-aktig [sil'jak'tig] separable.

QUANTITY

§7. In phonetics the term *quantity* means the relative duration of a sound or of a sound-combination. Every normal ear will readily perceive the difference in duration of the vowel sounds of the words *foot* [fut] and *pool* [pu:l] or the Swedish sounds of the vowel ä [ɛ] in *stjälä* [ʃɛ'lä'] to steal, and *skällä* [ʃɛ'lä'] to bark.

In *stjälä* the sound of ä [ɛ] is long because the vowel is followed by

* It is important to distinguish between orthographic and phonetic syllabication.

a single (or short) consonant sound which belongs to the next syllable: *stjä-la*. In *skälla* the sound of ä [ɛ] is short because the vowel is followed by more than one consonant, the last one of which belongs to the following syllable: *skäl-la*. The sound of the vowel of the second syllable [a:] is short in both words because it has neither primary nor strong secondary stress.

It is of the greatest importance to note that Swedish has *vocalic* as well as *consonantal* length, distinctions which have no counterpart in English. Hence it has been possible for Swedish phoneticians to formulate the following rules:^{*}

a) In every syllable of strong stress either the vowel sound or the consonant sound immediately following a vowel must be long. Ex. *tal* [ta:l] speech, with long vowel and short (single) consonant sound; *tall* [tal:] pine tree, short vowel and long consonant sound (i.e., more than one consonant).

b) A long sound (vowel or consonant) can occur only in a syllable of principal or of strong secondary stress. But note the following points:

1. Vowels followed by *rd* [d], *rl* [l], *rn* [n] and, in some instances *rt* [t], are long. Ex. *bord* [bɔ:d] table.

2. In many other instances a long consonant sound fails to shorten a preceding long vowel. Ex. *köpa* [çø'pa'] to buy, might be expected to show a shortened radical vowel in the imperfect (past) tense [çøp'te'], but the standard form is [çø'pta'] bought. Cf. also other imperfects of the same type and note that shortening of the radical vowel before the verbal ending occurs only in the event that the stem consonant and the consonant of the ending result in a double consonant, e.g., *möta* [mø'ta'] to meet, imperfect (past) *mötte* [möt'e'] met, *leda* [le'da'] to lead, imperfect (past) *ledde* [led'e'] led.

3. Particular care must be exercised in the case of *m* and *n*. *m* is doubled in final position in three words only. Ex. *damm* [dæm:] dam, *ramm* [ram:] (battering-) ram, and *lamm* [læm:] lamb. In words like *tom* [təm:] empty, *dom* [dəm:] verdict, *skam* [skam:] shame, *m* must be pronounced as if written *mm*.

4. Likewise *n* is not doubled in a number of words although its phonetic value is *nn*. Ex. *in* [in:] in (into), *min* [min:] my, mine, *han* [han:] he, *hon* [hən:] she, *man* [man:] man, *din* [din:] thy, thine.

DESCRIPTION OF THE SWEDISH SPEECH-SOUNDS

§8

A. VOWELS

Note. Whenever in the following description of vowel and consonant sounds the words "like", "resemble(s)" or "equivalent" occur, the terms are used relatively.

* A colon (:) placed immediately after a vowel or a consonant (combination) means long vowel or consonant sound and principal stress.

A single point (·) placed immediately after a vowel or a consonant (combination) means long vowel or consonant sound and principal stress.

A single quotation mark ('') placed immediately after a vowel or a consonant (consonants) means strong secondary or weak secondary stress. Single point (·) and single quotation mark ('') in words of more than one syllable indicate bisyllabic stress (musical accent).

§9. i [i:]

High-front-close, non-labialized "i" Cf. English *i* in *marine* [mə'ri:n]

Articulation: The corners of the mouth are slightly drawn back and the tip of the tongue rests firmly against the lower teeth. Because of its closeness, long *i* ends in a fricative sound [i:j].

1. Long *i*. Phonetic symbol [i:]. Ex. *blid* [bli:d] gentle (*blithe*), *glida* [gli'da'] to glide, *fantasi* [fantasi:] fancy.

2. Short *i*. Phonetic symbol [i]. The short *i*-sound is lax compared with that of long *i* and is not diphthongal. It corresponds well to English short *i* in *fill*, *bit*, *big*, *sit*, but is a clearer sound. Ex. *min* [min:] my (*mine*), *mitt* [mit:] my (*mine*), *piller* [pil:ər] pill, *smitta* [smi:t'a'] contagion, *irra* [ir'a'] to stray (*err*), etc.

§10. y [y:] u

High-front-close, tensely rounded "y". The sound does not exist in English, but close equivalents are found in French words like *mur* [my:r] wall, and in German words like *müde* [my:də] tired, and *Hütte* [hytə] hut.

Articulation: Tongue position as for the [i]-sound and very tense protrusion of the lips with outward rounding as for *oo* in *pool* [pu:l]. The sound is best acquired by prolonging the [i]-sound effecting the rounding at the same time without altering the position of the tongue. The long [y:]-sound ends in a fricative.

1. Long *y*. Phonetic symbol [y:]. Ex. *yta* [y'ta'] surface, *by* [by:] village, *yverboren* [y'verbo'rən] ultra-national.

2. Short *y*. Phonetic symbol [y]. Ex. *mylla* [myl'a'] humus, *syster* [sys'tər'] sister, *yppa* [yp'a'] to reveal, *synd* [syn:d] sin.

Note. The short *y*-sound is slightly more open than the corresponding long sound and lacks the diphthongal element.

§11. e [e:]

Mid-front-half-close, non-labialized "e". The sound does not exist in English. Close equivalents are French *e* in *pénétré* [penetʁe] and German *e* in *Fehde* [fe:də]. The sound occurs primarily in positions of principal stress. Ex. *het* [he:t] hot; also strong secondary stress. Ex. *trohet* [trø'he:t] loyalty.

1. Long *e*. Phonetic symbol [e:]. Ex. *bed* [be:d] pray, *spela* [spe'lə:] to play.

2. Short *e*. Phonetic symbol [e]. Ex. *lem* [lem:] limb (member of the body, etc.), *hem* [hem:] home, *general* [jenera:l] general, *bele* [bele:] to deride.

§12. ö [ø:]

Mid-front-half-close "ö". Phonetic symbol [ø:]. The sound does not exist in English. Close equivalents are French *eu* in *creuse* [krø:z] and German *ö* in *hören* [hø:nən]

Articulation: [e:]-position of the tongue and rounding of lips as for [ø:]. The vowel occurs in long syllables only, providing no r follows it immediately. Ex. *dö* [dø:] to die, *blöda* [blø'da'] to bleed, *öga* [ø'ga'] eye, *ö* [ø:] island.

§ 13.

u [u:]

Mid-front-half-close u is articulated with rounded *not protruded* lips. It has the tongue position of *e* [e:] and the lip-rounding for *o* [o:]. The sound is like French *u* in *lui* [lui], *nuit* [nui]. Cf. § 3. In unstressed position it becomes more open and is free from the fricative quality of stressed *u*.

1. Long and fully stressed *u*. *Phonetic symbol* [u:]. Ex. *hus* [hu:s] house, *mus* [mu:s] mouse, *kruka* [kru:kɑ:] pot (crock).

2. Short *u*. *Phonetic symbol* [u]. Ex. *musik* [mu:sik] music, *buljong* [buljɔŋ:] bouillon, *dupera* [dype:ra] to dupe.

§ 14.

e (mute) [ə]

Neutral or mute "e" in syllables of weak secondary stress. Ex. *fiende* [fi:e:nðə:] enemy, and in end-syllables (-*e*, -*el*, -*en*, -*er*) and the def. articles -*en*, -*et*. The sound is like English *e* in unaccented syllables. Ex. *father* ['fa:ðər].

Phonetic symbol [ə]. Ex. *Bosse* [bos:a:] prop. name, *gubbe* [gub:a:] old man, *vatten* [vat:ən] water.

§ 15.

ä, e

Mid-front-half-open "ä", "e". Phonetic symbol [ɛ].

Orthographically this sound is represented:

1. By *ä*, when long and *not* followed by *r*. The sound resembles that of English *a* in *maze* [meɪz]. Ex. *läsa* [le:sə:] to read, *förgäta* [fɔrje:tɑ] to forget, *städ* [ste:d] anvil, *hädelse* [he'delse:] blasphemy.

2. When short and *not* followed by *r*, the sound is represented:

a) By *ä* the sound of which resembles that of English *e* in *let*.

Ex. *Trollhättan* [trol'het'an] prop. name, *vän* [vɛn:] friend, *vänner* [vɛn:ən] the friend, *vänerna* [vɛn'ənə:] the friends, *släkt* [slɛk:t] relatives, *fälla* [fɛl:a:] to fell (cause to fall).

b) By *e* the sound of which resembles that of English *e* in *let* [let].

Ex. *penna* [pɛn:a:] pen, *mest* [mɛs:t] most, *den* [dɛn:] that one, *he* (dem. pron.).

§ 16.

ö [ø]

Mid-front-half-open "ö". Phonetic symbol [ø].

This sound occurs in short syllables providing no *r* follows immediately. There is no English equivalent, but compare German short open ö in *plötzlich* and French mute *e* [ə]. Ex. *röst* [rø:s:t] voice, *höst* [hø:s:t] autumn, *glömma* [glø:m:a:] to forget, *öppen* [øp:a:] open.

§ 17.

ä, e.

Mid-front-half-open, "broad" ä. Phonetic symbol [ɛ].

Orthographically the [ɛ]-sound is represented:

1. By *ä*, when long and followed by *r*. The sound resembles that of English *e* in *there* [ðe:rər]. Ex. *bära* [bæ:rə:] to bear (carry), *tjära* [(t)çɛ:rə:] tar, *skära* [ʃɛ:rə:] to shear (cut), *begära* [bejɛ:rə:] to demand, *värld* [vɛ:rłd] world, *ärla* [ɛ:lə:] wagtail.

2. When short and followed by *r(r)*, the [ɛ]-sound is represented orthographically:

a) By ä. The sound resembles that of English *e* in *berry* ['beri] Ex. färja [fær'ja:] *ferry*, färg [fær:j] *color*, färre [fær:e] *fewer*, ärr [ær:] *scar*, härja [hær'ja:] *to harry*.

b) By e. The sound resembles that of English *e* in *berry* ['beri] Ex. herr [hær:] *Mr.*, verk [vær:k] *work*, verksam [vær·ksam'] *active*, hertig [hæt'ig'] *duke*, herbarium [hærba'rium'] *herbarium*, fernissa [fænɪs:a] *varnish*, berlock [bælok:] *watch-chain charm*.

Note. The letter *e* (long) in the prefix syllable *er-*, §11, may be pronounced [ɛ·r-] or [e·r-]. Ex. erkänna [ɛ·rçn'a] *to acknowledge, confess*.

§18.

a [ɑ]

This letter represents two shades of the *a*-sound.

1. Short, open "a" occurs in syllables of principal as well as secondary and least stress. The sound is equivalent to French *a* in *salle* [sal] and German *a* in *Halle* [hale]. Its equivalent in English is found in the first element of the diphthong *ai* in *high* [ha(i)].

Articulation: mouth well open, tongue relaxed, corners of the mouth slightly drawn back.

The sound usually gives the English-speaking student a great deal of trouble. It must be borne in mind, therefore, that short "a" never takes on the sound of mute "e" [ə], not even in least stressed or final positions. The Swedish pronunciation of English *A-ta-lan'ta* [ætə-læ'n-tə] is Åtä-lań-tă [atalan:ta] prop. name.

Phonetic symbol [a]. Ex. falla [fal·a:] *to fall*, tall [tal:] *pine tree*, backa [bak'a:] *to back up*, ja(vsst)[ja(vis:t)] certainly (of course, indeed).

Note. If short, slightly stressed *a* becomes subject to principal stress and takes on the long Swedish *a*-sound, English *a* in *father* ['fa:ðər], see below.

Ex. balsam [bal'sam'] *balsam* (with short *a* in both syllables); balsamisk [balso:misk] *balsamic* (with the long *a*-sound [a:] and principal stress because of shifting of the accent forward).

a [ɑ:]

2. The long-close-low, slightly labialized, posterior "a"-sound, occurs in positions of principal and of strong secondary stress. The sound resembles that of South German *a* in *Vater* [fa:tər] and English *a* in *father* ['fa:ðər]

Phonetic symbol [a:]. Ex. ja [ja:] *yes*, bra [bra:] *well*, sal [sa:l] *hall* (large room), tal [ta:l] *talk*, tala [ta'la:] *to speak* (talk), automat [aʊtoma:t] *automat*, vänskap [ven'ska:p] *friendship*.

§19.

o, å [ɔ]

1. Mid-back, half-open, rounded "o" occurs as short only in stressed as well as unstressed position. Orthographically this o-sound is represented by the letters o and å. The sound is a close equivalent of German o in *Dorf* [dɔrf] *village* and English o in *boy* [bɔ(i)].

Phonetic symbol [ɔ]. Ex. boll [bol:] *ball* (base-ball), Norrland [nor:land] name of the northern part of Sweden, plocka [plök a:] *to pick* (pluck) ock [ɔk:] *also* (too), bort [bɔt:] *away*.

Open o occurs also in prefix syllables of weak and least stress mostly in words of foreign origin. Ex. konsulat [konsula:t] consulate, konstant [konstan:t] constant. Also in a few derivative suffix syllables, e.g., -on, afton [af'ton'] evening, helgon [hel'gon'] saint; -ton, tretton [tret'on'] thirteen: -or, doktor [dok:tor or dök:tor'] doctor.

a [ɔ]

2. Mid-back-half-open, labialized "å". Phonetic symbol [ɔ].
Ex. sång [sɔŋ:] song, hålla [hol'a:] to hold, åttaåring [öt'ao:ring] eight-year-old, ålder [ol:dər] age, mått [mot:] measure, källandsö [kolandso:] name of an island.

For the long å-sound, see §22.

§20.

ö [œ:]

Mid-back-half-open, broad "ö" occurs long and short. It resembles English u in fur [fər], but French open "eu" [œ] when followed by r as in peur [pœ:r], coeur [kœ:r] and German open ö, followed by r as in Dörfer [dœrfər], Nörder [mœrdər], approach the Swedish sound more closely.

1. Long and followed by r. Phonetic symbol [œ]. Ex. göra [jœ'rɑ:] to do, smör [smœ:r] butter (smear), köra [çœ'rɑ:] to drive (a horse).

2. Short and followed by r. Phonetic symbol [œ]. Ex. dörr [dœr:] door, törst [tœ:s:t] thirst, mörsare [mœ:s'are:] mortar, ört [œ:t:] herb.

§21.

u [u]

Mid-back-half-close "u". In standard usage it occurs only as short and mostly in positions of principal stress. The sound is peculiar to the Swedish language. It is practically identical with unstressed English u as in value ['væl(j)u].

Phonetic symbol [u] Ex. hund [hun:d] dog (hound), bunt [bun:t] bundle, nunna [nun'a:] nun, huttra [hut'rɑ:] to shiver (with cold), dumgom [dum:bom] blockhead.

Note. The u-sound in phonetically open syllables, e.g., butelj and in final position, as in (till) salu, is unsettled inasmuch as either u or ü may be used. Ex. butelj [bʊtel:j] bottle, (till) salu [(til:)sa:lʊ] for sale, or [butel:j], [(til:)sa:lu].

§22.

o, å [o:]

1. Mid-back-half-close "o" is a low, rounded vowel, properly occurring in syllables of principal stress.* It is found in the ultima of many loan-words. The sound resembles German o in Rose [ro:zə].

Phonetic symbol [o:]. Ex. lova [lo'va:] praise (promise), ovan [o'ven'] above, demagog [demago:g] demagogue, filolog [filolo:g] philologist, garderob [gadəro:h] wardrobe, villkor [vil'ko:r] condition.

2. Mid-back-half-close "å". Phonetic symbol [o:]. Ex. gå [go:] to go, våren [vo:rən] the spring, nål [no:l] needle, fråga [fro'ga:] to ask.

For the short å-sound, see §19.

Digitized by Google
here are exceptions to this rule. See Danell under å-ljudet.

Original from
UNIVERSITY OF MICHIGAN

§ 23.

o [ø:]

High-back-(extremely) close "o" occurs both long and short in positions of principal, secondary, weak and least stress.

Articulation: Lips rounded slightly more than for English *oo* in *goose* [gu:s]. If this lip adjustment be maintained and the tongue drawn farther back than required for the production of English *oo* in *goose*, *pool*, etc., the result will be the Swedish sound [ø:]. Compare also German *u* in such words as *Kuh* [ku:] cow, and *Huhn* [hu:n] hen.

1. Short, close o. Phonetic symbol [ø]. Ex. *ost* [øs:t] cheese, *bom* [bøm:] bar (beam), *tomhet* [tøm'he:t] emptiness, *orm* [ør:m] snake (worm), *Otterbäcken* [øt:ərbe:kən]* place name.

Note. This o [ø] appears in the plural ending *-or* of the first declension: *blommor* [bløm'mɔr] flowers; in the plural ending of the imperfect of the verb: *vi buro* [vi: bø'rø:] we carried; in the suffix syllable *-dom*, *ungdom* [uŋ'døm] youth and as a connective vowel in compounds. Ex. *kyrkogård* [gyrk'køgo:d] churchyard, *sannolikt* [san'ølikt] probably, etc.

2. Long, close o. Phonetic symbol [ø:]. Ex. *bro* [brø:] bridge, *oro* [ø:rø:] unrest (anxiety), *mod* [mø:d] courage, *flood* [flø:d] flood (river), *doktorer* [døktø:rør] doctors.

Note. The prefix *o-*[ø] is always long. Ex. *okänd* [ø'ken'd] unknown, *otvättad* [ø'tvet'ad] unwashed, *olycklig* [ø lyk'lig] unhappy, unfortunate.

B. DIPHTHONGS

§ 24. The diphthongs of runic Swedish (8th - 11th centuries) suffered contraction.

Ex. *stæn* (Old Icel. *stein*) became *sten* [ste:n]; *auga* became *öga* [ø'ga:] eye, etc.

§ 25. Diphthongs in Modern Swedish are of two kinds:

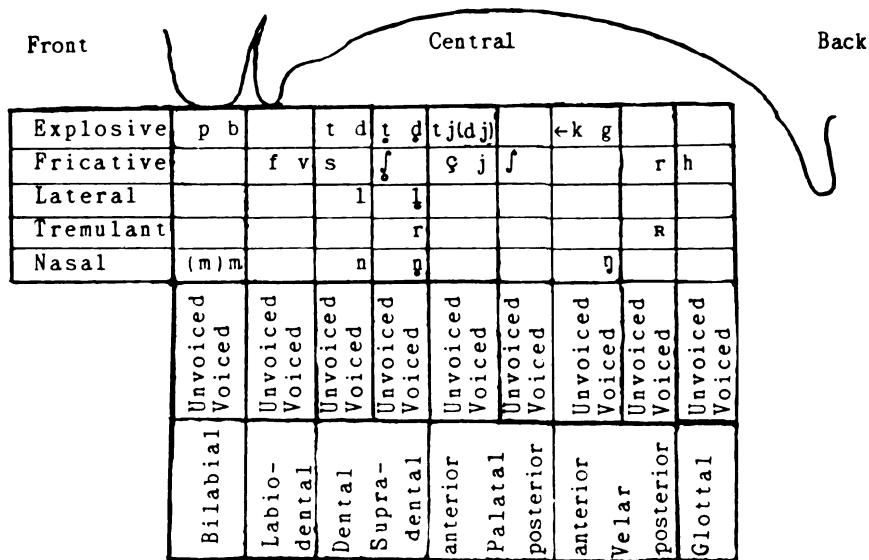
1. In words of foreign origin, *a+u* [a+ø] and *e+u* [e+m] occur. Ex. *automobil* [a:tɔ:tɔmøbi:l] automobile. The pronunciation of *au* is that of English *-ow* in *now*. *Europa* [eu:rø:pɑ] Europe. For pronunciation of *eu*, see § 3. Phonetic symbol [e+m].

2. Secondary diphthongs occur when a vowel is immediately followed by *j*. Ex. *hojta* [høj'ta:] to shout, *aj* in *Bajern* [baj:ən] Bavaria, and *uj* in the exclamation *uj!* [uj:], etc.

C. CLASSIFICATION OF CONSONANTS

§ 26. Interrelation of consonants and consonant sounds. Description of the consonants in alphabetical order § 27 ff.

* The English pronunciation of this word is [øt:ərbe:kən]. Avoid giving Swedish close o [ø] this sound even when it is short.



Note. In the above diagram the consonants have been arranged according to their individual point of articulation in the mouth into: 1. *Bilabial*, 2. *Labio-dental*, 3. *Dental*, 4. *Supra-dental* (or *Alveolar*), 5. *Palatal*, 6. *Velar*, and 7. *Glottal* sounds.

Reading horizontally these sounds arrange themselves into: 1. *Explosives* (or stops), 2. *Fricatives* (or spirants), 3. *Laterals*, 4. *Tremulants*, and 5. *Nasals*.

§27.

b [be:]

b. *Voiced-Labio-dental* occurs initially (short), medially and finally both long and short.

1. It is pronounced like English *b* in *bell*. *Phonetic symbol* [b].
Ex. *bok* [bɔ:k] book, *bubbla* [bub'la:] bubble, *stab* [sta:b] staff, *snabb* [snab:] swift.

2. *b* is voiceless, or semi-voiced before *s* and *t*. *Phonetic symbol* [p]
Ex. *Jakobs* [ja:kɔps] Jacob's, *snabbt* [snap:t] swift (neut. sing. of the adjective *snabb*).

§28.

c [se:]

c. This letter has limited usage in Swedish words.

1. When *k* normally should be lengthened (*kk*), *ck* replaces *kk*.
Phonetic symbol [k]. Ex. *plocka* [plok'a:] to pick, *ock* [ɔk:] also.

2. *c* occurs in words of foreign origin, in names, and in recent borrowings. It has the following phonetic values:

a) Before the soft vowels *e*, *i*, *y*, it sounds like English *s* in *sing*.
Phonetic symbol [s]. Ex. *cerebral* [serebra:l] cerebral, *cirkus* [sir:kus] circus.

b) Before the hard vowels *a*, *o*, *u* it is like English *k* in *keep*.
Phonetic symbol [k]. Ex. *Karl* (or *Carl*) [ka:l] Charles (prop. name), *Nicander* [nikan:dər] Nicander (prop. name), *Colberg* [kol:bærj] proper name, *curling* [kær'lin:g] curling.

c) Before consonants, *c* is like *k* in *keep*. *Phonetic symbol* [k].
Ex. *acceptera* [aksepte:ra] to accept, *clearing* [klærin:g] banking term.

d) *c+h* is like English *sh* in *shawl*. But see §41, 2, d) note.
Phonetic symbol [ʃ]. Ex. *champagne* [ʃampan:j] champagne, *Charlotte* [ʃalot'a:] Charlotte, *chaufför* [ʃofør:r] chauffeur, *check* [tʃek:] check, *chef* [ʃe:f] chief.

- Note 1. In some instances *ch* plus consonant or vowel has the sound of *k*.
 Ex. Chrysander [krys'an:dər] prop. name, Chœrus [kɔrə:us] prop. name.
- Note 2. *c+h* is pronounced *ck* [k] in the word och [ɔk:] and.

§29.

d [de:]

1. *d* occurs initially (short), medially and finally both long and short. It is like English *d*, but is articulated farther forward in the mouth. *Phonetic symbol* [d].

a) Ex. dal [da:l] valley (dale), bada [ba'da'] to bathe, räd [ro:d] counsel, rädda [red'a'] to rescue.

b) *d* is practically voiceless before *k* and *s*. Ex. idka [it'ka'] to carry on (practice), godsägare [gat'se'garə] gentleman farmer.

2. *dj*. In this combination *d* is nearly always silent. *Phonetic symbol* [j]. Ex. djäkne [jæk'nə'] student (deacon), djur [jw:r] animal (deer).

Note. For *d*, preceded by *r* (*rd*), phonetic symbol [d], see §3 and cf. §40, 2.

§30.

f [ɛf:]

f occurs initially (short), medially and finally long (in the latter position only in loan-words). *Phonetic symbol* [f]. Ex. fara [fa'ra'] to travel (to fare), skaffa [skaf'a'] to procure, skymf [sym:f] insult, räfsa [ref'sa'] hay-rake, stoff [stof:] stuff.

Note. In the orthography employed prior to 1906 the *v*-sound was represented in absolutely final position by *f*. Ex. bref [bre:v] letter; medially the *v*-sound was represented by *fv*. Ex. gifva [gi'və'] to give. Since 1906, *v* replaces older *f* and *fv*, except in some proper names. Ex. Lagerlöf [la:gərlø:v], Silfverberg [sil'verber:j].

§31.

g [ge:]*

g, voiced back-palatal explosive, occurs initially (short), medially and finally both long and short. *Phonetic values*:

1. Hard *g* like English *g* in *game*. *Phonetic symbol* [g].

a) Before the hard vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *å*. Ex. gå [go:] to go, våga [vo'ga'] to dare, lägga [leg:a'] to lay, gul [gw:l] yellow, gala [ga'la'] to crow (yell).

b) Before *e* in syllables of weak and least stress. *Phonetic symbol* [g]. Ex. segel [se:gəl] sail, kagge [kag'e'] keg.

c) Before consonants. Ex. glad [gla:d] cheerful, gnola [gnɔ'lə'] to hum, grind [grin:d] gate, kägla [çeg'la'] cone.

d) In absolutely final position - except in the combinations *lg* and *rg* - see 2b) below. Ex. svag [sva:g] weak, teg [te:g] tilled strip of land, dugg [dug:] drizzle.

2. *g* before the vowels *e*, *i*, *y*, *ä*, *ö*, has the sound of English *y* in yes [je:s]. *Phonetic symbol* [j].

a) Ex. geväg [je:nvə'g] short cut, gissa [jis'a'] to guess, gyllene [jyl'enə'] golden, gök [jø:k] cuckoo (*cuculus canorus*), gärna [jæ'nə'] willingly (gladly), Georg [je:ɔrj] George, Norge [nor:jə] Norway.

* In the name of the letter, *g* is pronounced like English *g* in *go*.

Note. In some words of foreign origin, *g* before front palatal vowels occasionally wavers between the hard and the soft sound. In the following examples, the preferred form, usually hard *g*, is given: gitarr [gitar:] guitar, teologi [teologi:] theology, original [origina:l] original, portugis [potwgi:s] Portugese, legitim [legiti:m] legitimate, tangera [tange:ra] to touch (be tangent to), fingerad [finge:rad] adj. fictitious.

b) *g*, immediately preceded by an *l* or an *r* belonging to the same syllable as *g*, has the sound of English *y* in *yes* [jɛ:s:s]. Phonetic symbol [j]. Ex. berg [bær:j] mountain, helg [hel:j] holy day (church), torg [tor:j] market place.

3. *g*, before hard consonants (*s*, *t*), becomes practically voiceless. Phonetic symbol [k]. Ex. högst [hök:st] highest, byggt [byk:t] built, sagt [sak:t] said.

4. *g* is pronounced *ng* [ŋn] between preceding short vowel and immediately following *n*. Phonetic symbol [ŋ]. Ex. fagna [fəŋ'na] to please, lugna [luŋ'na:] to calm, vagn [vəŋ:n] carriage (wagon). See §37.

5. *g* in loan-words, principally French, sounds somewhat like French voiceless *ch*-, *sch*-, *sh*-, and *che*- in such words as *cher*, *schisme*, *shako* and *vache*. The related English sound is usually represented by *sh* as in *shell* [ʃel], *shop* [ʃɔp], *possession* [po'zeʃən]. Phonetic symbol [ʃ]. Ex. ingenjör [inʃenjø:r] engineer, passagerare [pasase:rare] passenger, sergeant [saʃan:t] sergeant.

6. *g* in the combination *gj* is silent. Phonetic symbol [j]. Ex. gjorde [jω:dø:] did (performed), gjort [jω:t:] done, gjord [jω:d] girth, gjuta [ju'ta:] to pour (to cast, as iron, etc.), gjuten [ju'ten:] cast (poured).

§32.

h [ho:]

h is not subject to doubling. It occurs almost exclusively in initial position. Phonetic symbol [h].

1. *h* is the equivalent of English *h* in *hand*. Ex. hat [ha:t] hate (hatred), anhang [an'hæŋ'] faction (followers), domherre [dəm'hær'e] bullfinch.

2. *h* is silent:

a) In the combination *hj*. Phonetic symbol [j]. Ex. hjon [jω:n] helpmate (mate, man and wife), fattighjon [fat'tigjω:n] or [fat'ijω:n] pauper, hjärna [jε:n'a:] brain.

b) In the combination *hv*. Phonetic symbol [v].

Old Orthography

New Orthography

hvad	vad	[va:d]	what
hvilken	vilken	[vil'ke:n]	who, which
hvit	vit	[vi:t]	white
hvete	vete	[ve:tə:]	wheat
Hven	Ven	[ve:n]	name of an island

§33.

j [ji:]

j, anterior-back-palatal spirant, is not subject to lengthening (doubling), but occurs both long and short. Initially it is always short, medially mostly long; when final it is always long.

1. The sound is like English *y* in *yes* [je:s]. Phonetic symbol [j]. Ex. ja [ja:] yes, haj [haj:] shark, jänta [jen'ta:] lass, nej [nej:] no, jul [ju:l] Christmas (yule-tide).

2. In words of French origin *j* has the approximate sound of French *ch-* in *cheval* [ʃəval] horse. Phonetic symbol [ʃ]. Ex. projekt [prøʃt:k:t] project, journalist [ʃu:nalɪst:t] journalist, justéra [ʃyste:rə] to adjust.

§34.

k [ko:]

k, unvoiced back-palatal explosive, occurs initially short; medially and finally both long and short. When *k* normally should be lengthened (kk), it is written *kk* [k]. The letter has the following phonetic values:

1. *k* is like English *k* in *king*. Phonetic symbol [k]

a) *k* is hard before the hard vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *å*. Ex. kaka [ka'ka:] cake (also flat, thin bread), koka [kɔ'ka:] to boil (to cook), kula [ku'la:] ball, bullet, kål [ko:l] cabbage.

b) *k* is hard before the vowels *e* and *i* in syllables of weak and least stress. Ex. virke [vir'ke:] raw material, bräkig [bro'kig:] troublesome.

c) *k* is hard before a soft, fully stressed vowel in numerous loanwords. Ex. anarki [anarki:] anarchy, arkiv [arki:v] archives, fabrikör [fabrikɔ:r] manufacturer, bankett [banket:] banquet.

d) *k* is hard when preceded or followed by consonants, except *j(kj)*, see 2, b) below. Ex. klocka [klok'a:] clock, watch, kalk [kal:k] chalice, karsk [kaʃ:k] gay (cocky); and in final position. Ex. hök [hø:k] hawk, bok [bø:k] book.

2. *k*, unvoiced fricative. Phonetic symbol [χ].

a) Before the soft vowels *e*, *i*, *y*, *å*, *ö*. This sound resembles English *ch-* in *child* [tʃaɪld]. Phonetic symbol [χ]. Ex. kil [χi:l] wedge, kedja [χe'dja:] chain, källa [χel'a:] spring (source), körsbär [χœʃ:bær] cherries; χ is pronounced tχ in lofty, emphatic speech: kil [tχi:l] wedge, kedja [tχe'dja:] chain.

b) The combination *kj* occurs before the hard vowels *o* and *u*. Phonetic symbol [χ]. Ex. kjol [χø:l] skirt, kjortel [χø:tø:l] skirt.

§35.

l [ɛl:]

l, voiced dental lateral, occurs initially (short), medially and finally both long and short. Phonetic symbol [l].

1. It resembles English *l* in *land*. Ex. lag [la:g] law, ful [fø:l] unattractive (foul), gäll [jel:] shrill. Avoid the English *l*-sound as in *all*.

2. a) *l*, in the combination *lj*, is silent. Ex. ljum [jum:] luke-warm, ljunga [juŋ'a:] to flash (lighten).

b) *l* is silent in the words *värld* [væ:d] world, and *karl* [ka:r] fellow.

§36.

*[ɛm:]

m, voiced labial nasal, occurs initially (short), medially and finally both short and long. It should be borne in mind, however, that the long Swedish *m*-sound is but rarely indicated by doubling of the character (*mm*) at the end of a word. Swedish words like *tom*, *stam*, *fram*, *glam*, *skam*, etc., are pronounced as if written *mm*. Ex. *kam* [kam:] comb (pl. *kammar* [kam'ar'] combs), *dröm* [dröm:] dream (pl. *drömmar* [dröm'ar'] dreams).

Note. Swedish words in which *m* is written *mm* in absolutely final position are three in number: *damm*, *ramm*, *lamm*. See below.

Phonetic symbol [*m*]. *m* is pronounced:

1. Like English *m* in *man*. Ex. *man* [man:] man, *alm* [al:m] elm, *mamma* [mam'a'] mam(m)a, *tom* [tɔm:] empty, *damm* [dam:] dam (also pond), *lamm* [lam:] lamb, *ramm* [ram:] (battering-) ram.

Note 1. Quantity is unsettled in a few words where *m* follows a vowel, particularly *a*. Ex. *kram* [kra:m] small wares, or [kram:] adj. cloggy.

Note 2. In the noun *dom* [dɔm:] sentence (judgment), its derivatives and compounds *m* is not written *mm* in intervocalic position although so pronounced. Ex. *domen* [dɔm'en] the sentence (judgment), *domare* [dɔm'are'] judge, *domaren* [dɔm'aren'] the judge.

2. *m*, unvoiced labial nasal, occurs as a variant of voiced *m* in absolutely final position after *t* and *s*. Ex. *rytm* [ryt:m] rhythm, *schism* [fis:m] schism. But when *m* becomes syllabic, it immediately becomes voiced again. Ex. *rytmén* (i.e., *ryt-men*) [ryt:mén] the rhythm.

§37.

*[ɛn:]

n, voiced, dental nasal, occurs initially (short), medially and finally both long and short

Phonetic symbol [*n*]. *n* is pronounced:

1. Like English *n* in *night*. Ex. *natt* [nat:] night, *känna* [gɛn'a'] to know (recognize, feel), *sann* [san:] true. *njuta* [njut'a'] to enjoy.

Note. In a number of words, *n* is not written *nn* in absolutely final position, although it is so pronounced. Compare the parallel behavior of the letter *m*. Ex. *man* [man:] man, *män* [mɛn:] men; *men* [mɛn:] but; *min* [mɪn:] my (mine); *vän* [vɛn:] friend; *han* [han:] him, *hon* [hɔn:] she.

2. *ng* as a combination represents a nasal sound. Phonetic symbol [*ŋ*]. It is pronounced:

a) Like English *ng* in *singer* [sɪŋ:ər] Ex. *sångare* [sɔŋ'are'] singer, *ting* [tɪŋ:] thing, *finger* [fiŋ:ər] finger.

Note. It should be noted that English *ng* in *finger* is pronounced *fiŋər*, i.e., nasal *n* plus hard *g* (ŋ+g). This pronunciation of *ng* in Swedish is limited to words of foreign origin. Ex. *fungera* [funge:ra] to function, *fingerad* [fiŋge:rad] simulated (fictitious), etc.

b) *n* is pronounced *ng* [*ŋ*] when followed by *k* in the same root-syllable. Cf. English *nk* in *think*. Ex. *bänk* [bɛŋ:k] bench, *tanke* [tæŋ:kə'] a thought, *länka* [lɛŋ:ka] to link together, direct.

c) When *n* is preceded by *g* (*gn*) in the same root-syllable, this combination is pronounced *ngn* [*ŋn*]. Ex. *lugn* [luŋ:n] calm, *lugna* [luŋ'nɑ'] to calm, *ugn* [uŋ:n] oven, *ugnar* [uŋ:nɑ'r'] ovens, *vagn* [vɑŋ:n] wagon, *vagnar* [vɑŋ:nɑ'r'] wagons, *bagna* [bɔŋ'nɑ'] or [bo'gna'] to warp.

Note. In ordinary speech, *n* is usually silent between a preceding *m* and a following *d* or *t*. Ex. *jämnt*, even, *nämnd* [nem:d] board (of trade) etc. Otherwise *nn* must be pronounced. Ex. *jamm* [jəm:n] even. Note also that in words containing -*gns* [ŋn+s], the *n* becomes silent when followed by -*s*. Ex. *ugnslucka* [uŋ'sluk'a] oven-door.

§ 38.

p [pe:]

p, *unvoiced labial explosive*, occurs initially (short), medially and finally both long and short. *Phonetic symbol* [p]. It is pronounced like English *p* in *pillar*. Ex. *palm* [pal:m] palm, *apa* [a'pa:] ape, *peppar* [pep'ar:] pepper, *papp* [pap:] cardboard.

Note 1. *p* is silent in the combination *ps*. *Phonetic symbol* [s]. Ex. *psalm* [sal:m] psalm, *psaltare* [sal'ta:rə'] psalter. But *pn* = *pn* (distinctly p+n) as in *pneumatisk* [pneumatisk] pneumatic; *ps* = *ps* as in *psykologi* [psykologi:] psychology.

Note 2. *ph* occurs in a few proper names and is pronounced *f*. *Phonetic symbol* [f]. Ex. *Josephson* [jɔ:sɛfson] proper name, *Philip* [fi:lip] proper name.

Note 3. *pt* = *pt* as in *Ptolemaüs* [ptolemə:us] Ptolemy, (prop. name), *ptyalin* [ptyali:n] ptyalin (chem.).

§ 39.

q [kw:]

q, *posterior palatal (or anterior velar) explosive*, occurs only in the combination *qu* (*qw*, *qv*) in some proper names, e.g., *Quennerstedt* [kvə:nərstdə:t], *Qvarnström*, *Granquist*. Latin proper names are always so written: *Quintilianus* [kvintilia:nus] Quintilian.

In the modern orthography the digraph *qu* (*qv*) has been replaced by *kv*. *Phonetic symbol* [kv]. Ex. *kvick* [kvik:] quick, *kvart* [kvat:] quarter (of an hour), *kvinna* [kvɪn'a:] woman (queen), *kvittra* [kvit'rə:] twitter, *kväll* [kvæ:l:] evening, *kväva* [kvæ'va:] smother, *kväkare* [kvæ'kare:] Quaker.

§ 40.

r [er:]

r, *voiced supradental*, is the normal Swedish tongue-tip *r*-sound. It occurs after consonants and in intervocalic position. In medial and final position it occurs both long and short.

1. Swedish tongue-tip trilled *r* is more sonorous than English *r*. Ex. *röd* [rø:d] red, *bråd* [bro:d] hurried (hasty), *föra* [fø:rə:] to guide (conduct), *större* [stør:e] larger.

Note. Swedish final *r* must not be suppressed or slurred like English *r* in *father* ['fa:ðə(r)] and similar cases.

2. When *r* is immediately followed by *d*, *l*, *n*, *s*, and *t*. The tip of the tongue is curved upward and backward and articulates against the posterior parts of the gums (alveoli). The result is a composite sound produced by the fusion of *r+dental* or liquid consonant. These retroflex consonant sounds and their acoustic effect have their counterpart in English. Compare *r+consonant* in the word *bird* [bə:(r)d], *curl* [kə:(r)l], *churn* [tʃə:(r)n], *spurt* [spə:(r)t]. Undue emphasis of the retroflex sound is to be carefully guarded against.

The phonetic symbols of the combinations *rd*, *rl*, *rn*, *rs*, and *rt* respectively, are: [d], [l], [n], [ʃ], and [t].

a) *Phonetic symbol* [d]. Ex. *lärd* [la:d] learned, *herde* [he'də:] herdsman, *börda* [bør'da:] burden.

b) *Phonetic symbol [l]*. Ex. *sorla* [so'la:] to purl, *jarl* [ja:l] earl, *kärl* [çæ:l] vessel (utensil), *ärlig* [æ'lig:] honest, *Karl* [ka:l] Charles.

c) *Phonetic symbol [n]*. Ex. *barn* [ba:n] child, *garn* [ga:n] yarn, *sommarn* [sɔm'an:] the summer.

d) In the combination *rs*, the fusion takes place as in the above instances, but the two elements (*r+s*) produce a slightly different sound which resembles American *-rs-* in the word *Pershing* [pə:sɪŋ]. *Phonetic symbol [ʃ]*. Ex. *vers* [vɛʃ:] verse, *fors* [fɔʃ:] water-fall, *karsk* [kaʃ:k] gay (cocky), *korsett* [koʃt:] corset.

e) *Phonetic symbol [t]*. Ex. *borta* [bot'a:] away, *hjärta* [jæt'a:] heart, *skjorta* [ʃw'ta:] shirt, *aderton* [a:dətɔn] eighteen, *hårt* [ho:t:] hard.

§41.

s [s̪:]

s, unvoiced spirant, never voiced like English *s* in *rose* [rouz]. It occurs initially (short), medially and finally both long and short. The sound is like English *s* in *sing*.

1. *Phonetic symbol [s]*. Ex. *sal* [sa:l] hall (large room), *sebra* [se:bra] zebra, *fasa* [fa'sa:] horror, *vissna* [vis'nɑ:] to wither, *barkass* [barkas:] barge.

2. *s* in combination with other letters:

a) *sb*. *Phonetic symbol [sp]*. Ex. *sbirr* [spir:] policeman (fig. myrmidon), Ital. *sbirro*.

b) *sc*, like English *sc* in *scene*. *Phonetic symbol [s]*. Ex. *scen* [se:n] stage, *scepter* [sep:tər] sceptre, *sceneri* [senəri:] scenery, *konvalescent* [kɔnvalesənt] or [-fən:s:t] convalescent,

c) *sf*. *Phonetic symbol [sf]*. Ex. *sfär* [sfær:r] sphere, *sfinx* [sfɪŋk:s] sphinx.

d) *sch*. *Phonetic symbol [ʃ]**. Ex. *schal* [ʃa:l] shawl, *Schweiz* [ʃvej:ts] Switzerland, *manschett* [manʃet:] cuff, *mustasch* [muʃta:s] moustache.

e) In loan-words ending in *-sion*, and *-ssion*, the combination *-si-* and *-ssi-* are pronounced like the corresponding English consonant combinations. *Phonetic symbol [ʃ]*. Ex. *pension* [paŋʃə:n] pension, *mission* [miʃə:n] mission.

f) *sj*. *Phonetic symbol [ʃ]*. Ex. *sjaskig* [ʃas'kig:] shabby, *sju* [ʃw:] seven, *själ* [ʃe:l] soul, *sjö* [ʃø:] sea (lake).

g) *skj*. *Phonetic symbol [ʃ]*. Ex. *skjorta* [ʃw'ta:] shirt, *skjul* [ʃw:l] shed (shanty).

h) *stj*. *Phonetic symbol [ʃ]*. Ex. *stjäla* [ʃe'la:] to steal, *stjärna* [ʃæ'nɑ:] star, *stjälpa* [ʃel'pa:] overturn (upset).

3. *sk* has the following sound values:

a) Before the soft vowels *e*, *i*, *y*, *ä*, *ö*. *Phonetic symbol [ʃ]*. Ex. *skida* [fi'da:] ski, *skynda* [fyn'da:] to hasten, *sked* [fe:d] spoon, *skäl* [fɛ:l] reason (cause), *skör* [fæ:r] brittle.

b) By exception *sk* before hard vowels is pronounced *s* in the following words: *människa* [men'iʃa:] human being, *marskalk* [maʃal:k] marshal.

c) *sk* like English *sk* in *skates*, before the hard vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *å*, and before the vowels *e* and *i* in end-syllables and derivative syllables of

* The Swedish *sch*-sound [ʃ] is formed farther back and is more voluminous than the corresponding English sound.

secondary and least stress. *Phonetic symbol [sk]*. Ex. *skal* [skɑ:l] shell, *rind*, *skola* [sko'la:] school, *skåla* [sko'la:] to propose a toast, *skalla* [skal'a:] to resound, *skulor* [skw'lɔr'] slops, *fisken* [fis:kən] the fish, *ruskig* [rus'kig'] nasty (of the weather, etc.), *handske* [han'dske'] or [han'ske'] glove.

d) *sk* is hard before soft vowels in words of foreign origin.

Phonetic symbol [sk]. Ex. *skiss* [skis:] sketch, *skeptisk* [skɛp:tisk] skeptical, *konfiskera* [kɔnfiske:ra] confiscate, *skelett* [skelet:] skeleton.

e) *sk* is hard before consonants, except *j* (2, *g* above), after consonants and at the end of a word. *Phonetic symbol [sk]*. Ex. *skriva* [skri'va:] to write, *ask* [ask:] ash (tree), *mänsklig* [mæn'sklig'] human.

Note. For the sound value of the combination *-rsk-* as in *färsk* [fæʃ:k], see the letter *r*.

§42.

t [te:]

t. *unvoiced stop*, occurs initially (short), medially both long and short. Swedish *t* is a dental sound, not a supradental as in English

1. *Phonetic symbol [t]*. Ex. *tak* [ta:k] roof, *matta* [mat'a:] mat (rug).

Note 1. *th* occurs in some family names. *Phonetic symbol [t]*. Ex. *Thomander* [tɔman:der], *Tham* [tam:], *Munthe* [mun'te']. Given names are written with *t* or *th*: *Elisabet* [eli'sabət'] Elisabeth, *Tomas* [tɔ:mas] Thomas; place names with *t* only: *Aten* [ate:n] Athens, *Korint* [kɔrin:t] Corinth.

Note 2. *t* may be silent in some words of foreign origin. Ex. *dessert* [desə:r] or [desə:t:] dessert, *konsert* [kɔnse:r] or [kɔnse:t] concert.

2. The combination *-ti-* in words of Latin origin represents the following sounds:

a) *-ti-* is pronounced *-tsi-* when followed by *a* or *e*.

Phonetic symbol [tsi]. Ex. *gratier* [gra:tsiər] (the) Graces, *initiativ* [initsiati:v] initiative, *patient* [patsien:t] or [pasien:t] patient.

Note. The name *Fritiof* or *Fritjof* is pronounced [frit:jof].

b) When the combination *-ti-* is followed by *o* and preceded by a vowel or *r*, it resembles English *t+sh* in: "I bet she did it." Ex. *portion* [potʃə:n] portion, *station* [statiɔ:n] station.

c) When the combination *-ti-* is followed by *o* and preceded by a vowel or any consonant, except *r*, it is pronounced approximately like *-tion-* in the English word *direction* [di'reksʃən]. Ex. *lektion* [lekʃə:n] lesson, *inspektion* [inspekʃə:n] inspection, *expedition* [ɛkspediʃə:n] expedition.

d) The combination *tj* when followed by one of the following vowels *a*, *e*, *o*, *u*, *å*, *ö*, has approximately the sound of English *ch* in *chin* [tʃin].

Phonetic symbol [ç]. Ex. *tjabba* [çab'a:] to bicker, *tjeckisk* [çɛk:isk] Czechic, *tjock* [çɔk:] thick, *tjuder* [çu:dər] hobble (tether), *tjäder* [çɛ:dər] wood-grouse, *tjänst* [çen:st] service, *Tjörn* [çø:n] name of a Swedish island.

§43.

v [ve:]

v is a voiced labio-dental spirant. It occurs initially, medially and finally. It is not doubled in writing in any position. Its phonetic value is that of English *v* in *Victor*. *Phonetic symbol [v]*. Ex. *vana* [vɑ:'na:] custom, *vagn* [vɑ:g:n] carriage (wagon), *hava* [ha'va:] to have, *slav* [sla:v] slave.

It should be noted, however, that although *v* is not doubled in spelling, the *v*-sound may be pronounced *long* in some instances. Thus the combination of short vowel + long *v*-sound is a variant pronunciation of long vowel + short *v*-sound in a limited number of words. Ex. stövel, boot (top-boot) may be pronounced either [stø:vəl] (long vowel and short *v*-sound, or [stöv:əl] (short, open vowel and long *v*-sound).

Note 1. When stem-*v* is followed by *s* or *t*, it loses some of its sonancy. Ex. dovt [do:vt], neut. sing. of dov [do:v] dull (of sounds, noises, etc.). When the preceding vowel or consonant sound is short, the *v* hardens into an *f*-sound. Ex. livstd [lif:stid] or [lif·sti'd] life-time, halvt [hal:ft] neut. sing. of halv, half.

Note 2. For the older orthography, *fv* for *v* and *f* for *v*, see the letter *f*.

§44.

w [dub:əlt(t) ve:]

w. The letter *w* is always pronounced like English *v* in *Victor*. Phonetic symbol [v]. *w* occurs in a few Swedish names only and in foreign proper names and derivatives. Ex. Wallin [vali:n] Wallin, Wien [vi:ən] Vienna, Schweiz [ʃvej:ts] Switzerland, schweizare [ʃvej'tsara:] Swiss, Warschau [vaʃ:aʊ] Warsaw.

§45.

x [ɛk:s]

x is pronounced like English *x* in *wax*. Phonetic symbol [ks]. Ex. exempl [ɛksem:pəl] example, Texas [tek:sas] Texas, reflex [reflek:s] reflex; *x* = *ks* or *s*. Ex. Xantippa [ksantip'a:] or [santip'a:] Xanthippe; *x* = *s*, Xerxes [sær:ksəs] Xerxes; *xi* = *kʃ*. Ex. reflexion [reflekʃɔ:n] reflection; *x* = *ks* or *s*. Ex. Xylograf [ksylogra:f] or [sylogra:f] Xylographer.

§46.

z [sɛ'ta:]

z has the sound of English *s* in *sing*. The letter has very limited use in the new Swedish orthography and has been replaced in some instances by *s*. Phonetic symbol [s]. Ex. Zakarias [sakari:as] Zachariah, zebra* [se:bra] zebra, zigenare [sige:nare] gypsy, zink [sig:k] zinc, zoologi [sωɔologi:] zoology, Zeus [sɛm:s] Zeus proper name.

* Old orthography. See *zebra*.

ACCENTUATION

A. STRESS (Expiratory Accent)

§47. There are in Swedish five different degrees of stress.

1. Principal stress (4 = :)*: This stress affects the following groups of words:

- a) All native words of one syllable. Ex. *ord* [ɔ:d] word, *hand* [han:d] hand, *fot* [fω:t] foot.
- b) Words with the prefix *be-*, *ge-* and *för-*. Ex. *bestämma* [bestem:a] to decide, *gevär* [jевə:r] gun (rifle), *förlara* [förfklara] explain.
- c) Loan-words and words ending in -ari. Ex. *general* [jenera:l] general, *kommendant* [komendant:t] commandant, *bryggeri* [bryggers:] brewery, *universitet* [univeſite:t] university.

Note. This stress is also called the *monosyllabic accent*, because it affects words of one syllable, and a single syllable, usually the last, in loan-words and some other words of foreign origin. *The diacritical mark (:) is not used together with any other mark in the same word.*

2. Principal stress (3 = '), also called the *bisyllabic or grave (gravis) accent*, which always occurs together with a secondary accent (2 or 1) affects:

a) Compounds which have strong secondary stress on the second component part. Ex. *stenhus* [sten'hū:s] stone house, *lärar(e)befattning* [læ'rar(e)-befat'ning] office of a teacher, *bokhylla* [bō'khyl'a] bookshelf, *tillhörta* [til'hō'ra] to belong to.

b) Words whose second component part is one of the following terminations: -dom [-dōm'], -het [-he't], -lek [-le'k], -skap [-ska'p], -aktig [-ak'tig], -bar [-ba'r], -faldig [-fal'dig], -haftig [-haf'tig], -sam [-sam']. Ex. *fattigdom* [fat'igdōm'] poverty, *skönhet* [ʃø'nhe't] beauty, *grannskap* [gran'ska'p] neighborhood, *mångfaldig* [møŋ'fal'dig] manifold, *tröttsam* [tröt'sam'] tiresome.

c) Simple words of more than one syllable. These have weak secondary stress (1 = ') on the second (or on a later) syllable. Ex. *flicka* [flik'a'] girl, *gosse* [gøs'e'] boy, *gossarna* [gøs'aŋa'] the boys, *huvudet* [hū'vudet'] the head, *huvudena* [hū'vudəna'] the heads.

3. Least, or zero stress (0), is indicated for illustrative purposes only, not in ordinary transcription. Ex. *and-en* [an⁰də⁰n] = [an:dən] the duck, (*indef. and* [an:d]), *talade* [ta³la⁰də¹] = [ta'lade'] talked, *betalade* [be⁰ta⁴-la⁰də⁰] = [beta:lade] paid.

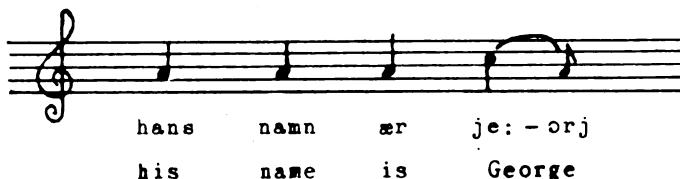
B. INTONATION (Musical Accent)

§48. There are in Swedish two distinct types of tone (intonation, tonality), the so-called single tone or *Tone I*, and the double tone or *Tone II*. The nature of Swedish accentuation is very complicated. Only the most important aspects of it can be set forth here.

* In the large dictionary under publication by the Swedish Academy, the degrees of stress are indicated by the numerals 4, 3, 2, 1, and 0 (zero). 4 and 3 indicate principal stress. The numbers correspond to the diacritical marks employed in this book as follows: 4 = :, 3 = ', 2 = ', 1 = ', 0 = o. Zero stress is disregarded in the ordinary use of the International Phonetic Alphabet.

§49. *Single Tone.* By Single Tone (also called acute accent) is meant the tone of a word which has the monosyllabic stress ($\acute{}$ = :), Ex. han^{acute}dən [hən:dən] the hand, tal^{acute}leön [tal:ən] the pine tree, bageri^{acute}et [bagərɪ:ət], the bakery. In the isolated word, i.e., as we find it in the dictionary, the voice rises vigorously on the syllable which has the stress, only to drop on the unaccented syllable very much as in the second syllable of the word mar-k^{acute}et [mar:kət]. The rise and fall of the voice may be illustrated by the graph [↗↘]. But phoneticians insist that the pitch is sustained longer in Swedish than in English where the downward plunge begins on the first syllable. In Swedish the lowering of the pitch is said not to set in until on the second syllable.

In musical notation the rise and fall of the voice in the enunciation of the word *Georg* would be:



Tone I, the monosyllabic or acute accent, is used in the following cases:

1. In all words of one syllable in the language. Ex. kom [kɒm:] come, and in words of more than one syllable which have stress $\acute{}$ (= :). Ex. bageri [bagərɪ:] bakery, see below.

2. In many words of more than one syllable ending in -el, -en, -er. Such words were originally considered monosyllabic, the e of the syllable having been introduced later to facilitate pronunciation. Ex. fågel^{*} [fɔ:gəl] the bird (fowl), vapen [vapən] weapon, finger [fiŋ:ər] finger.

Two important groups of words belong here:

a) Irregular plurals of the third declension. Ex. böcker [bøk:ər] books, fötter [föt:ər] feet, also bönder [bøn:dər] farmers, bröder [brø:dər] brothers, and others.

b) Present indicative singular of the strong verb. Ex. griper [gri:pər] (I) grip, seize, bryter [bry:tər] (I) break, etc. By analogy also weak verbs ending in the singular in -er (medieval Swedish ending -ir). Ex. böjer [bøj:ər] (I) bend, and likewise drömmer (II) dream; säljer (I) sell, köper [kø:pər] (I) buy, etc.

3. In the definite form of nouns that have Tone I in the indefinite form. Ex. foten [fø:tən] the foot, fötterna [föt:ənə] the feet, handen [han:dən] the hand, händerna [hən:dənə] the hands, etc.

4. In comparatives which end in -re (not -are). Ex. större [stør:ə] larger, bättre [bæt:rə] better, äldre [el:drə] older (elder).

5. In most words of more than one syllable, except compounds, with principal stress on another syllable than the first. Here are included many words of foreign origin. Note also words with the prefix *be-** *e-*, *for** (when it has the sense of *ver-* in German). Ex. befalla [befal:a] to command, evad [eva:d] whatever, förfölja [förföl:ja] to pursue (haunt), gevaldiger [jeval:digər] warden. Further examples: tangent [tangen:t] key (piano), martyr [maty:r]

* In double compounds *be-* and *for-* have the bisyllabic accent. Ex. befullmäktiga [be'fullmek'tiga] to authorize, förtördela [förfördə'lə] to injure.

* Masc. pl. fåglar [fø:gla:r].

martyr, nation [natʃɔ:n] nation, välsigna [vælsig:nɑ] to bless, Amerika [ame:-ri:kɑ] America.

Note 1. Verbs with the prefix *be-*, *för-*, *väl-*, have *Tone I*, but the simple verbs have *Tone II*. Ex. behålla [behɔ:lɑ:] to keep, but hålla [hɔ:lɑ:] to hold, förfölja [förföl:jɑ] to pursue, but följa [föl:jɑ:] to follow, välsigna [vælsig:nɑ] to bless, but signa [signɑ:] to bless.

Note 2. The above classes of words having *Tone I* (:) show many exceptions, noticeably in the case of words of foreign origin. Ex. gravinna [grevin'a:] countess, professor [prəfes'or:] professor, and others of the same type.

Note 3. Words which mostly occur without stress in the sentence, have *Tone I*. Ex. under [un:dər] under, över [ø:vər] over (above), således [so:ledəs] thus, härmad [hæ:rmed] herewith, etc.

§50. *Double Tone*. By Double Tone, also called the *grave*, or *musical accent*, is meant the stress which occurs exclusively in words of more than one syllable. This accent is peculiar to Swedish and Norwegian. It is described by phoneticians as *falling-rising*, i.e., the voice drops on the first syllable only to rise on the second to a higher level than that of the tone of the first syllable. In musical notation the enunciation of the word *syster* would be:



It should be noted that one or more than one syllable between the accented syllables have the so-called *musical low tone*. That is, the pitch drops to a certain level and the words are enunciated in a monotone more or less after the fashion of the enunciation of the French word *in-di-vi-si-bi-li-té*, where *weak* and *weakest* grades of stress alternate until the last syllable. Ex. Indef. sing. fängelse [fæŋ'əlse:] prison, def. sing. fängelset [fæŋ'əlsət:] the prison. Indef. pl. fängelser [fæŋ'əlsər:] prisons, defin. pl. fängelserna [fæŋ'əlsənɑ:] the prisons.

Tone II, the grave or bisyllabic accent is used as a rule in the case of words not included under *Tone I*.

1. In most bi- or polysyllabic words. Ex. gata [ga'tɑ:] street, gator [ga'tɔ:r:] streets, gatorna [ga'tɔŋɑ:] the streets.

2. In most compounds. These have a strong secondary accent on one of the syllables of the second component part. Ex. läroanstalt [læ'rɔ:anstal:t] educational institution; fattigdom [fat'igdəm] poverty.

Some words waver between *Tone I* and *Tone II*. Ex. omöjlig [o'møj'lig] or [o'moj:lig] impossible; ursäkta [u'rsæk'tɑ] or [u'sæk:ta] to excuse.

Note. The so-called *even accent*, so common in English, is practically unknown in Swedish. Ex. genomvåt [je:nomvo:t] wet through (to the skin) is justified only when it is a matter of emphasis, otherwise it is pronounced [je:nomvo:t].

§51. It is common practice of compilers of Swedish grammars to close the discussion of the musical accent by arranging a set of words, orthographically identical in most cases, but of different meaning, in opposite columns in order that the learner may have the opportunity of studying the subtle differences in pitch and tonality by contrasting the tones of the words:

	Tone I	Tone II
anden	[an:dən] the wild duck	anden [an·dən'] the spirit (soul)
axel	[ak:səl] shoulder	axel [ak'səl'] axle (also Axel, prop.name)
biten	[bi:tən] the piece of wood, etc.	biten [bi:tən'] bitten (pp. of strong verb)
buren	[bw:rən] the cage	buren [bw'rən'] borne (pp. of bärä)
elden	[el:dən] the fire	elden [el'dən'] inspire (fire) (imperative of elda)
heden	[he:dən] the heath (moor)	heden [he'dən'] adj. heathen
fäster	[fes:tər] (I) fasten, pres. sing. of the verb fästa	fester [fes'tər'] feasts, festivals
pänter	[pan:tər] panther	panter [pan'tər'] pledges (in games)
eder	[e:dər] you(r)	eder [e'dər'] oaths
slutet	[slw:tət] the end	slutet [slw'tət'] closed (pp. of the verb sluta)

§52. Stress and Intonation in Connected Speech.

In the foregoing it has been pointed out that in the pronunciation of the isolated word, stress and tone are subject to distinct rules. When words are made into sentences, sentence stress and rhythm rob many words of their *lexical accent*. This is particularly true of prepositions, conjunctions, and other particles, except, of course, when contrast requires stress; terms of measure (minutes, hours, years, etc.): en två års resa [~---!~] a journey of two years. Note also the following: konungariket Sverige [~---!~] The Swedish Kingdom; Nya Dagligt Allehanda [~---!~] name of a Swedish newspaper; Kapten Falk [~!~] Captain Falk.

In the statement: Detta är en nyttig liten artikel, *nyttig* receives the main stress: This is a *useful* little article. Compare: En nästan utsliten gammal så kallad nyckelharpa, an almost *worn-out* so-called "Jew's harp". In phonetic transcription the division of words in the sentence may be ignored: [niminarvelinteahanredanæ hæ:r!] You don't mean to say, do you, that he is already *here!*

In connected speech, tones are as a rule *rising*, except before a full stop. Ex. Gossen var trött, [- - -] The boy was tired. Han har somnat, [- ~ \!] He has fallen asleep. In questions the tones are *rising*: Har ni tappat boken? [- -- -?] Have you lost the book?

CAPITALIZATION

§53. Capitals are used as follows:

1. In every word that begins a sentence. Ex. Vi älska sanningen. We love the truth.

2. In all proper names. Ex. Skalden Erik Axel Karlfeldt avled 1931. The poet Erik Axel Karlfeldt died in 1931. Stockholm är Sveriges huvudstad. Stockholm is the capital of Sweden.

3. In the words Gud, God; Herren, the Lord, and Frälsaren, the Redeemer.

4. In titles, when used in addressing persons in writing: Herr Andersson, Mr. Andersson; in the archaic second person pronoun I, ye; Ni (polite address) you; in the words Eder (Er), dat., acc. of the pronouns I and ni, you; sometimes Du, thou (Din, thy; Dig, thee); in headings: Stockholms Dagblad, name of a Swedish daily paper.

5. The following type of compound words (written separately) usually capitalize the first part when the second component part is a common noun:

Svea artilleri	Svea artillery
Skandinaviska halvön	The Scandinavian peninsula
Svenska Akademien	The Swedish Academy
Uppsala universitet	The University of Uppsala

Contrary to English usage, the following classes of words are not capitalized:

1. Words derived from proper names, both adjectives and nouns.
Ex. Han är göteborgare. He is a Gothenburger, amerikan, American.

2. Names of peoples. Ex. Det var många svenskar, fransmän och engelsmän närvarande. There were many Swedes, Frenchmen and Englishmen present.

3. Names of months, days and religious festivals. Ex. Årets första månad heter januari. The year's first month is called January. Veckans dagar äro sju: söndag, måndag, tisdag, etc. The days of the week are seven: Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, etc., allhelgonadag, All Saints' Day.

PUNCTUATION

§54. Swedish employs the same punctuation marks as English, i.e., punkt (.) period, frågetecken (?) interrogation point, utropstecken (!) exclamation point, semikolon (;) semicolon, kolon (:) colon and komma (,) comma.

The marks of punctuation are used somewhat alike in both languages, but note the following discrepancies in the case of period and comma: Contrary to English usage, a period (.) is not placed after letters in abbreviated titles. Ex. Dr (or D:r) Karl N. Johnson. St (or S:t) Göran och draken, Saint George and the Dragon. Note also the absence of punctuation marks in the heading of a letter: Stockholm den 30 maj 1937.

§55. *Comma*. The comma is the most common of punctuation marks. According to traditional rules, comma is used, first of all, in the following cases:

1. To separate complete, co-ordinated sentences from one another.
Ex. Människan spår, men Gud rår. Man proposes, but God disposes.

Note 1. Whenever in doubt as to the place of a comma, it is placed where good delivery requires a pause. Ex. Spring fort, så hinner ni hem i tid. Run fast and you will get home in time.

In direct questions introduced by *vem som*, *vilken som*, *vad som*, the comma is placed before the first pronominal word. Ex. Kan ni säga mig, vilken väg som är genast? Can you tell me which way is the most direct?

Note 2. Comma is usually omitted:

a) Between co-ordinated clauses even when the co-ordinating conjunction unites them. Ex. När solen har gått ned och luften blir avkylld, stiger ofta dimma upp. When the sun has set and the atmosphere has cooled off, a fog often rises.

b) Between two conjunctions. Ex. Taket var nytt, men när det regnade, rann vattnet igenom. The roof was new, but when it rained, the water ran through (it).

c) Before a subordinate clause preceded by a preposition. Ex. Vid vårt sammanträffande talade vi om (,) att hamnen borde utvidgas. At our meeting we discussed the necessity of expanding the harbor.

d) Before subordinate clauses, at least whenever one of the clauses is very short, and, in particular, if the conjunction *att* is left out, or the relative pronoun *som*, or both. Ex. Den (,) som flyr (,) vinner ingen seger. Whoever (he who) flees wins no victory. Jag hoppas (,) ni kommer med. I hope you will come along. Visa mig fågelboet (,) ni talade om. Show me the bird's nest you spoke about.

Note 3. Since only complete sentences (clauses) are separated by comma, no comma is used in contracted sentences of the following type: I främmande land är intet kärare än brev från hemmet. In a foreign country, nothing is dearer than a letter from home.

2. Comma is used where a conjunction - *och* and, *eller* or, *men* but - is left out. Ex. Husmodern satte fram smör, ost, bröd och mjölk. The housewife put on (the table) butter, cheese, bread and milk.

3. Comma is used to separate appositions, inserted explanations, attributive and independent, contracted sentence elements, salutations, and exclamations. Ex. Finlands störste skald, Runeberg, föddes 1804, Finland's greatest poet, Runeberg, was born 1804. Skåne, vårt rikaste landskap, tillhörde länge Danmark, Scania, our richest province, belonged to Denmark for a long time. Hunnen till kullens topp, stannade vandraren. Having arrived at the top of the hill, the wanderer stopped. O, hur härligt majsol ler! Oh, how gloriously the May sun is smiling! Se morsk ut, min gosse! Wear a bold look, my boy!

§56. Other signs, such as parenthesis (), dash (-), quotation marks ("), hyphen (-), and apostrophe ('') are, generally speaking, used as in English. It should be borne in mind, however, that hyphenation is used in Swedish only in the case of compounds, particularly double compounds, and to render repetition unnecessary, as in the last example. Ex. sol-år, solar year, in which word intervocalic *l* normally would be carried to the second vowel; folkskole-inspektör, inspector of the graded public schools; solens upp- och nedgång, the rising and setting of the sun.

The apostrophe (') is not used in Swedish to indicate possession, unless the word (name) ends in an *s*-sound. Ex. Valerius' visor, The ballads of Valerius. Sometimes it is used in foreign words to distinguish the genitive case from the nominative: Shakespeare's dramer. The dramas of Shakespeare.

TITLES AND FORMS OF ADDRESS

Herr Malm	[hær: mal:m]	Mr. Malm
Mina herrar	[mi'na' hær'ar']	Gentlemen
Fru Petterson	[fru: pet:əson]	Mrs. Petterson
Mina damer	[mi'na' da'mer']	Ladies
Fröken Malm	[frø:kən mal:m]	Miss Malm
God morgen	[gø mor'øn']	Good morning
God middag	[gø mid:a]	Good afternoon
God aften	[gø af'tøn']	Good evening
God kväll	[gø kvø:l:]	Good evening
Tack i alla fall.	[tak: i: al'a' fal:]	Thanks just the same.
God natt	[gø nat:]	Good night
Adjö	[adjø:] or [ajø:]	Good bye
Vi träffas i morgen.	[vi: tref'as' i: mor'øn']	We meet tomorrow = I'll see you tomorrow.
Herr Andersson, ett ögon-	[hær: an'deʃøn', et ø'gon-	Mr. Andersson, just a moment
blik om jag får be.	blik' om ja fo:r be:]	if I may ask (if you please).
Ursäkta mig, herr Svens-	[u'sek:ta mej:, hær: sven:son,	Excuse me, Mr. Svensson, but
son, men jag har inte	men: ja ha:r in'tø: ti:d	I have not the time just now.
tid just nu.	jue:t nm:]	
Förlåt, jag visste inte	[fø'lø:t, ja vis'tø: in'tø: at:	Pardon (me), I didn't know that
att ni hade så bråttom.	ni: had'e: so: brot:øm]	you were in such a hurry.
Får jag låna boken? Ja,	[fo:r ja lo'na' bø:køn -	May I borrow the book? -
var så god.	ja:, vaʃ:o gø:]	Yes, you may.

THE CLASSROOM

klassrummet	[klas'rum'et]	the classroom
Professorn	[prøfes'.øn']	the professor
lärljungen	[la'rjuŋ'en]	the pupil
klassen i svenska	[klas:øn i: svøn'ska:]	the class in Swedish
läraren	[la'rare:n']	the teacher
en student, studenten	[en: stødøn:t, stødøn:tøn]	a student, the student
en studentska, studentskan	[en: stødøn:tska, stødøn:tskan]	a woman student, the woman student
en pulpet, pulpeten	[en: pulpe:t, pulpe:tøn]	a desk, the desk
pulpelocket	[pulpe:tloket]	the lid of the desk
en plats, platsen	[en: plat:s, plat:søn]	a place, the place
en svart tavla, (den)	[en: svat: ta'vela', (den:)]	a blackboard,
svarta tavlan	[svat'a' ta'velan']	the blackboard
krita, kritan	[kri'ta', kri'tan']	chalk, the chalk
ett bord, bordet	[et: bø:d, bø:døt]	a table, the table
en dörr, dörren	[en: dør:, dør:øn]	a door, the door
Stäng dörren. Öppna dörren.	[støg: dør:øn, øp'na' dør:øn]	Close the door. Open the door.

ett fönster, fönstret	[et: fön:stér, fön:stré:t]	a window, the window
en bok, boken	[en: bø:k, bø:kən]	a book, the book
en examen	[en: eksa:mén]	an examination
en läxa, läxan	[en: læk'sa:, læk'san:]	an assignment, (lesson)
Stäng dörren och öppna två fönster.	[stæŋ: dør:ən øk: (o) öp'na' tvø: fön:stér]	the assignment
ett betyg, betyget	[et: bety:g, bety:gøt]	Shut the door and open two windows.
ett ord, ordet	[et: ø:d, ø:dø:t]	a grade, the grade
ett fel, felet	[et: fe:l, fe:let]	(examination mark)
Vilket fel har han begått?	[vil'ket' fe:l ha:r han: begø:t:]	a word, the word
en sida, sidan	[en: si'da', si'dan:]	a mistake, the mistake
en rad, raden	[en: ra:d, ra:dø:n]	What mistake has he made?
en sats, satsen	[en: sat:sø:s, sat:sø:nøn]	a page, the page
en lektion, lektionen	[en: lekʃø:n, lekʃø:nøn]	a line, the line
en ordlista, ordlistan	[en: ø:dli'sta, ø:dli'stan]	a sentence, the sentence
en blyertspenna, blyertspennan	[en: bly'ætspen'a, bly'ætspen'an]	a lesson, the lesson
en penna, pennan	[en: pen'a', pen'an:]	a vocabulary, the vocabulary
papper, papperet	[pap'ær', pap'ærøt']	a lead-pencil, the lead-pencil
Var så god och stig in i klassrummet.	[vaʃ:o gø: o sti:g in: i: klas'røm'øt]	a pen, the pen
en skriftlig uppgift, den skriftliga uppgiften	[en: skrif'tlig' up'jif't, den: skrif'tliga' up'jif'tøn]	paper, the paper
upprop, uppropet	[up'rø:p, up'rø:pøt]	Please step into the
en skrivbok, skrivboken	[en: skri'vø:bø:k, skri'vø:bø:køn]	classroom.
Alla närvarande svara Ja .	[al'a' næ'rva'rændø sva'ra' ja:]	a composition,
Stå upp!	[sto: up:]	the composition
Sitt ned!	[sit: ne:d]	roll call, the roll call
Öppna böckerna!	[öp'na' bø:k:ønø]	a note-book, the note-book
Var så god och läs, Fröken Storm.	[vaʃ:o gø: o læ:s, frø'køn' stor:m]	(exercise-book)
Gå till svarta tavlan, Herr Karlson.	[go: til: svat'a' tav'lan' hør: ka:lsøn]	All present answer "Yes".
Läs igenom ordlistan.	[læ:s ije:nom ø:dli'stan]	Rise!
Förstår ni, när jag talar svenska?	[fø:sto:r ni: næ:r ja ta'lar' svøn'ska'?)	Be seated! (Sit down!)
Ja, bara ni inte talar allt för fort.	[ja:, ba'ra' ni: int'e ta'lar' al:t fø:r fø:t:]	Open the books!
Och ni, herr Gustafsson?	[ø ni: hør: gus'tavson']	Please begin reading,
Nej, bara här och där.	[nej:, ba'ra' hæ:r o dæ:r]	Miss Storm.
Vad betyder ordet--- ?	[va bety:dø:r ø:dø:t---]	Go to the blackboard,
Hur uttalas ordet på svenska?	[hø:r u'ta'las ø:dø:t po: svøn'ska']	Mr. Karlson.
Stava ordet "sju" på svenska.	[sta'va' ø:dø:t 'ʃø: po: svøn'ska']	Read through the vocabulary.
Läs satsen tydligt.	[le:s s sat:søn ty'dlik't]	Do you understand when
Läs högre!	[le:s hø:grø:]	I speak Swedish?
Svara på svenska.	[sva'ra' po: svøn'ska']	Yes, if you only don't speak altogether too fast.

Översätt från engelska
till svenska.
Upprepa vad jag säger.
Det var bra! (någorlunda;
inte riktigt rätt).
Lär utantill.
Skriv till nästa timme
övningen på sidan---
Lägg igen böckerna!
Lämna in de skriftliga
övningarna.
Vad har jag fått för
betyg i svenska?
Ni fick "A-".
Det gläder mig.
Vid terminens slut få
lärljungarna betyg över
flit, kunskaper och
uppförande.

[ø'vər'set' frɔ:n; eŋ:əlska til: svɛn'ska'] Translate from English into Swedish.
[up're'pa va ja sj:ər] Repeat what I say.
[dε va bra!: (no'gəlun'da) in'te' rik'ti(k)t' ret:] That was good! (so, so; not quite right).
[læ:r ɯ'tantil'] Learn by heart.
[skri:v til: nɛs'ta' tim'e ø'vnig'en po: si'dan'--] Write for the next hour the exercise on page---.
[leg: ijen: bök:əga] Close your books.
[lɛm'na' in: de: skrif't-liga' ø'vningsana'] Hand in your written exercises.
[va ha:r ja fɔ:t: fæ:r bety:g i: svɛn'ska'] What grade have I received in Swedish?
[ni: fik: "a" mi:nus] You received an "A-".
[dε gle:dər mej:] It makes me happy.
[vi:d termi:nəns slw:t fo: lær'jung'ana bety:g ø'ver' fli:t, kun'ska'pər ok: up'fə'rändə] At the end of the term the pupils receive a grade for diligence, scholarship and conduct.

ABBREVIATIONS

acc.	accusative	dep.	deponent	pl.	plural
adj.	adjective	fem.(f.)	feminine	prep.	preposition
adv.	adverb	gen.	genitive	pron.	pronoun
art.	article	i.e.	that is	refl.	reflexive
aux.	auxiliary	impers.	impersonal	rel.	relative
cf.	compare	indef.	indefinite	sing. (sg.)	singular
com. (c.)	common	intr.	intransitive	str.	strong
conj.	conjugation	irr.	irregular	subj.	subjunctive
dat.	dative	masc.(m.)	masculine	syll.	syllable
decl.	declension	neut. (n.)	neuter	trans.	transitive
def.	definite	nom.	nominative	wk.	weak

PART II

LESSON I

A. GRAMMAR

*Gender, Number, Case.**Present and Past Indicative of vara, hava, sitta.*

§57. Gender. The gender of a noun is:

1. *Masculine* if it can be referred to or replaced by the masculine singular pronoun *han* [han:]. Ex. Var är gossen? Han är ute. Where is the boy? He is outside.

2. *Feminine* if it can be referred to or replaced by the feminine singular pronoun *hon* [hən:]. Ex. Flickan - hon. The girl - she.

3. It is *common* if it can be referred to or replaced by the singular non-neuter demonstrative *den* [dən:] it. Ex. Var är stolen? Den är i rummet. Where is the chair? It is in the room.

4. It is *neuter* if it can be referred to or replaced by the neuter singular of the demonstrative pronoun *det* [də:t] it. Ex. Visa mig bordet. Här är det. Show me the table. Here it is.

Note. Originally Swedish, like other Germanic languages, had three genders, masculine, feminine and neuter. In the course of the development of the language, older masculine and feminine nouns designating things, e.g., *plogen* - *han*, the plow - he; *slagan* - *hon*, the flail - she, came to be referred to more and more by the demonstrative pronoun *den* [dən:], it (that), e.g., *plogen* - *den*, *slagan* - *den*, the plow - it, the flail - it. In this manner a new gender, *den*-gender or *reale* [rə'la:], was created. In more recent times the term *genus utrum* [je:nus ʊ:trum], either masculine or feminine, has been introduced to cover masc., fem., and *den*-genders. *Neuter*-gender has been termed *genus neutrum* [je:nus new:trum]. In this book the terms *common* and *neuter* will be used. By the term *common*, we shall understand masculine, feminine and *den*-gender, and by *neuter*, neuter gender.

Ex.	1. masc. - <i>gosse, far</i> (= <i>fader</i>)	boy, father
Common	2. fem. - <i>mor</i> (= <i>moder</i>)	mother
	3. <i>reale</i> - <i>tröja, skor</i> (<i>pl.</i>)	jacket, shoes
	4. neut. - <i>väder</i>	weather

§58. Number. There are two numbers: singular and plural.

Ex. *tröja, tröjor, mosse, mossar, fader, fäder, sko, skor.*

§59. Case. In Swedish as in English, there are functionally four cases: nominative, genitive (possessive), dative (indirect object), and accusative (direct object).

§60. Verb. Swedish distinguishes between strong and weak verbs. The infinitive ends, with relatively few exceptions, in -a. Ex. *vara*, to be, *hava*, to have, *sitta*, to sit. By dropping the infinitive ending, the stem of the verb is found: *var-*, *hav-*, *sitt-*. On the stem other verbal forms are made by adding personal endings and, in certain cases, by modification of the root vowel.

CONJUGATION A

INFIN.	vara		hava		sitta	
	PRES. INDIC.	PAST INDIC.	PRES. INDIC.	PAST INDIC.	PRES. INDIC.	PAST INDIC.
1. Jag är ²⁾ I am	var ²⁾ was	har ²⁾ have	hade had	sitter ²⁾ sit	satt sat	
2. { du " you are ni " "	" "	" "	" "	" "	" "	
SING. { han " he is hon " she is den " it is det " " "	" "	" "	" "	" "	" "	
1. vi äro we are	voro were	ha(va)	hade	sitta	sutto	
PL. 2. { I ären you are ni äro " "	voren voro	ha(ve)n ha(va)	haden hade	sitten sitta	sutton sutto	
3. de " they are	"	"	"	"	"	

- 1) Progressive and emphatic verbal forms like the English: *I am (was, will be) working, I do (did) work, etc.*, cannot be imitated in Swedish. See § 257, note 1
- 2) In *spoken* Swedish the singular form of the verb is used also in the plural, the only exception being the archaic 2nd person plural which is usually pronounced as it is written. Ex. [ja:, dū:, ni:, han:, hän:, den:, de:(t) æ:(r), vi: æ:(r), i: æ'rən', de æ:(r)].

B. READING SELECTION

Den avbrutna sagan

Det var en gång en mosse,
och i mossen en sten;
på stenen satt en gosse,
en liten en.

Han hade varken far eller mor,
han hade varken tröja eller skor.
Det blev ett rysligt väder -
mer säger jag ej dig,
förrn du ger gossen kläder
att han må skylla sig!

[dɛn: a'vbrʊtna sɑ:gɑn']

[dɛ:t va:r en: gɔŋ: en: mos'e',
ok: i: mos'en' en: ste:n;
po: ste:nən sat: en: gɔs'e',
en: li'ten' e:n ||
han: had'e' var'kən' fa:r el:ər mɔ:r,
han: had'e' var'kən' tröj'a' el:ər skɔ:r ||
dɛ:t ble:v et:ry'slik't ve:dər -
mɛ:r se:gər ja:g ej: di:g ,
før:n dū: je:r gos'en' klə:dər
at: han: mo: fy'la' si:g !]

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

den, the
avbrutna, interrupted
sagan, the story
det var en gång, there was
once upon a time
en, one, a
mosse, bog
och, and
i, in

mossen, the bog
sten, stone
på, on
stenen, the stone
satt, sat
gosse, boy, lad
en liten en, a little one
han, he
hade, had

varken - eller, neither - nor
far (fader), father
mor (moder), mother
tröja, jacket
skor, shoes
det, it
blev, became
ett, a (neut. art.)
rysligt, frightful
väder, weather
mer, more
säger, tell

jag, I
ej, not
dig, you (thee)
förrn (förrän), until
du, you (thou)
ger, give
gossen, the boy
kläder, clothing
att, that
må, may
skylla, cover
sig, himself

D. QUESTIONS

1. Vad handlar *sagan* om?
2. Den handlar om en *mosse*
och en *gosse*.
3. Vad var i *mossen*?
4. I *mossen* var en *sten*.
5. Vad satt på *stenen*?
6. En *gosse* satt på den.
7. Var *gossen* stor?
8. Nej, han var inte stor.
9. Vad var han då?
10. Han var liten.
11. Vad hade han inte?
12. Han hade *varken* *far* eller *mor*.
13. Han var *fader*- och *moderlös*.
14. Hur var han *klädd*?
15. Han hade ingen *tröja*.
16. Hade han *skor* på *fötterna*?
17. Nej, han var utan *skor*.
18. Hurudant blev *vädret*?
19. Det blev dåligt.
20. Hur gick det med *gossen*?
21. Det förtäljer inte *sagan*.
22. Vi få inte veta det, förrän
gossen får *kläder* att *skylla*
sig med.

[va:d han'dlar' sa'gan' om: ?
[den: han'dlar' om: en: mos'e'
ok: en: gos'e' ||
[va:d va:r i: mos'en' ?
[i: mos'en' va:r en: ste:n ||
[va:d sat: po: ste:nən ?
[en: gos'e' sat: po: den: ||
[va:r gos'en' stɔ:r ?
[nɛj:, han: va:r in'te' stɔ:r ||
[va:d va:r han: do: ?
[han: va:r li'ten' ||
[va:d had'e' han: in'te']
[han: had'e' var'ken' fa:r sl:ər mɔ:r ||
[han va:r fa'der'- ok: mɔ'derlø's ||
[hw:r va:r han: kled: ?
[han: had'e' in'en' tröj'a' ||
[had'e' han: skɔ:r po: föt:ənə?
[nɛj:, han: va:r m'tan' sko:r ||
[hw'rødant ble:v ve:drət ?
[de:t ble:v do'lik't ||
[hw:r jik: de:t me:d gos'en' ?
[de:t fæ:təl:jər in'te' sa'gan' ||
[vi: fo: in'te' ve'ta' de:t,
fær'en' gos'en' fo:r kle:dər
at: fy'la' si:g me:d ||

E. VOCABULARY TO QUESTIONS

vad, what
handlar... om, deals with
sagan, the story
den, it
stor, big, large

nej, no
inte, not
då, then
fader- och moderlös, an orphan
klädd, p.p., clothed, dressed

<i>ingen</i> , no	<i>vi</i> , we
<i>utan skor</i> , without shoes	<i>få inte</i> , are not permitted
<i>fötterna</i> , the feet	<i>veta det</i> , know that
<i>hurudant</i> , what kind of	<i>förrän</i> , until
<i>dåligt</i> , bad	<i>får kläder</i> , gets clothing
<i>hur gick det med gosson?</i> (freely) how did the boy come out?	<i>att</i> (sign of infin.), to
<i>förtäljer</i> , relates	<i>med</i> , with

LESSON II

A. GRAMMAR

Word order. Expletive "det". Indefinite article.
Classification of the Noun.

§61. *Word Order (principal clauses)*

1. *Normal word order.* Det blev ett rysligt väder...
 Han hade varken far eller mor.

Rule. When the subject of the verb begins the sentence (clause), the word order is normal, i.e., subject - verb - object (pred. nom.)

2. *Inverted word order.* På stenen satt en gosse...mer säger jag ej dig.

Rule. Whenever anything except the subject of the verb begins the sentence, Swedish, like German, has the inverted order: inverting element (på stenen... mer) - verb - subject - other sentence elements. The inverting element may be anything from a simple adverb or a prepositional phrase to a whole clause (sentence).

§62. *The Expletive.* The expletive *det* anticipates the subject of the verb. It corresponds to English *there*. Ex. Det var en gång en gosse... There was once upon a time a boy... Det blev ett rysligt väder... There arose a frightful storm... Det var många människor där. There were many people there.

Rule. In Swedish the verb used with the expletive *det* is always singular.

§63. *The Swedish language has three articles:*

1. The indefinite article.
2. The postpositive definite article.
3. The prepositive definite article.

§64. *The Indefinite Article.* The Swedish indefinite article corresponds in function to that of the English. As in English it is used in the singular only.

The forms of this article are:

- a) For nouns of common gender: *en*, *a*, *an*. Ex. *en gosse*, a boy; *en mosse*, a bog.
- b) For neuter nouns: *ett*, *a*, *an*. Ex. *ett ärtland*, a pea-patch; *ett skepp*, a ship.

§65. In most cases the use of the indefinite article in Swedish corresponds with the use of the indefinite article in English. The most notable exception is that it is not used with predicate nouns denoting nationality, religion, profession, political affiliation, trade, etc. Ex. *Han är amerikan* (protestant, professor, republikan, snickare). He is an American (a protestant, a professor, a republican, a cabinet-maker). But when the noun is modified by an adjective, the article is used. Ex. *Han är en god demokrat*. He is a good democrat.

THE NOUN

§66. *Classification.* There are in Swedish five groups of nouns which are easily recognized by their plural endings. One noun of each group will serve as illustration:

		<i>The Indefinite Noun</i>	
		SINGULAR	PLURAL
1st declension	<i>saga</i>	[sa'ga:]	<i>sag-or</i> [sa'gɔr'] <i>saga</i>
2nd	" <i>dal</i>	[da:l]	<i>dal-ar</i> [da'lɑr'] <i>dale</i>
3rd	" <i>park</i>	[par:k]	<i>park-er</i> [par'kər'] <i>park</i>
4th	" <i>bo</i>	[bω:]	<i>bo-n</i> [bω:n] <i>nest</i>
5th	" <i>lärarye</i>	[læ'rare:]	<i>lärarye</i> [læ'rare:] <i>teacher</i>

§67. Like English, Swedish has in the course of its development become analytic, that is, it has gradually lost the inflections which characterized it during the mediaeval period. Practically the only inflectional ending of the noun is the *s* of the genitive, or possessive case. Functionally, however, Swedish like English, has four distinct cases, viz.:

1. The nominative, which is the case of the subject of the verb.
Ex. *Gossen kastar bollen* [gos'ən' kas'tar' bol:ən] The boy throws the ball.
2. The genitive (possessive) case. Ex. *Detta är gossens hatt* [det'a' æ:r gos'səns' hat:] This is the boy's hat. *
3. The dative case (indirect object) which indicates the person or object to whom (or which) something is given, or for whom (or which) something is done. Ex. *Gossen gav sin vän bollen* (or, *bollen åt sin vän*) [gos'ən' ga:v sin: vən: bol:ən] (or, [bol:ən o:t sin: vən:]) The boy gave his friend (ind. obj.) the ball (or, the ball to his friend), ind. object, governed by a preposition.
4. The accusative case, or the case of the direct object of the verb.
Ex. *Johan träffade bollen* [jø'hjan' tref'ade' bol:ən] John hit the ball.

* This is the so-called *Saxon genitive* (possessive). It is the normal manner of expressing possession in the Swedish language. No apostrophe is used unless the noun involved ends in a sibilant sound (*s, x*). See §122 ff.

B. READING SELECTION

Lasse liten
(Topelius)

Det var en gång en gosse, som hette Lars, och efter han var så liten, kallades han Lasse liten. Han var en tapper karl; han reste kring hela världen i en ärtskidsbåt. Det var om sommaren, när ärtskidorna växte gröna och långa i trädgården. Lasse liten kröp in i ärtlandet på gången mellan bänkarna, där ärtstänglarna växte honom högt över mössan, och bröt sjutton stora skidor, de största och rakaste han kunde önska sig.

Då kom trädgårdsmästaren gående med sin bössa på axeln och hörde någonting prassla i ärtlandet. "Jag tror det är sparvar," ropade han. "Kas! kas!" men inga sparvar flögo, ty Lasse liten hade inga vingar, bara två små ben. "Vänta, nu skall jag ladda min bössa och skjuta sparvarna," sade trädgårdsmästaren.

Då blev Lasse liten rädd och kröp fram ur gången. "Förlåt mig, käre trädgårdsmästare," sade han: "Jag ville söka mig några vackra båtar. "Det må vara för denna gång," sade trädgårdsmästaren. "Men en annan gång mäste Lasse liten begära lov att söka fartyg i ärtlandet." "Det skall jag göra," svarade Lasse, och så bar det av till stranden. Där risrade han upp sina ärtskidor med en knappnål, spjälkade dem ordentligt och bröt små stickor till roddarbänkar. Sedan tog han ärterna, som varit i skidorna, och lade dem till last i båtarna. Somliga skidor gingo sönder, somliga blevo hela; och när alla varo färdiga, hade Lasse liten tolv båtar. Men det skulle ej vara båtar, det skulle vara stora krigsfartyg. Han hade tre linieskepp, tre fregatter, tre briggar och tre skonertar. Det största linieskeppet hette Herkules, den minsta skonerten hette

[las'ə' li:tən']
[təpe:lius]

[de:t va:r en: gɔŋ: en: gos'ə' som:
het'ə' la:f, ok: ef'ter' han: va:r so:
li:tən', kal'adəs' han: las'ə' li:tən' ||
han: va:r en: tap:ər ka:r ; han: re'ste'
krig: he'la' və:dən i: en: æt'fidsbo:t ||
de:t va:r om: som'are:n, næ:r æt'fi'dən
vek'ste' grø'na' ok: loŋ'a' i træ'dgo'dən ||
las'ə' li:tən' krø:p in: i: æt'lan'dət po:
gɔŋ:ən mel'an' bən'ka:nə', dæ:r æt'steg'-
lana vek'ste' ho:nəm' hæk:t s:ver mös'an',
ok: brø:t fut'on' stə'ra' fi'dər', de:
stəf'ta' ok: ra'kaste' han: kun'də' ön'ska'
si:g ||]
[do: kom: træ'dgodməs'tare:n go'ənde'
me:d sin: bös'a' po: ak:səln ok: hə'də'
no'gontig' pras'la' i: æt'lan'dət || "ja:g
trə:r de:t æ:r spar'var', rə'padə' han: ||
"kas!:! kas!:!" men: in'a' spar'var' flə'gə',
ty: las'ə' li:tən' had'ə' in'a' viŋ'ar'
ba'ra' tvo: smo: be:n || "ven'ta', nm: skal:
ja:g lad'a' min: bös'a' ok: jw'ta' spar'-
vana', " su'də' træ'dgodməs'tare:n ||]
[do: ble:v las'ə' li:tən' rəd: ok: krø:p
fram: w:r gɔŋ:ən || "fəlo:t mi:g, qə'rə'
træ'dgodməs'tare:, sa'də' han: "ja:g
vil'ə' sə'ka' mi:g no'gra' vak'ra' bo'tar' ||
"de:t mo: va'ra' fə:r den'a' gɔŋ:", sa'də'
træ'dgodməs'tare:n || "men: en: an'an' gɔŋ:
mös'te' las'ə' li:tən' bejə:ra lo:v at:
sə'ka' fa'ty:g i: æt'lan'dət || "de:t skal:
ja:g jə'ra'" svə'rədə' las'ə', ok: so: ba:r
de:t a:v til: stran:dən || də:r ris'padə'
han: up: si'na' æt'fi'dər me:d en: knap'-
no'l, spjel'kade' dem: ədən:tlikt ok:
brø:t smo: stik'or' til: rəd'arben'kar ||
se'dan: tə:g han: æt'əna', som: va'rit' i:
fi'dənə', ok: la'də' dəm: til: las:t i:
bo'tana' || som'liga' fi'dər' jin'ə' sön:-
dər, som'liga' ble'və' he'la'; ok: næ:r
al'a' və'rə' fə'diga', had'ə' las'ə' li:tən'
tol:v bo'tar' || me:n de:t skul'ə' ej: va'ra'
bo'tar', de:t skul'ə' va'ra' stə'ra' krik's-
fa'tyg || han: had'ə' tre: lin:jəsep, tre:
fregat:ər, tre: brig'ar' ok: tre:skə'nət'ər||
de:t stəf'ta' lin:jəsepet het'ə' hər:-
kuləs, den: min'sta' skə'nət'ən het'ə'

Loppan. Lasse liten lade alla tolv lop'an' || las'e' li:tən' la:də' al:a' tol:v i vatnet, och de flöto så präktigt, i: vat:nət, ok: de: flø'tə' 'so: prek'tik't att inga stora skepp dansa stoltare at: ig'a' stə'ra' sep: dan'sa' stol'tare' över havets böljor. ø:ver ha:vəts bøl'jər' ||]

VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

som, who	trädgårdsmästaren, the gardner	må vara, I'll let it go,
hette, was called	gående (pres. p.), along	(lit. may be)
Lars (Lasse), Lawrence	(lit.) walking	för denna gång, (for) this time
efter (eftersom), because	sin, his	en annan gång, another time
så, so	bössa, gun	måste, must
kallades, was called	axeln, shoulder	begära, ask
Lasse liten, Little Lawrence	hörde, heard	lov, permission
tapper, brave	någonting, something	söka, look for
karl, fellow, man	prassla (inf.), rustling	fartyg, ships
reste, traveled	tror, believe	göra, do
kring, around	det är, there are (lit. it is)	svarade, answered
hela, (the) whole	sparvar, sparrows	så bar det av till, then
världen, world	ropade, cried (out)	he was off for
ärtskidsbät, pea-pod boat	kas! kas! scat!, scat!	stranden, the shore (strand)
om sommaren, in the summer	men, but	där, there
när, when	inga, no	rispade upp, ripped open
ärtskidorna, the pea-pods	flögo, flew	sina, his
växte, grew	ty, because	ärtskidor, pea-pods
gröna, green	vingar, wings	knappnål, pin (straight)
långa, long	bara, only	spjälkade, split
trädgården, the garden	två, two	dem, them
kröp, crept	små, little	ordenligt, nicely, properly
in i, into	ben, legs	stickor, slivers (of wood)
ärtlandet, the pea-patch	vänta (imperat.), wait	till, to (for)
gången, the path	nu, now	(till) roddarbänkar,
mellan, between	skall, shall	(for) rowing benches
bänkarna, box-beds, rows	ladda, load	sedan, then, after that
där (varest), (there) where	skjuta, shoot	tog, took
ärtstånglarna, pea-vines, stalks	sparvarna, the sparrows	ärterna, the peas
honom, him	sade, said	som, which
högt, high	blev rädd, became frightened	(hade) varit, had been
över, above,	fram ur, forth from	skidorna, the pods
mössan, the (his) cap	gången, the path	läde, laid
växte honom högt över mössan,	förlåt, pardon	last, cargo
grew high over his cap	mig, me	båtarna, the boats
bröt, broke off	käre, dear	somliga, some
sjutton, seventeen	ville, wanted to	gingo sönder, went to pieces
skidor, pods	söka, look for	blevo, remained
de största, the largest (pl.)	mig (dat.) to me, for myself	hela, intact, whole
rakaste, straightest	några, a few, some	alla (pl.), all
kunde, could	vackra, nice, fine	voro, were
önska sig, wish for (himself)	båtar, boats	färdiga (pl.), ready

<i>tolv</i> , twelve	<i>briggar</i> , brigs	<i>präktigt</i> , nicely
<i>det skulle ej vara</i> , they were not meant to be	<i>skonertar</i> , schooners	<i>att</i> , that
<i>tre</i> , three	<i>Herkules</i> , Hercules	<i>skepp</i> , ships
<i>kriegsfartyg</i> , warships	<i>den minsta</i> , the smallest	<i>dansa</i> , dance
<i>linjeskepp</i> , ships of the line, man-o'-war	<i>skonerten</i> , schooner	<i>stoltare</i> , more proudly
<i>fregatter</i> , frigates	<i>Loppan</i> , The Flea	<i>över</i> , over
	<i>vattnet</i> , the water	<i>böljor</i> , billows, waves
	<i>flöto</i> , floated	<i>havets</i> , of the sea

D. QUESTIONS

1. Vem har författat denna berättelse?
 [vem: ha:r fərfat:at den'a:
beret:əlse]
2. Vad heter hjälten?
 [va(:d) he:tər jel'tən']
3. Varför kallades han så?
 [va:rfr̥er kal'adəs' han: so:]
4. För att han var så liten.
 [fə:r at: han: va:r so: li'tən']
5. Vad var hans rätta namn?
 [va(:d) va:r han:s ret:a nam:n]
6. "Lars" är en förkortning
av Laurentius.
 [la:s æ:r en: fər'kɔtniŋ'
a:v laøren:tsiws]
7. Vad är "Lars" på engelska?
 [va(:d) æ:r la:s po: eŋ:əlska]
8. Vad för en gosse var
Lasse liten?
 [va(:d) fə:r en: gos:e' va:r
las:e' li'tən']
9. Han var en bra pojke.
 [han: va:r en: bra: poj:kə]
10. Reste han mycket?
 [re'stə' han: myk'et']
11. Hur reste han världen runt?
 [hū:r re'stə' han: væ:dən run:t]
12. Vad växte i trädgården
en sommar?
 [va(:d) vək'stə' i trə'dgoðən
en: som'ar']
13. Vad gjorde Lasse?
 [va(:d) jə'də' las'e']
14. Hur höga varo ärtstänglarna?
 [hū:r hø'ga' va'rə' æt'steŋ'lana]
15. Hur många skidor bröt han?
 [hū:r mɔŋ'a' fi'dor' brø:t han:]
16. Vem kom och överraskade honom?
 [vem: kom: ø'veras'kadə ho'nom']
17. Vad hade han på axeln?
 [va(:d) had'e' han: po: ak:səln]
18. Hörde han något i ärtlandet?
 [hø'də' han: no'got' i: æt'lan'dət]
19. Vad troddc han att det var?
 [va(:d) trod'e' han: at: də(:t) va:r]
20. Flögo sparvarna bort?
 [flø'gə' spar'vana' bøt:]
21. Varför inte?
 [va:rfr̥er in'tə']
22. Vad hade Lasse liten?
 [va(:d) had'e' las'e' li'tən']
23. Laddade trädgårdsmästaren sin
bössa?
 [lad'adə' trə'dgoðsməs'tarən sin:
bøs'a']
24. Vad gjorde Lasse?
 [va(:d) jə'də' las'e']
25. Varför var gossen i ärtlandet?
 [va:rfr̥er va:r gos'en' i: æt'lan'dət]
26. Var trädgårdsmästaren ond?
 [va:r trə'dgoðsməs'tarən on:d]
27. Vad skulle Lasse göra
nästa gång?
 [va(:d) skul'e' las'e' jæ'ra'
nes'ta' goŋ:]
28. Hur öppnade han ärtskidorna?
 [hū:r öp'nadə' han: æt'ənə']
29. Var lade han ärterna?
 [va:r la'də' han: æt'ənə']
30. Hur många båtar hade han?
 [hū:r mɔŋ'a' bo'tar' had'e' han:]
31. Vad skulle båtarna föreställa?
 [va(:d) skul'e' bo'tana' fə'rəstel'a]
32. De skulle föreställa krigsskepp.
 [di: skul'e' fə'rəstel'a krik'ssep]
33. Hur flöto de på vattnet?
 [hū:r flø'tə' de: po: vat:nət]

E. VOCABULARY TO QUESTIONS

vem,	who, interr.	mycket,	much
har,	has	runt,	around
författat		en sommar,	one summer
written, composed		gjorde,	did
berättelse,	story	höga (pl.),	tall
heter,	is called, is named	många (pl.),	many
hjälten,	the hero	överraskade,	surprised
varför,	why	något,	something
för att,	because	trodde,	thought
hans,	his	bort,	away
rätta,	right	varför inte,	why not
namn,	name	laddade,	loaded
förkortning,	abbreviation	ond,	angry
av,	of	skulle,	intended to, was
på engelska,	in English	going to	
vad för en,	what kind of	nästa gång,	next time
bra,	fine, good	öppnade,	opened
pojke,	boy	förestalla,	represent

F. EXERCISE

§68. Classify as many nouns as you can in the Reading Selection by giving the plural of nouns occurring in the singular, and the singular of nouns occurring in the plural.

LESSON III

A. GRAMMAR

Definite Article. The Noun, 1st declension.

The Verb. Present and Past Indicative: bliva, skola, vilja.

§69. *The Definite Articles.* There are two definite articles, the *postpositive* and the *prepositive*.

The postpositive article corresponds in function to the English definite article. It differs from the latter in that it is placed *after* the noun it determines and is joined to it. The forms of this article are:

- a) For nouns of common gender: Singular: -en, or -n.
Plural: -na (or, rarely, -ne).
- b) For neuter nouns:
Singular: et, or -t.
Plural: -na, -a, or -en.

§70. *The postpositive article with nouns of common gender:*

In the singular:

1. -en is used when the noun ends in a consonant. Ex. bät-en, the

boat, *karl-en* [ka:rən] the fellow, *värld-en* [væ:dən] the world.

Note 1. Nouns of common gender ending in unstressed -el, -er, and -or, take -n.

Ex. *axel-n* [ak:səln] the shoulder, *fågel-n* [fɔ:gəln] the bird (fowl), *heder-n* [he:dən] the honor, *doktor-n* [dok'tɔ:n] the doctor. Here belong also the words *konsul-n*, the consul, and *purpur-n*, the purple.

Note 2. Other words ending in -l or -r take either -en or -n. Ex. *sommar-en* or *sommar-n*, the summer, *fjäril-en* or *fjäril-n*, the butterfly.

2. -n is used when the noun ends in a vowel. Ex. *gosse-n*, the boy, *mössa-n*, the cap, *ärtskida-n* [æt'fi'dan] the pea-pod.

Exceptions. Nouns of common gender ending in accented -e or -i take -en or -n. Ex. *armé-en* or *armé-n*, the army, *poesi-en* or *poesin* [pœsi:ən, pœsi:n].

Note. Words ending in unstressed -en drop the e before adding the article: *botten + en* becomes *bott-n-en* [bot:nən], the bottom, and in the same manner: *socken*, *socknen*, the parish; *sägen*, *sägnen*, the legend; *öken*, *öknen*, the desert, etc.

In the plural:

-na (occasionally -ne) is used with nouns of common gender. Ex. *ärtskidor-na* [æt'fi'dənə] the pea-pods, *bänkar-na* [bəŋ'kara:] the benches, *gossar-ne* [gœs'aŋə:] the boys, usually *gossar-na* [gœs'aŋə:>.

Note. The irregular nouns *gås*, goose, *lus*, louse, *mus*, mouse and *man*, man, have the following definite plural forms: *gäss-en*, the geese, *löss-en* [lœs:ən] the lice, *möss-en* [mös:ən] the mice, *männ-en* [mæn:ən] the men.

§ 71. The postpositive article with neuter nouns:

In the singular.

1. -et is used when the noun ends in a consonant or in a stressed vowel. Ex. *ärtland-et* [æt'lan'dət] the pea-patch, *bo-et* [bø:ət] the nest, *parti-et* [pati:ət] the party.

2. -t is used when the noun ends in an unstressed vowel.

Ex. *öga-t* [ø'gat:] the eye, *eko-t* [e:kət] the echo.

Note 1. Neuter nouns ending in unstressed -el, -en or -er drop the e of the ending before adding the postpositive article. Ex. *seg-l-et* [se:głət] the sail, *vap-n-et* [va:pñət] the weapon, *dund-r-et* [dun:drət] the thunder.

Note 2. Some neuter nouns retain the e of the ending. Ex. *siden-et* [si:dənət] the silk, *papper-et* [pap'ərət:] the paper.

In the plural:

1. -na is used as postpositive article in the plural with neuter nouns of the 3rd declension. Ex. *bryggeri-er-na*, the breweries.

2. -a is used as postpositive article in the plural with neuter nouns of the 4th declension. Ex. *äpple-n-a*, the apples.

3. -en is used as postpositive article in the plural with neuter nouns of the 5th declension. Ex. *skepp-en*, the ships.

§72. Some nouns do not take the postpositive article:

1. Abstract nouns ending in *-an*. Ex. *början*, beginning.

2. Most nouns of common gender ending in unaccented *-en*.

Ex. *examen*, examination, *fröken*, Miss (young lady).

3. Foreign nouns ending in *-um* and *-us*. Ex. *factum*, fact, *genus*, gender.

Note. Nouns ending in *-eum* and *-ium* drop *-um* and add *-et*. Ex. *museum*, museum, *muse-et*, the museum, *studium*, study, *studi-et*, the study.

§73. *The Prepositive Article.*

SINGULAR	PLURAL	
Common Gender	Neuter Gender	All Genders
den	det	de

This article is used together with the postpositive article when the noun is modified by an adjective. Ex. *det stora skeppet*, the big ship. See §84 ff.

§74. *Declension of the Noun.*

1st DECLENSION - INDEFINITE		1st DECLENSION - DEFINITE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL *
<i>A saga</i>	<i>Sagas</i>	<i>The saga</i>	<i>The sagas</i>
N. <i>en saga</i>	<i>sag-or</i>	<i>saga-n</i>	<i>sag-or-na</i>
G. <i>en saga-s</i>	<i>sag-or-s</i>	<i>saga-n-s</i>	<i>sag-or-na-s</i>
D. <i>till (för) en saga</i>	<i>sag-or</i>	<i>till (för) saga-n</i>	<i>sag-or-na</i>
A. <i>en saga</i>	<i>sag-or</i>	<i>saga-n</i>	<i>sag-or-na</i>

§75. *Membership of 1st declension.* To the first declension belong:

a) Common nouns; with few exceptions they are feminine and end in *-a* in the singular.

Note. *Historia*, story belongs to the 3rd declension, pl. ending *-er*; *historier*.

b) Nouns not ending in *-a* but belonging to the first declension and with the plural in *-or*:

<i>ros</i> , rose	<i>svan</i> , swan
<i>toffel</i> , slipper	<i>vad</i> , calf of the leg
<i>spän</i> , shaving(s)	<i>våg</i> , wave

c) Some masculine words, e.g.:

<i>kollega</i>	(pl. <i>-or or -er</i>)	colleague
<i>pappa</i>	(pl. <i>-or</i>)	papa
<i>pascha</i>	(pl. <i>-or or -ar</i>)	Pasha

* This declension forms its plural by dropping the ending *-a* of the nominative singular and adding *-or*.

d) Some nouns belonging to this declension are used in the plural only:

<i>anor</i> , ancestors	<i>orgor</i> , organs
<i>bannor</i> , scolding	<i>skovor</i> , scrapings (crust)
<i>folor</i> , manners	<i>skävor</i> , fragments (of glass, etc.)
<i>håvor</i> , riches (bounties)	<i>snubbor</i> , scolding (snubbing)
<i>inägor</i> , home-farm	<i>sådor</i> , bran
<i>utägor</i> , outlying property	<i>tarvor</i> , needs, necessities
<i>inälvor</i> , bowels	<i>åthåvor</i> , manner
<i>matvaror</i> , victuals	

CONJUGATION¹⁾

INFIN.	<i>vara</i>		<i>skola</i>		<i>vilja</i>	
	PRES. INDIC.	PAST INDIC.	PRES. INDIC.	PAST INDIC.	PRES. INDIC.	PAST INDIC.
SING.	1. jag bli(ve)r, <i>I become, etc.</i>	blev, <i>became, etc.</i>	skall, <i>shall, etc.</i>	skulle, <i>was to, etc.</i>	vill, <i>will</i>	ville, <i>wanted to, etc.</i>
	2. du "	blev	skall	skulle	vill	ville
	ni "	"	"	"	"	"
	han "	"	"	"	"	"
PL.	3. den "	"	"	"	"	"
	det "	"	"	"	"	"
	1. vi bli(va) <i>become, etc.</i>	blevo, <i>became, etc.</i>	skola, <i>shall etc.</i>	skulle, <i>were to, etc.</i>	vilja, <i>wanted to, etc.</i>	ville, <i>wanted to, etc.</i>
	2. I bliven	bleven	skolen	skullen	viljen	villen
	ni bliva	blevo	skola	skulle	vilja	ville
	3. de "	"	"	"	"	"

1) For the use of the singular form of the verb in place of the plural, and the exception to the rule, see §60, Note 2.

B. READING SELECTION

Lasse liten (cont.)

Nu skulle skeppen resa kring världen. Den stora holmen där borta var Asien; den stora stenen var Afrika; de små stenarna var Polynesien, och stranden, där skeppen seglade ut, var Europa. Hela flottan reste ut och flöt långt bort till världsdelarna. Linjeskeppen seglade raka vägen till Asien; fregatterna reste till Afrika; briggarna till Amerika och skonertarna till Polynesien. Men Lasse liten stod kvar i Europa och kastade småstenar ut i världshavet.

[nw: skul'ə' sep:ən re'sa' kriŋ:
væ:dən || den: stə'ra' hol'men' dæ:r bot'a'
va:r a:sien; den: stə'ra' ste:nən va:r
a:frika; de: smo: ste'nana' və'rə' polyne:-
sien, ok: stran:dən, dæ:r sep:ən se'g-
lade' m:t, va:r sərə:pa || he'la' flot'an'
re'ste' m:t ok: flə:t loŋ:t bot: til:
væ'dsde'lana || lin:jəsepən se'glade'
ra'ka' və'gen' til: a:sien; fregat:əna
re'ste' til: a:frika; brig'ana' til:
ame:rika ok: skonət:ana til: polyne:-
sien || men: las'ə' li'tən' stə:d kva:r i:
eurə:pa ok: kas'tadə' smo'ste'nar m:t i:
væ'dsha'vət ||]

Då fanns vid stranden av Europa en riktig båt, pappas egen vackra vitmålade båt, och Lasse liten klev i båten. Ärtskidsbåtarna hade hunnit så långt, att de knappt mera syntes som små grässtrån ute på oceanen. Lasse liten fick lust att själv resa ut till världsdelen. Det hade väl pappa och mamma förbjudit, men Lasse liten kom icke ihåg det. "Jag skall ro ett litet, litet stycke ut," tänkte han. "Jag skall taga fast skeppet Herkules nära Asiens kust, och sedan ror jag hem till Europa igen."

Lasse liten ruskade på bandet, varmed båten var fastbunden, och det var märkvärdigt, att bandet lossnade. Ritsch, ratsch, karl är karl, och så sköt Lasse liten ut båten. Nu skulle han ro, och ro kunde han, efter han hade rott så ofta på trappan där hemma, när trappan låtsades vara båt och pappas stora käpp åra. Men när Lasse liten ville ro, funnos inga åror i båten. Årorna varo inlästa i strandboden, och Lasse liten hade icke märkt, att båten var tom. Det är icke så lätt, som var man tror, att ro till Asien utan åror.

Vad skulle Lasse liten nu göra?

[do: fan:s vi:d stran:dən a:v smrø:pa en: rik'tig' bo:t, pap'as' e'gen' vak'ra' vi'tmo'lade bo:t, ok: las:e' li'ten' kle:v i: bo:tən || et'fidsbo'tana had'e' hun'it' so: lojt, at: de: knap:t me'ra' syn'tes' som: smo: grss'stro'n m:tə' po: osea:nən|| las:e' li'ten' fik: lust:t at: fel:v re'sa' m:t til: ve'dsde'lanə || de:t had'e' ve:l pap'a' ok: mam'a' förbj:dit, m:s:n las:e' li'ten' kom: ik'e' iho:g de:t || ja:g skal: rø: et: li'tet', li'tet' styk'e' m:t," ten'kte' han: || ja:g skal: ta'ga' fas:t sep:et hær:kuləs næ'rə' a:siəns kus:t, ok: se'dan' rø:r ja:g hem: til: smrø:pa ijem: ||]

[las:e' li'ten' rus'kade' po: ban:dət, va:rmed bo:tən va:r fas'tbun'dən, ok: de:t var märkvärdigt, at: ban:dət los'nade' || ritj, ratsj, ka:r æ:r ka:r, ok: so: han: rø:, ok: rø: kun'de' han:, sf'ter' han: had'e' røt: so: of'ta' po: trap'an' dæ:r hem'a', næ:r trap'an' lot'sades' va'ra' bo:t ok: pap'as' stø'ra' qep: o'ra' || men: næ:r las:e' li'ten' vil'e' rø:, fun'øs' in'a' o'rør' i: bo:tən || o'røna' vø'rø' in'lo'sta i: stran'dbø:dən, ok: las:e' li'ten' had'e' ik'e' mør:kt, at: bo:tən va:r tøm: || de:t æ:r in'te' so: lət:, som: va:r man: tra:r, at: rø: til: a:siən m:tan' o'rør' ||]

[va:d skul'e' las:e' li'ten' nm: jø'ra' ?]

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

skulle, were about to,
were going to
skeppen, the ships
resa, travel
den stora, the large
holmen, islet
där borta, yonder
Asien, Asia
stenen, rock
Afrika, Africa
stenarna, rocks
voro, were
Polynesien, Polynesia
seglade ut, sailed out

Europa, Europe
hela flottan, the entire fleet
reste ut, started out
flöt, floated
långt, far
världsdelen, parts of
the world
linieskeppen, the ships
of the line
raka vigen, straight ahead
fregatterna, the frigates
briggarña, the brigs
Amerika, America
skonertarna, the schooners
vitmålade, white-painted

stod kvar, stayed behind
kastade, threw, cast
småstenar, pebbles
ut i, out into
världshavet, the ocean
då, at that time
fanns, there was (lit.
was found)
vid, at
riktig, real
båt, boat
pappas, papa's
egen, own

klev i, climbed into	ro, row	karl är karl, a man is a man
hunnit (<i>supine</i>)*, reached, proceeded	ett litet stycke, a short distance	sköt ut, shoved out
så långt, so far	tänkte, thought	rott (<i>supine</i>)*, rowed
knäppt, scarcely	taga fast, catch	trappan, steps
mera, any more	skeppet, the ship	där hemma, at home
syntes, appeared	nära, near	lätsades vara, was
som, as, like	Asiens, of Asia	supposed to be
grässtrån, blades of grass	kust, coast	käpp, cane
ute på, out on	ror, will row	åra, oar
oceanen, the ocean	hem, home	funnos, there were (lit.
fick lust, was seized with a desire	igen, again	were found)
själv, himself	ruskade på, shook	inga, no
det, that	bandet, the rope	dror, oars
väl, to be sure	varmed, with which (wherewith)	inlästa, pp., locked up (in)
pappa, papa	fastbunden, bound fast	strandboden, boat-house
mamma, mama	märkvärdigt, a wonder (markeworthy)	(shore-booth)
förbjudit (<i>supine</i>)*, forbidden	lossnade, loosened	icke, not
kom inte ihdg, did not remember	(came untied)	märkt, (<i>supine</i>)*, noticed
skall, will	ritsch, ratsch, (onomatopoeia)	tom, empty
		lätt, easy
		var man, each one (everybody)

D. QUESTIONS

1. Vart skulle skeppen segla?
2. Vart styrde linieskeppen?
3. Vad blev det av Lasse?
4. Vad kastade han ut i oceanen?
5. Fanns det en riktig båt vid Europas strand på den tiden?
6. Vems båt var det?
7. Det var pappas egen.
8. Hur var den målad?
9. Var den vitmålad?
10. Vågade Lasse gå i båten?
11. Hur långt hade ärtskidsbåtarna hunnit?
12. Kunde man se dem?
13. Vad fick Lasse plötsligt?
14. Han fick lust att följa flottan ut på världshavet.
15. Men had inte far och mor förbjudit honom att fara ut i båt?
16. Jo då, men det hade han glömt bort.

[vat: skul'ə' sep:ən se'gla' ?
 [vat: sty'də' lin:jəsepən ?
 [va(:d) ble:v də:t a:v las'ə' ?
 [va(:d) kas'tade' han:m:t i:@sea:nən ?
 [fan:s də:(t) en:rik'tig' bo:t vi:d
 smrə:pas stran:d po: dən: ti:den ?
 [vem:s bo:t va(:r) də(:t) ?
 [de(:t) va:r pap'as' e'gən' ||
 [hə:r va:r dən: mo'lad' ?
 [va:r dən: vi'tmo'lad ?
 [vo'gadə' las'ə' go: i: bo:tən ?
 [hə:r ləŋ:t had'ə' æt'fidsbo'tana
 hun'it' ?
 [kun'də' man: se: dem: ?
 [va(:d) fik: las'ə' plöt'slik't ?
 [han: fik: lust:t at: föl'ja'
 flöt'an' m:t po: væ'dsha'vet ||
 [men: had'ə' in'te' fa:r ok: mə:r
 færbju:dit hə'nom' at: fa'ra'
 m:t i: bo:t ?
 [jə: do:, men: də:(t) had'ə' han:
 glöm:t bot: ||

* Neuter singular of the past participle. It forms compound tenses with *hava* as auxiliary and thus functions like the past participle in English.

17. Han steg i fars båt och
flöt ut på vattnet.
18. Hade han rött förut?
19. Vad fattades i båten?
20. Var kunde årorna vara?
21. Kan man ro utan åror?
- [han: ste:g i: fa:s bo:t ok:
flöt ut på vattnet ||
[had:e' han: rø:t færw:t ?
[va:(d) fat'adæs' i: bo:tən ?
[va:r kun'de' o'røna' va'ra' ?
[kan: man: rø: m'tan' o'rør' ?

E. VOCABULARY TO QUESTIONS

vart, whither, to what place	man, one	glömt bort, forgotten
styrde, steered	se, see	steg i, stepped into
blev det av, became of	fick, got	fars, father's
fanns det, was there	plötsligt, suddenly	flöt ut på, floated out on
på den tiden, at that time	följa, follow	förut, previously, before
vems, whose	flottan, the fleet	fattades, were lacking
målad, p.p., painted	fara ut, fare out, go out	kunde - vara, could be
vågade, dared	i båt, in a boat	årorna, the oars
gå i, to get into	jo då, yes, indeed	kan, can

F. EXERCISE

§76. Decline in the singular and plural the following nouns: *flotta, pappa, mamma, trappa, åra*; in the singular: *Afrika, Europa*.

LESSON IV

A. GRAMMAR

The Definite Article (cont.). The Noun 2nd Declension.

The Adjective, Indefinite and Definite Declensions.

Omission of the auxiliary "hava".

§77. Declension of the Noun (cont.)

2nd DECLENSION - INDEFINITE		2nd DECLENSION - DEFINITE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL*	SINGULAR	PLURAL
A dale	Dales	The dale	The dales
N. en dal	dal-ar	dal-en	dal-ar-na
G. en dal-s	dal-ar-s	dal-en-s	dal-ar-nas
D. till (för) en dal	dal-ar	till (för) dal-en	dal-ar-na
A. en dal	dal-ar	dal-en	dal-ar-na

§78. The 2nd declension. To this declension belong:

- Most monosyllabic nouns ending in a consonant. Ex. *blixt*, lightning; *eld*, fire; *själ*, soul. Many names of peoples, e.g., *dansk*, Danish; *lapp*, Laplander; *ryss*, Russian; *tysk*, German; *turk*, Turk.

* This declension is characterized by the plural ending *-ar*. It contains only common gender nouns. The postpositive article is *-en* or *-n* in the singular and *-na* in the plural.

Note. The following words of the second declension must be distinguished from words of identical spelling but different meaning which belong to the third declension: *bal* [ba:l] bale, *bas* [ba:s] base (voice), *bank* [baŋ:k] (sand) bank, *bok* [ba:k] beech tree, *börs* [bœf:] purse (pocket-book), *form* [fɔr:m] mold, *gång* [gɔŋ:] path (garden, etc.), *malm* [mal:m] sandy field, *mask* [ma:s:k] angling worm, not [nɔ:t] large net (fishing), *sits* [sit:s] seat (of a vehicle), *skänk* [ʃɛŋ:k] cupboard (sideboard), *stav* [sta:v] staff (crozier, etc.).

2. Some monosyllabic nouns ending in a vowel. Ex. *bro*, bridge; *by*, village; *fru*, married woman (Mrs.); *sky*, sky; *sjö*, lake (sea); *å* [o:] river; *ö* [ø:] island.

3. Nouns ending in *-e*, *-en*, *-dom*, *-ing*, *-ling*, *-ning*. Ex. *gosse*, boy; *öken*, desert; *egendom*, property (farm); *köping*, town (cheaping); *yngling*, youth; *byggnung*, building.

Also nouns ending in *-el* and *-er*. Ex. *regel* [re'gəl'] bolt (of a lock, latch); *stövel* [stöv'əl'] top-boot; *seger* [se:gər] victory.

4. The following nouns are irregular in the plural:

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>sommar</i>		<i>summer</i>	<i>somrar</i>		<i>djävul</i>
<i>afton</i>		<i>evening</i>	<i>aftnar</i>		<i>moder</i>
<i>morgon</i>		<i>morning</i>	<i>morgnar</i>		<i>dotter</i>

Note. Some nouns are used in the plural only. Ex. *föräldrar* [førlə:drar] parents; *goddagar*, leisure; *stadgar*, statutes; *vägnar*, (in å *mina vägnar*), on my behalf; *drickspengar*, tips; *Löspengar*, small change; *skjutspennigar* (or -*pengar*), fare (transportation charge).

§79. *The Adjective.* In Swedish the adjective is declined. Inflection for gender and number is determined by the noun modified and must be observed whether the adjective is used attributively or in the predicate.

§80. The adjective is either indefinite (strong) or definite (weak). Generally speaking, the adjective follows the indefinite (strong) declension if the noun it modifies is indefinite in form. It follows the definite (weak) declension if the noun it modifies is definite in form. Ex. *en god lärare*, a good teacher; *den goda(-e) läraren*, the good teacher.

§81. *The Indefinite Declension.* The indefinite (strong) declension has three forms - one for common gender, *singular*, which is the stem of the adjective, e.g., *hög*, high; one for neuter gender, *singular*, which is the stem of the adjective *+t* (*tt*) and one form for all genders in the plural which is the adjective stem *+a*.

Ex. *En god man*
En god kvinna
Ett gott barn

goda {
män
kvinnor
barn

§82. *Rules for the Formation of the Neuter Singular and Plural of the Adjective.* The neuter singular of the adjective ends in a *t*-sound. It is to be borne in mind that, according to the rules governing quantity (vocalic and consonantal length and brevity), either the vowel sound of a word must be long and the consonant sound short, or vice versa, and that, generally, consonant length means doubling of consonant.

SPECIFIC RULES

a) Adjectives ending in *-t*, preceded by a consonant, remain unchanged in the neuter singular.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	Common gender	Neuter gender	All genders
Ex.	fast, firm	fast	fasta
	stolt, proud	stolt	stolta
	trött, tired	trött	trötta [tröt'a:]

b) Monosyllabic adjectives with long radical vowel and ending in *-t* shorten the vowel sound in the neuter singular by doubling the *-t* of the stem.

Ex.	slät, smooth	slätt [slet:]	släta
	söt [sø:t], sweet	sött [sø:t:]	söta

Caution. Loan words of this type have the same form for both common and neuter singular. Ex. absolut, konkret, privat. Plural ends in *-a*.

c) Adjectives ending in a stressed, final vowel shorten the vowel sound in the neuter singular by lengthening (doubling) of *-t*.

	SINGULAR		PLURAL
	Common gender	Neuter gender	All genders
Ex.	grå, grey	grått [grøt:]	grå(a)
	fri, free	fritt [frøt:]	fri(a)

Caution. Loan-words of this type have the same form for both common and neuter singular. Ex. cendré, distrå, jalu.

d) Adjectives ending in *-d* preceded by a consonant, and past participles ending in *-d* and *-ad*, form the neuter singular by changing *-d* (and old *-dt*) to *-t*.

Ex.	ond, angry	ont	onda
	mild, mild	milt	milda
	älskad, beloved	älskat	älskade
	förnöjd, satisfied	förnöjt	förnöjda

Note 1. Participial adjectives ending in *-ad* have *-e* in the plural.

Note 2. Loan-words of this type are avoided in the neuter, but forms in *-itt* and *-it* occur, e.g., hybrid - hybritt; stupid - stupitt, etc.

e) Adjectives ending in *-d* preceded by a vowel, and past participles in *-dd*, form the neuter singular by changing *-d* and *-dd* (old *-dt*) into *-tt*.

Ex.	glad	glatt	glada
	god	gott	goda
	bedd	bett	bedda
	trodd [trəd:]	trott [trət:]	trodda

f) Adjectives and past participles ending in unstressed -en eliminate the -n before the neuter termination.

Ex.	trogen, loyal (<i>true</i>) brunnen [brun'ən'], burned	troget brunnet	trogna [trə'gna'] brunna
-----	---	-------------------	-----------------------------

g) Adjectives ending in unstressed -al, -el, -en, and -er eliminate the vowel of the endings before adding the plural terminations -a or -e.

Ex.	gammal, old ädel, noble trogen [trə'gən']. loyal (<i>true</i>) tapper, brave	gammalt ädelt troget tappert	gamla ädla trogna tappa
-----	---	---------------------------------------	----------------------------------

Note. *haj* [haj:] startled, *lat* [la:t] lazy, *rädd* [rəd:] frightened, *höger* [hø:gər] right (hand, side), *vänster* [ven:stər] left (hand, side), and a few others are not used in neuter singular of the indefinite (strong) declension.

§83. *The Definite (Weak) Declension.* The definite (weak) declension has two forms, first a common form for singular and plural - the stem of the adjective, to which is added the ending -a, and secondly, an older form ending in -e which is used when the adjective qualifies a masculine noun. For the compulsory use of the e-form see §85 and notes.

§84. The definite (weak) inflection of the adjective usually involves the use of the prepositional definite, or adjectival article, which has the following forms:

SINGULAR		PLURAL
Common gender <i>den</i> [dən:], the	<i>Neuter gender</i> <i>det</i> [də:t]	<i>All genders</i> <i>de</i> [de:]
SINGULAR		
N. <i>den snälla flickan</i>		<i>de snälla flickorna</i>
G. <i>den snälla flickans</i>		<i>de snälla flickornas</i>
D. <i>till (för) den snälla flickan</i>		<i>till (för) de snälla flickorna</i>
A. <i>den snälla flickan</i>		<i>de snälla flickorna</i>

§85. The use of the e-form of the weak declension is, generally speaking, unsettled. But it is compulsory in the following instances:

1. In the higher style and in standing expressions. Ex. *den ädle fosterlandsvännen*, the noble patriot; *Milde Gud!* gracious Lord! *käre vän!* dear friend! *Gode herrar och svenske män!* Good Sirs and Swedish Citizens! (formerly the King's greeting at the opening of the Diet).

2. When the adjective follows its noun. Ex. *Olof den helige*, Saint Olaf.

3. When the adjective is used substantively. Ex. *den gode*, (store, lille, fattige), the good (one), the big (one), the little one, the pauper.

4. Participial adjectives ending in -ad (1st conjugation) and superlatives with the ending -ast take the e-ending, without exception, for all genders, singular and plural. Ex. *den borttappade boken*, the lost book; *de borttappade böckerna*, the lost books; *den dyrbaraste tavlan*, the most expensive picture; *de dyrbaraste tavlorna*, the most expensive pictures.

§86. *Omission of the Auxiliary.* The omission of the auxiliary in the perfect and pluperfect of a dependent clause is of frequent occurrence in Swedish. Ex. *Ack, hur Lasse liten nu ängrade, att han varit olydig = hade varit... så ofta förbjudit = hade förbjudit.*

B. READING SELECTION

Lasse liten (cont.)

Båten var redan ett gott stycke ute på sjön, och vinden, som bläste från land, drev honom ständigt längre ut. Nu blev Lasse liten rädd och begynte skrika. Men ingen mäniska fanns på stranden; ingen hörde honom. Blott en stor kråka satt ensam i den stora björken; nedanför björken kröp trädgårdsmästarens svarta katt och lurade på kråkan. Ingendera brydde sig det minsta om Lasse liten, som drev ut i sjön. Ack, hur Lasse liten nu ängrade, att han varit olydig och gjitt i båten, fastän far och mor så ofta förbjudit det. Nu var det för sent, nu kunde han ej mera komma till land. Kanske skulle han förgås på den stora sjön. Vad skulle han nu föra? När han skrikit sig trött, och inten hörde honom, knäppte han sina röda händer och saade, "Gode Gud, var icke ledsen på Lasse liten." och så soñnade han.

[bo:tən va:r re'dan' et: göt: styk'ə'
m'te' po: fön:, ok: vin:dən, som: blo'ste'
frön: lan:d, dre:v ho'nom' sten'dik't
leg:rə w:t || nə: ble:v las'ə' li'tən' red:
ok: bejyn:tə skri'ka' || men: iq'en' men'-
isa' fan:s po: stran:dən ; iq'en' hæ'də'
ho'nom' || blöt: en: stə:r kro'ka' sat: en'-
sam' i: den; stə'ra' bjør:kən ; ne'danfə'r
bjør:kən krø:p træ'dgodsmes'tarens
svat'a' kat: ok: lə'rədə' po: kro'kan' ||
iq'ende'ra bryd'ə' sej: de:t min'sta' om:
las'ə' li'tən', som: dre:v m:t i: fön: ||
ak: hə:r las'ə' li'tən' nə: oŋ'rada', at:
han: va'rit' w'ly'dig ok: göt: i: bo:tən,
fasten: fa:r ok: mə:r so: of'ta' fərbjə:dit
de:t || nə: va:r de:t fə:r se:nt (fə:sen:t). nə:
kun'də' han: ej: me'ra' kom'a' til: lan:d ||
kan'je' skul'ə' han: fərgo:s po: den:
stə'ra' fön: || va:d skul'ə' han: nə:
jœ'ra'? næ:r han: skri'kit' si:g tröt, ok:
iq'en' hæ'də' ho'nom', knep'tə' han: si'nə'
smo: hen:dər ok: su'də' |: gə'də' gə:d, va:r
ik'ə' le'dsən' (les'en), po: las'ə' li'tən'||
ok: so: som'nade' han ||]

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

redan, already
gott stycke, good distance
sjön, (on) the lake

vinden, the wind
bläste från land, blew
off-shore (from land)

drev, drove
ständigt, ever, continually
längre ut, farther out

begynte, began
 skrika, to cry
 ingen människa, not a soul (human being)
 fanns, was (lit. was found)
 ingen, no one
 blott, only
 kråka, crow
 satt, sat
 ensam, alone
 björken, birch tree
 nedanför, below, beneath
 kröp, crept
 trädgårdsmästarens, the gardner's
 svarta, black
 katt, cat

lurade på, lay in wait for
 ingendera, neither one
 brydde sig--det minsta om, kanske, perhaps
 concerned himself in the least about
 drev, was drifting
 ut i, out on
 ack, alas
 ångrade, regretted
 (hade) varit, had been
 olydig, disobedient
 (hade) gått i, gone into
 fastän, although
 ofta, often
 (hade) förbjudit, had forbidden
 för sent, too late
 ej mera, no longer

komma till land, get (come) ashore
 skulle, would, was going to
 förgås, perish
 (hade) skrikit sig, had cried himself
 trött, tired
 knäppte, folded
 sina, his
 händer, hands
 gode, good
 Gud, God
 var inte, don't be
 ledset på, angry with (disappointed in)
 somnade, fell asleep

D. QUESTIONS

1. Från vilket håll blåste vinden?
2. Vad gjorde den med båten?
3. Den drev den längre och längre ut till sjöss.
4. Hur kände Lasse sig till moods?
5. Var det ingen som hörde hans skrik?
6. Vad var det som satt i ett träd?
7. Vad gjorde trädgårdsmästarens svarta katt?
8. Ville han(den) hjälpa Lasse?
9. Vad gjorde han(den) då?
10. Vad blev Lasse slutligen?
11. Av vad orsak?
12. Vad företog han sig, innan han somnade?

[frōn: vil'kət' həl: blo'stə' vin;dən?]
 [və(:) jw·də' dən: mə:d bo:tən?]
 [dən: dre:v dən: ləŋ:rə ək: ləŋ:rə
 m:t til: fəs: ||]
 [hū:r kən'də' las'ə' sej: til: mə:ts?]
 [va(:r) də:(t) iŋ'en' som: hæ'də'
 han:s skri;k?]
 [va(:d) va:(r) də:(t) som: sat: i:
 et: trə:d?]
 [va(:d) jw·də' trē'dgōdsməs'tarəns
 svat'a' kat: ?]
 [vil'ə' han:(dən:) jəl·pə' las'ə' ?]
 [va(:d) jw·də' han:(dən:) do: ?]
 [va(:d) ble:v las'ə' sl̄m'tlig'en?]
 [ə:v va:d ə'fə:k?]
 [va(:d) fə'rətə'g han: sej:, in'an'
 han: som'nadə' ?]

E. VOCABULARY TO QUESTIONS

vilket, which	kände--sig, felt	hjälpa, to help
håll, direction, quarter (of compass)	känna sig vil (illa) till moods, to feel well (to be uneasy)	slutligen, finally (in the end)
langre och längre, farther and farther	skrik, cry, cries (shriek)	orsak, reason
till sjöss, to sea	träd, tree	förtog--sig, undertook innan, before

F. EXERCISES

- §87. 1. Decline in the singular and plural the following nouns: *en björk, en sommar, en gosse, en sjö, en båt, en fågel.*
 2. Decline in the singular and plural: *den goda(e) gossen, den stora stenen, det snälla barnet, det gröna ärtlandet.*

LESSON V

A. GRAMMAR

*The Article (cont.). The Noun 3rd Declension. The Adjective.
 Use of the Indefinite and Definite Declensions.
 Indeclinable Adjectives.*

§88. Declension of the Noun (cont.).

3RD DECLENSION		INDEFINITE		3RD DECLENSION - DEFINITE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL*	SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
A city	Cities	The city	The cities		
N. en stad	städ-er	stad-en	städ-er-na		
G. en stad-s	städ-er-s	stad-en-s	städ-er-na-s		
D. till (för) en stad	städ-er	till (för) stad-en	städ-er-na		
A. en stad	städ-er	stad-en	städ-er-na		

§89. The 3rd Declension. To this declension belong nouns of all genders including a large number of words of foreign origin.

1. Many common gender monosyllabic nouns. Ex. *bön* [bø:n] prayer; *färg*, color; *gräns*, boundary; *led*, joint (of arm, foot, etc.); *vers*, verse; *föld*, result; *mångd*, multitude (quantity); *tjänst* [tjan:st] service. Names of peoples: *britt*, Briton; *kelt*, Celt; *slav*, Slavonian. Many monosyllabic words of foreign origin. Ex. *brosch* [broʃ:] brooch; *glob*, globe; *marsch* [maʃ:] march; *paus* [paʊ:s] pause; *tub* [tu:b] tube, etc.

2. A number of words (common gender) have mutation of the radical vowel in the plural. Ex. *and*, wild duck, pl. *änder*; *brand*, (fire)-brand and fire, pl. *bränder*; *hand*, hand, pl. *händer*; *rand*, edge, verge, pl. *ränder*; *strand*, pl. *stränder*; *spång* [spoŋ:] (foot)-bridge, plank, pl. *spänger*; *stång*, pole, pl. *stånger*; *tång*, tongs, pl. *tänger*; *natt*, night, pl. *nätter*; *son* [so:n] son, pl. *söner* (Tone II). Note also the following nouns with consonant length in the plural: *bok* [bø:k] book, pl. *böcker* [bø:k:ər]; *fot* [fø:t] foot, pl. *fötter*; *rot*, root, pl. *rötter* [rø:t:ər].

3. Common gender nouns ending in *-ad*, *-nad*, *-när*, *-skap*, *-het* and *-else*. Ex. *kunskap*, knowledge; *hemlighet*, secret; *hädelse*, blasphemy.

4. Common gender nouns of foreign origin with the stress on the last syllable: Ex. *armé*, army; *staty*, statue; *tablå*, tableau. Nouns ending in a consonant. Ex. *nomad*, nomad; *pokal*, goblet; *oas*, oasis; *kamel*, camel.

* This declension is characterized by the plural ending *-er*. The postpositive article, *singular*, is *-en* or *-n* for nouns of common gender, and *-et* or *-t* for neuter nouns. The plural postpositive article for all genders is *-na*.

5. Neuter nouns ending in *-eum* and *-ium*. These drop *-um* before adding the plural ending. Ex. *herbarium*, *herbarium*, pl. *herbarier*, and so *privilegium*, *privilege*, and others.

6. Loan-words ending in *-arie* and *-ie*. Ex. *aktuarie*, *actuary*; *bibliotekarie*, *librarian*. Such words drop the *-e* before the plural termination. Ex. *aktuarier*, *bibliotekarier*.

7. Loan-words ending in *-or*. Ex. *doktor*, *professor*. Plural: *doktorer*, *professorer*.

8. Loan-words ending in unstressed *-el* and *-er*. Ex. *fabel*, *fable*; *mirakel* (*neut.*), *miracle*; *muskel*, *muscle*; *möbel*, *piece of furniture*. (Exception: *tiger*, *tiger*, 2nd declension). The *-e* is dropped in the plural: *fabler*, *mirakler*, *muskler*, etc.

9. Neuter nouns with the ending *-eri*. Ex. *bageri*, *bakery*; *frieri*, *courtship*; *tryckeri*, *printing plant*; *äkeri*, *livery-stable*.

10. Masculine nouns ending in *-us*, e.g., *dekanus* [deka:nus] *deacon* (*dean*), drop *-us* before adding the plural ending. Ex. *dekaner*.

11. The following common gender nouns ending in a vowel form their plural by adding *-r* instead of *-er*:

Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
<i>bonde</i> , <i>peasant</i>	<i>bönder</i>	<i>klo</i> [klø:], <i>claw</i>	<i>klor</i>
<i>fiende</i> , <i>enemy</i>	<i>fiender</i>	<i>mö</i> [mø:], <i>maiden</i>	<i>mör</i>
<i>frände</i> , <i>relative</i>	<i>fränder</i>	<i>sko</i> [skø:], <i>shoe</i>	<i>skor</i>
<i>hustra</i> , <i>wife</i>	<i>hustrur</i>	<i>stadsbo</i> [stat:sbø:], <i>town-dweller</i>	<i>stadsbor</i>
<i>jungfru</i> , <i>maiden</i>	<i>jungfrur</i>	<i>tå</i> [tø:], <i>toe</i>	<i>tår</i>
<i>ko</i> [kø:], <i>cow</i>	<i>kor</i>		

Use of the Indefinite and Definite Declensions

§90. The Indefinite Declension of the adjective is used:

1. When the adjective is not preceded by the article. Ex. *rent hjärta*, *rena händer*, *clean heart*, *clean hands*.

2. When the adjective is in a predicate position: *dagen är klar*, *the day is clear*.

3. When it is preceded by the indefinite article. Ex. *han är en aktad medborgare*, *he is an esteemed citizen*; *ett stort skepp*, *a large ship*.

4. When preceded by the indefinite pronouns: *ingen* (*intet*, *inga*), *no*; *mången* (*många*), *many* (*a*); *någon* (*något*, *några*), *some*; *varje*, *every* (*each*). Ex. *mången trevlig afton*, *many a pleasant afternoon* (*evening*), *många trevliga aftnar* (*pl.*); *något vackert exemplar*, *some fine specimen*; *några röda rosor*, *some red roses*; *varje årlig människa* [*men'is:a'*], *every honest human being*.

5. When preceded by the demonstrative pronouns: *sådan* (*sådant*, *sådana*), *dylik* (*dylikt*, *dylikaj*), *such*, or the interrogative pronoun, *vilken* (*vilket*, *vilka*), *what* (*such*). Ex. *En sådan fin idé!* *Such a fine idea!* *Vilket förtydande läge!* *What a charming location!*

§91. *The Definite Declension of the adjective is used:*

a) When the adjective is preceded by the prepositive (adjectival) article, the noun has the definite postpositive article, §73. Ex. *den store (stora) hövdingen*, the great chieftain.

b) When it is preceded:

1. By a noun in the possessive case. *Note in this case and the following that the noun involved does not take the postpositive article.*

Ex. *John Ericssons revolutionära uppfinding "Monitor"*, John Ericsson's revolutionary invention "The Monitor". *Skolans moderna tennisplan*, the modern tennis court of the school.

2. By a possessive adjective. Ex. *min (din, sin, vår, er, Eder) gamla automobil*, my (thy, his, her, our, your) old automobile.

3. By a relative pronoun. Ex. *Mannen, i vars hus jag bor...* The man in whose house I live...; *i vilken allmänna hyllning vi deltog*, in which public homage we took part.

4. By a demonstrative adjective. Ex. *Denna vackra (doftande) blomma är en ros*. This beautiful (fragrant) flower is a rose.

5. By a determinative adjective. Ex. *Det höga träd som står där-borta planterades av min farfar*. That tall tree which stands yonder was planted by my grandfather. See §172.

6. By an interrogative adjective. Ex. *Vilket höga träd? - Rönnen*. Which tall tree? - The mountain ash.

7. By a personal pronoun. Ex. *Jag, beklagansvärd mänska*. I, pitiable human being.

c) In forms of address. Ex. *Käre vän!* Dear friend. *Kära väninna!* Dear (lady) friend. *Bäste (bästa) herr "X"!* Dear Mr. "X".

d) When the adjective qualifies a following proper name. Ex. *Lille Johan*, Little John; *lilla Barbro*, little Barbro.

Note 1. The adjective *egen* [e'gən'] own, when singular, takes the indefinite form after a possessive case and after possessive adjectives. Ex. *Johans (min, din, vår, deras) egen automobil*, John's (my, your, our, their) own automobile. But in the plural *egen* is definite (weak). Ex. *Johan har sina egna skäl*, John has his own reasons.

Note 2. When *egen* means "peculiar, odd", it is definite in the singular. Ex. *hans (hennes) egna (egendomliga) stil*, his (her) odd style.

Note 3. The demonstratives *den här*, this one, and *den där*, that one, are followed by definite forms of the adjective and the noun. Ex. *det här nya huset*, this new house; *den där låga byggnaden*, that low building.

Note 4. *Samma(-e)*, same. Neither the prepositive nor the postpositive article is used in connection with *samma*: *Det var samme man (samma kvinna, samma barn)*. It was the same man (the same woman, the same child). *Samma rastlösa begär*. The same restless desire.

§92. *The Definite Declension of the adjective is used in many instances where the adjective is not preceded by the prepositive (adjectival) article or pronoun. The noun involved has the postpositive article. Noteworthy instances of this usage are:*

1. In captions: *Svenska akademien*, The Swedish Academy; *Svenska dagbladet*, name of a Swedish daily newspaper.

2. With adjectives denoting locality. Ex. *högra (vänstra) sidan*, the right (left) side.

3. In connection with the terms *hel*, whole; *halv*, half; *själv*, oneself. Ex. *hela dagen (natten, kvällen, veckan, o.s.v.)*, the whole day (night, evening, week, etc.); *halva äpplet*, half the apple. *Själva kungen var där*. The king himself was there.

§ 93. *Indeclinable Adjectives.*

1. Adjectives ending in *-a* and *-e*. Ex. *en stilla man (kvinnan)*, a quiet man (woman); *ett stilla barn*, a quiet child; pl. *stilla mäniskor*, quiet people. Other common adjectives of this type are: *bra*, good; *noga*, accurate; *nära*, near; *ringa*, unimportant (of low degree, also small); *sakta*, slow (gentle); *udda*, odd (not even); *äkta*, genuine; *barfota*, barefoot; *långväga*, (coming) from afar, ex. *långväga resande*, traveler; *nutida*, modern (of the present time).

2. Adjectives ending in *-e*. Ex. *ense*, agreed; *gängse*, customary, current; *gyllene*, golden; *oense* (predicate adj. only), at variance, ex. *vi är oense*, we disagree; *vilse*, astray, ex. *han har gått vilse*, he has gone astray; *öde*, deserted (desolate); *diverse*, diverse, etc.

3. Adjectives ending in *-(e)s*. Ex. *stackars (man, kvinna, barn)*, poor wretch of a (man, woman, child); *stackars mäniskor*, poor people; *avsides*, aside; *inbördes*, mutual; *invärtes*, internal (use); *rättskaffens*, upright (honest).

4. Present participles ending in *-ande* and *-ende*. Ex. *bedjande*, begging, ex. *en bedjande blick*, an imploring look; *en älskande moder*, a loving mother; *en flyende konung*, a fleeing king.

5. Comparatives in *-are* and *-re*. Ex. *starkare band*, stronger bonds; *ett större hus - två större hus*, a rather large house - two rather large houses. *Större Boston*, Greater Boston (a city with adjacent incorporated towns).

B. READING SELECTION

Lasse liten (cont.)

Fastän det nu var ljusa dagen, satt den gamla Nukku Matti vid stranden av Fjäderholmarna och metade små barn med sitt långa metspö. Han hörde de sakta orden, som Lasse liten talat till Gud; strax drog han båten till sig och lade Lasse liten att sova på rosenbäddarna.

Därpå sade Nukku Matti åt en av drömmarna: "Lek med Lasse liten, att han icke får ledsamt."

Det var en liten drömgosse, så liten, så liten, att han var mindre än Lasse själv, han hade blå ögon, ljust hår, röd mössa med silverband och vit tröja med pärlor på kragen. Han kom till Lasse liten och sade: "Har du lust att resa kring hela världen?"

"Ja," sade Lasse, "visst har jag lust."

"Kom då," sade drömmens gosse, "och låt oss segla på dina ärtskidsfartyg. Du seglar på Herkules, och jag reser på Loppan."

Och så börja de sin resa kring världen. De besökte många världsdelar och till sist kommo de till en strand. Där var allt så svalt och bekant och välbekant. Där stod den höga björken med sina hängande löv; i dess topp satt den gamla kråkan, och vid dess fot kröp trädgårdsmästarens svarta katt. Icke långt därifrån var en gård, som Lasse liten sett förr. Vid gården var en trädgård, och i trädgården växte ett ärtland med långa ärtskidor. Där gick den gamle trädgårdsmästaren med sin gamla gröna kaskett och undrade, om gurkorna varo mogna. Där skällde Fylax vid trappan, och när han såg Lasse liten, viftade han på svansen.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

<i>ljus</i> , bright	<i>ögon</i> , eyes	<i>svalt</i> , cool
<i>dag</i> , day	<i>ljust</i> , light (color)	<i>bekant</i> , familiar
<i>ljusa dagen</i> , broad day-light (lit. bright day)	<i>hår</i> , hair	<i>vänligt</i> , friendly
<i>den gamle</i> , the old	<i>röd</i> , red	<i>den höga</i> , the tall
<i>Nukku Matti</i> (Finnish). "Sand-Man"	<i>mössa</i> , cap	<i>hängande</i> , hanging
<i>Fjäderholmarna</i> , "Feather Islands"	<i>silverband</i> , silver band	<i>löv</i> , leaves
<i>metade</i> , fishing (lit. fished)	<i>vit</i> , white	<i>dess</i> , its
<i>barn</i> , children	<i>pärlor</i> , pearls	<i>topp</i> , top
<i>långa</i> , long	<i>kragen</i> , collar	<i>den gamle</i> , the old
<i>metspö</i> , fishing-rod	<i>har du lust</i> , do you want (like)	<i>fot</i> , foot
<i>sakta</i> , soft, low	<i>resa</i> , to travel	<i>kröp</i> , crept
<i>orden</i> , words	<i>hela världen</i> , the whole world	<i>trädgårdsmästarens</i> , the gardener's
(hade) talat, spoke	<i>ja</i> , yes	icke långt, not far
<i>strax</i> , immediately	<i>ja, visst har jag lust</i> , (certainly, of course)	därifrån, from there
<i>drog (till sig) drew toward him</i>	<i>yes, I want to</i>	<i>gård</i> , house
<i>att sova, to sleep</i>	<i>då</i> , then	(hade) sett, had seen
<i>rosenbäddarna, bed of roses</i>	<i>drömmens gosse</i> , the dream boy	<i>förr</i> , before
<i>därpå, thereupon (then)</i>	<i>lät</i> , let	<i>vid gården</i> , by the house
<i>ät</i> , to	<i>oss</i> , us	<i>ärtland</i> , pea-patch
<i>en av, one of</i>	<i>segla</i> , sail	<i>gick</i> , was walking
<i>drömmarna, the dreams (dream boys)</i>	<i>dina</i> , they (your)	<i>kaskett</i> , cap (head-gear)
<i>lek</i> , play	<i>ärtskidsfartyg</i> , pea-pod boats	<i>undrade</i> , wondered
<i>med</i> , with	<i>seglar</i> , sail	<i>om</i> , whether, if
<i>får ledsamt, may not get lonely</i>	<i>reser</i> , (will) travel, go (on)	<i>gurkorna</i> , the cucumbers
<i>drömgosse,-en;-ar, dream-boy</i>	<i>börja</i> , begin	<i>mogna</i> , ripe
<i>mindre, smaller</i>	<i>resa</i> , trip, journey	<i>skällde</i> , barked
<i>än, than</i>	<i>besökte</i> , visited	<i>Fylax</i> , name of a dog
<i>blå, blue</i>	<i>världsdelar</i> , continents	<i>vid trappan</i> , beside the steps
	<i>till sist, at last</i>	<i>såg</i> , saw
	<i>kommo, came</i>	<i>viftade</i> , wagged
	<i>allt, everything</i>	<i>svansen</i> , tail

D. QUESTIONS

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. När och var satt den gamle
Nukku Matti? | 8. Huru långt reste de? |
| 2. Vem var mannen? | 9. Vart kommo de till sist? |
| 3. Vad metade han? | 10. Var satt kråkan? |
| 4. Hade han hört gossen skrika? | 11. Vad gjorde (was doing)
trädgårdsmästaren? |
| 5. Vad lade han Lasse liten på? | 12. Vad hade han på huvudet (his head)? |
| 6. Beskriv (describe) drömgossen. | 13. Vem var Fylax och vad
viftade han med? |
| 7. Vad frågade han Lasse liten? | |

E. EXERCISE

§94. Review lessons I to IV and make an inventory of nouns of the 1st, 2nd and 3rd declensions that have occurred in the lessons.

LESSON VI

A. GRAMMAR

*The Article (cont.). The Noun, 4th Declension.
Comparison of the Adjective.*

§95. Declension of the Noun (cont.).

4th DECLENSION - INDEFINITE		4th DECLENSION - DEFINITE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL*	SINGULAR	PLURAL
A belt	Belts	The belt	The belts
N. ett bälte	bälte-n	bält-et	bälte-n-a
G. ett bälte-s	bälte-n-s	bält-et-s	bälte-n-a-s
D. till (för) ett bälte	bälte-n	till (för) bält-et	bälte-n-a
A. ett bälte	bälte-n	bält-et	bälte-n-a

§96. Nouns of the 4th Declension. To this declension belong only neuter nouns terminating in a vowel.

1. A few monosyllabic nouns. Ex. *bo*, nest; *fly*, mire; *strå*, straw; *få*, beast; *trä*, (piece of) wood; *frö*, seed; *spö*, switch, fishing rod; *hö*, hay; *tö*, (a) thaw, and others.

2. Nouns of more than one syllable ending in a lightly stressed vowel, mostly *-e*. Ex. *fäste*, hold (fastness, firmament); *gärde*, cultivated field; *rike*, kingdom; *förhållande*, condition; *regemente*, regiment; *hjärta*, heart; *piano*, piano; *konto*, account.

Note. The nouns *öga*, eye, and *öra*, ear, have the plural forms *ögon* and *öron*; definite plural *ögonen* and *öronen*, coll. *ögona* and *örona*, the eyes and the ears.

* The nouns of this declension have the plural ending *-n*. The postpositive article, singular, is *-t* or *-et*; the plural postpositive article is *-a*, but monosyllabic nouns may also have *-en*.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

§97. There are three degrees of comparison: the positive, the comparative and the superlative. By means of them it is possible to express degrees of equality, superiority and inferiority.

§98. The regular terminations of the comparative and the superlative are *-are* and *-ast*.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
rik, rich	rikare, richer	rikast, richest

§99. If the positive ends in unstressed *-al*, *-el*, *-en*, *-er*, the *-e* before *l*, *n*, *r* is dropped before the ending is added.

ädel, noble	ädlare, nobler	älast, noblest
-------------	----------------	----------------

§100. If the positive ends in *-a*, this vowel is dropped before the ending is added.

ringa, humble	ringare, humbler	ringast, humblest
---------------	------------------	-------------------

§101. The following adjectives show mutation of the radical vowel in the comparative and superlative degrees. The endings are *-re* and *-st*, not *-are*, and *-ast*.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
grov, thick (heavy)	gröv-re	grövst
hög, high	hög-re	hög-st
läg, low	läg-re	läg-st
lång, long	läng-re	läng-st
stor, large (big)	stör-re	stör-st
trång, tight	träng-re	träng-st
tung, heavy	tyng-re	tyng-st
ung, young	yng-re	yng-st

Note. *grov*, *läg*, *trång* have also a comparative and a superlative in *-are* and *-ast*.

grov, coarse (rude)	grov-are	grov-ast
läg, low	läg-are	läg-ast (moral sense)
trång, tight (narrow)	träng-are	träng-ast

§102. The following adjectives have irregular comparison:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
dålig, poor, bad	sämre, dåligare*	sämst, dåligast*
gammal, old	åldre	åldst
god (bra), good	bättre, godare*	bäst, godast*
liten, small (little)	mindre	minst
mycken, much	mera (mer)	mest

* In the sense of *more* and *most palatable*.

* Rarely used.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
många, many (<i>pl.</i>)	flera	de flesta
nära, near	närmare	närmast
ond*, angry (<i>bad</i>)	värre	värst
få, few	färre	
små, (<i>pl. of liten</i>) small	mindre, smärre	minst

§103. Adjectives, the positive of which ends in *-ad*, *-se*, *-e* or *-isk*, and all participles used as adjectives, always form their comparative and superlative by *mera*, more, *mest*, most, *mindre*, less, and *minst*, least.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
godhjärtad, kind-hearted	mera godhjärtad	mest godhjärtad
	mindre "	minst "
öde, desolate	mera öde	mest öde
gängse, current	mera gängse	mest gängse
nitisk, zealous	mera nitisk	mest nitisk
älskad, beloved	mera älskad	mest älskad
tilldragande, winsome	mera tilldragande	mest tilldragande

Note. Participles that have become full-fledged adjectives are compared regularly. Ex. *lärd* (-are, -ast), learned.

§104. Some adjectives lack the positive, and form, when possible, the comparative and the superlative from an adverb. When used as adjectives, most of the superlatives have the definite (weak) inflection. In the examples below this fact is indicated by the weak ending (-a, -e) directly after the uninflected superlative form:

<i>Adverb</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bak, behind (back)	bakre, hinder	bakerst (-a), hindmost
bort, away	bortre [bɔ:t:rə].	borterst (-a)
	farther (away)	farthest (away)
efter, behind (after)		efterst (-a), hindmost
fjärran, remotely	fjärmare, remoter.	fjärmast (-e), remotest.
	(more distant)	(most distant)
fram, forward	främre, anterior	främst (-a), foremost
	(fore, front)	
före, before (ahead)	förra (-e), former	först (-a), first
hit, hither	hitre, hitherto	hiterst (-a), hithermost
in, -in	inre, inner	innerst (-a), innermost
mellan, between		mellerst* (-a), middlemost
ned, down	nedre, nether	nederst (-a), nethermost
nära, near	närmare, nearer	närmast (-e), näst (-a), nearest
		överst (-a), uppermost
ovan, above	övre, upper	sist (-a), last
sedan†, afterwards	senare, later	underst (-a), undermost
under, under	undre, under	

* When meaning *angry*, the comp. and superl. are *ondare* and *ondast*, respectively.

† *sen*, late, has comparative *senare*, later, and superlative *senast*, latest.

<i>Adverb</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
upp, <i>up</i>		ypperst (-a), = <i>uppermost</i> , (highest, most excellent)
ut, <i>out</i>	yttre, <i>outer</i>	ytterst (-a), <i>outermost</i> , (<i>utmost</i>)
över, <i>over</i>	övre, <i>upper</i>	överst (-a), <i>uppermost</i>

DECLENSION OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

COMPARATIVE

§105. The comparative is invariable, i.e., the form is the same for common gender and neuter, singular and plural. Exception: When it is used as a noun, it takes an s in the genitive.

<i>INDEFINITE</i>		<i>DEFINITE</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
en skönare dag	skönare dagar	den skönare dagen	de skönare dagarna
ett lyckligare land	lyckligare länder	det lyckligare landet	de lyckligare länderna

SUPERLATIVE

§106. The Indefinite form of the superlative ends in -ast (or -st) for common gender, neuter, and plural of all genders.

<i>INDEFINITE</i>		<i>DEFINITE</i>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
sommaren är varmaste	somrarna äro varmaste	den varmaste sommaren	de varmaste somrarna
landet är lyckligast	länderna äro lyckligast	det lyckligaste landet	de lyckligaste länderna

The Definite superlative ends in -ast and adds the inflectional -e of the weak declension.

Note. Superlatives ending in -st, have -a in the definite form.

Ex. den yngsta(-e) gossen, the youngest boy; den yngsta dottern, the youngest daughter; det äldsta barnet, the eldest child; de bästa eleverna, the best pupils.

§107. The Indefinite form of the superlative must be used when the comparison refers to different parts (points) of the same subject. Ex. Här är fjället högst, vägen smalast, tjärnen djupast. Here the mountain is highest, the road narrowest, the tarn deepest.

§108. The Definite form must be used when the superlative is followed by a qualifying clause or phrase. Ex. Den här novellen är den intressantaste, jag någonsin läst. This novel is the most interesting that I have ever read.

§109. The definite article of the adjective is omitted in many stereotyped expressions. Ex. i första rummet, in the first place; i största hast, in great (the greatest) haste; i bästa fall, at best.

§110. Degrees of equality, inferiority and superiority are expressed as follows:

1. Equality by the use of the comparative conjunction *lika...som*.

Ex. *Han är lika stark som jag.* He is as strong as I.

2. Inequality by using the negative *inte* (*icke*) with the comparative conjunction *lika... som*. Ex. *Han är inte (icke) lika stark som jag.* He is not so (as) strong as I.

Note 1. When two qualities in the same person or thing are compared, Swedish uses the conjunction *mer(a), (mindre)... än*. Ex. *Gossen är mindre elak än dum.* The boy is less malicious than stupid.

Note 2. Some comparatives are used absolutely. Ex. *bättre och sämre (människor)*, people of good standing and of the lower strata; *en yngre kvinna*, a young (ish)woman (cf. French *encore jeune*); *en äldre man*, an elderly man.

§111. There is a relative and an absolute use of the superlative:

1. The relative superlative expresses conscious comparison. Ex. *Han är den flitigaste ynglingen i avdelningen.* He is the most industrious youth in the section. *Han är flitigast.* He is the most industrious.

2. The absolute superlative is formed by placing an adverb (*högst, synnerligen, mycket*) before the positive. Ex. *Ett synnerligen vackert resultat,* a rather (strikingly) attractive result. In imitation of German usage, *allra* is used as an intensifier. Ex. *Det allra heligaste,* the Holy of Holies.

B. READING SELECTION

Lasse liten (cont.)

Där mjölkade gamla Stina vid ladugården. Där gick en mycket bekant fru i sin rutiga ylleschal att se, huru vävarna blektes på gröngräset. Där gick en också mycket bekant herre i gul sommarrock, med en lång pipa i munnen, att se, hur skördefolket skar rågen på åkern. Där sprungo en gosse och en flicka på stranden och ropade: "Lasse liten! Kom hem och ät smörgås!"

"Gå vi i land här?" frågade drömmens gosse och plirade så skämskt med de blå ögonen.

"Kom med, så skall jag bedja mamma giva dig en knäckebrödssmörgås och ett glas mjölk," sade Lasse liten.

"Vänta litet," sade drömmens gosse. Och nu såg Lasse liten, hur köksdörren stod öppen, och därifrån hördes ett sakta, behagligt fräsande, liksom när man med sleven slår den gula vispdegen i en het plätppanna.

"Kanske resa vi nu tillbaka till Polynesien?" viskade drömmens glada gosse.

"Nej, nu steka de plättar i Europa," sade Lasse liten och ville springa i land, men han kunde icke. Drömmens gosse hade bundit honom med band av blommor, så att han icke kunde röra sig. Och nu kommo alla de små drömmarna omkring honom, tusen och åter tusen små barn, och togo i ring kring honom och sjöngo en liten visa:

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

<i>mjölkade</i> , was milking	<i>smörgås</i> , sandwich	<i>slår</i> , pours
<i>Stina</i> , Stina (proper name)	<i>gå vi i land här</i>	<i>gula vispdegen</i> , yellow batter
<i>korna</i> , the cows	shall we land here	<i>het</i> , hot
<i>ladugården</i> , the barn	<i>frågade</i> , asked	<i>plättpanna</i> , pancake griddle
<i>mycket</i> , very	<i>plirade</i> , squinted	<i>tillbaka</i> , back
<i>fru</i> , lady	<i>skälmstkt</i> , mischievously	<i>viskade</i> , whispered
<i>rutiga</i> , plaid	<i>med de blå ögonen</i> ,	<i>glada</i> , gay, happy
<i>ylleschal</i> , woolen shawl	with his blue eyes	<i>steke</i> , fry
<i>huru</i> , how	<i>kom med</i> , come along	<i>plättar</i> , pancakes
<i>vävarna</i> , the cloth	<i>så skall jag bedja</i> ,	<i>ville</i> , tried to
<i>blektes</i> , were bleaching	and I shall ask	<i>springa i land</i> , jump ashore
<i>gröngräset</i> , the green grass.	<i>giva</i> , to give	<i>hade bundit</i> , had bound
<i>herre</i> , gentleman	<i>knäckebrödssmörgås</i> ,	<i>band</i> , bands, garlands
<i>gul</i> , yellow	knäckebröd-sandwich	<i>blommor</i> , flowers
<i>sommarrock</i> , summer coat	<i>ett glas mjölk</i> , a glass of milk	<i>så att</i> , so that
<i>pipa</i> , pipe	<i>vänta litet</i> , wait a little	<i>röra sig</i> , move
<i>i munnen</i> , in his mouth	<i>köksdörren</i> , the kitchen-door	<i>alla de små</i> , all the little
<i>skördefolket</i> , the reapers	<i>stod</i> , was standing	<i>drömmarna</i> , dreams
<i>skar</i> , were cutting	<i>öppen</i> , open	<i>omkring</i> , around
<i>rågen</i> , the rye	<i>hördes</i> , was heard	<i>tusen och dter tusen</i> ,
<i>på åkern</i> , in the field	<i>behagligt</i> , pleasing	thousands and thousands (of)
<i>sprungo</i> , ran	<i>fräsande</i> , sizzling	<i>togo i ring kring</i> ,
<i>ropade</i> , called	<i>liksom</i> , just as	formed a ring around
<i>kom hem</i> , come home	<i>med</i> , with	<i>sjöng</i> , sang
<i>ät</i> , eat	<i>sleven</i> , the ladle	<i>visa</i> , song

D. QUESTIONS

1. Vad gjorde Stina?
2. Vem var frun i ylleschalen?
3. Vad hade en bekant herre i munnen?
4. Vad gjorde skördefolket? [ʃœ'rdefol'kət]
5. Vad ropade gossen och flickan?
6. Varifrån kom ett sakta, behagligt fräsande?
7. Vem stekte plättar i köket?
8. Varför kunde inte Lasse liten springa i land?
9. Huru många små drömgossar kommo omkring Lasse liten?

E. EXERCISE

§112. Translate the following examples and state the use of the adjective in each case as *indefinite* and *definite*. See rules, Lessons IV and V.

1. Lasse liten blev rädd.
2. Den stora björken.
3. Trädgårdsmästaren
4. svarta katt.
5. Han var olydig.
6. En olydig gosse.
7. Han knäppte sina
8. händer.
9. Matti metade med sitt långa spö.
10. Han hörde de sakta orden.
11. En liten drögosse.
12. En röd mössa.
13. Den röda mössan.
14. Där var
15. allt svalt och bekant och vänligt.
16. Trädgårdsmästaren med sin gamla gröna
17. kaskett.

A. GRAMMAR

*The Article (cont.). The Noun, 5th Declension.**

Notes on gender. Notes on use of article. Notes on use of cases.

§113. *Declension of the Noun (cont.).*

5th DECLENSION - INDEFINITE		5th DECLENSION - DEFINITE	
SINGULAR	PLURAL*	SINGULAR	PLURAL
A warrior	Warriors	The warrior	The warriors
N. en krigare	krigare	krigare-n	krigar-na
G. en krigare-s	krigare-s	krigare-n-s	krigar-na-s
D. till (för) en krigare	krigare	till (för) krigare-n	krigar-na
A. en krigare	krigare	krigare-n	krigar-na

§114. Examples of the postpositive article:

INDEFINITE		DEFINITE	
Singular	Plural	Singular	Plural
ett barn,	två barn,	barn-et	barn-en
one child	two children	the child	----- ¹⁾
ett opus,	två opus	opus-et	----- ¹⁾
one work		the work	
en gås	två gäss	gås-en	gäss-en
one goose		the goose	
en handlande,	två handlande	handlande-n	handlande-na
one merchant		the merchant	
en lärare,	två lärare	lärare-n	lärar-na, (or
one teacher		the teacher	lärar-ne) ²⁾

1) There is no definite plural for words of this type.

2) Masc. nouns in -are. In the older language such nouns did not elide the stem -e. Ex. domare, judge, pl. domare-na; bagare-na now domar-na, bagar-na.

Note In the 5th Declension there is a strong tendency of the neuter nouns to replace the postpositive article -en by -en-a, thus effecting a common definite plural article for all neuter nouns. Ex. hus-en-a, the houses; barn-en-a, the children.

The definite plural of neuter nouns ending in -er in the singular (fönster, def. fönstr-et), pl. fönstr-en, may now be written -na: fönster-na.

§115. *The 5th Declension.* To this declension belong preponderantly neuter nouns ending in (a) consonant(s), except those in -eum and -ium, and a number of nouns of common gender.

1. Most neutrals with consonant in the stem. Ex. bad, bath; barn, child; djur, animal (deer); pris, prize; troll, troll; träd, tree; ägg, egg; hemman, homestead; ton, ton (2,000 lbs.).

* This declension is characterized by the absence of a plural ending, so that the singular and plural are identical in form. Cf. English deer, sheep, swine, etc. The postpositive article is -et for the neuter singular and -en for the plural. For nouns of common gender the singular takes -n or -en and the plural -na (in some instances -ne).

2. *Nouns of common gender:*

- a) Nouns ending in *-ande*. Ex. *handlante*, merchant; *kärande*, plaintiff; *studerande*, a pupil (below the university proper).
- b) Nouns ending in *-are*. Ex. *borgare*, citizen (burgher); *klockare*, sexton; *läkare*, physician; *kikare* [çik'kare'] spyglass; *visare*, hand (of watch).
- c) Names of peoples and other nouns of foreign origin. Ex. *belgier*, Belgian; *egyptier*, Egyptian; *perser*, Persian; *akademiker* [akade:mikər] academician; *botaniker* [bota:nikər] botanist; *fanatiker*, [fana:tikər] fanatic.
- d) Nouns indicating measure: Ex. *fot*, foot; *tum*, inch; *fjärdingsväg* [fjædɪngsve:g] a quarter of a mile; *mil*, mile.

3. The following nouns are irregular in the plural:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
man, man	män, men	mus, mouse	möss, mice
gås, goose	gäss, geese	fader, father	fäder, fathers
lus, louse	löss, lice	broder, brother	bröder, brothers

§116. *Notes on gender.* Cf. §57. Note. Only a few general rules can be laid down here.

1. *Masculine* are nouns which designate male human beings and males of the higher animals. Ex. *president*, president; *oxe*, ox; *tupp*, rooster. Common names for male and female: *elefant*, elephant; *häst*, horse; *örn*, eagle. Names of objects: *månen*, the moon; abstract nouns: *kärleken*, (the) love.

2. *Feminine* are names of female human beings and females of animals. Ex. *Anna*, Anna; *lärarinna*, (lady) teacher; *ko*, cow; *höna*, hen.

The following are also treated as *feminine*: Ex. *människa*, human being. Animal names ending in *-a*, e.g., *duva*, dove; *fluga*, fly; *rätta*, rat. Some names of things. Ex. *klocka*, [klok'a'] clock (also watch); *blomma*, flower (bloom); *skuta*, sloop (smack); *solen*, the sun.

3. Words like *sändebud* [sen'debu:d] ambassador (Minister); *stadsbud* [stat'sbu:d] town messenger; *statsråd* [stat'sro:d] cabinet minister, State Secretary, which, in so far as inflection is concerned, are neuter, are referred to by the masculine pronoun. Ex. *statsrådet* - *han*, the Secretary of State - *he*. The neuter term *fruntimmer* (Germ. *Frauenzimmer*) is referred to by the feminine pronoun. Ex. *Var är fruntimret? Hon har gått.* Where is the woman? She has gone.

4. Some words designating persons are referred to by the masculine or feminine pronoun as the case may require. Ex. *kusin*, cousin (male or female); *gemål*, consort (male or female); *släktning*, relative (male or female); *patient*, patient.

5. In poetry abstract concepts are often personified. Ex. *sorgen*, sorrow; *sanningen*, truth; *dygden*, virtue, are referred to by the feminine pronoun *hon*; *kärleken*, love; *döden*, death, by the masculine pronoun *han*.

6. *Common gender* are names of animals (many of which may be masc. or fem. See 1 and 2 above), and objects that are not neuter. Ex. *anden*, the duck; *ormen*, the snake (worm); *fjärilen*, the butterfly; *sanden*, the sand; *stenen*, the stone; *osten*, the cheese; *rocken*, the coat; *hattan*, the hat.

7. *Neuter* are all words that may be referred to by the neuter demonstrative pronoun *det*, except nouns of the type cited under 3 above. The noun designates:

a) *barnet - det*, the child - it. Ex. *helgonet*, the saint; *syskonet*, the brother (or sister); *trädet*, the tree; *arbetet*, the work.

b) Geographical names of continents, countries, provinces, cities, towns and places. Ex. *Europa*, Europe; *Turkiet*, Turkey; *Boston*; *Salem*; *Uddevalla*, a Swedish town; *Skansen*, an open air museum in Stockholm. They are all neuter gender.

THE USE OF THE ARTICLES

§117. *The Indefinite Article.* Generally speaking, the use of the indefinite article in Swedish corresponds to that of the indefinite article in English. But note the omission of the Swedish article in cases where it is usually employed in English:

Ex.	Jag väntar (på) svar	I am waiting for an answer
	Han skriver brev	He is writing a letter
	Hon har huvudvärk	She has a headache
	Göra slut på	To put a stop (end) to
	Taga plats	To take a seat

§118. The article is not used:

1. With nouns denoting nationality, religion, profession, occupation, age, etc. Ex. *General Grant var amerikan*. General Grant was an American. *Han är protestant* (*katolik*, *professor*, *snickare*). He is a Protestant (a Catholic, a professor, a cabinetmaker). *Som barn* (*yngling*, *medelålders man*), as a child (a youth, a man of middle age).

Note. But if such nouns are modified by an adjective, the article is used.

Ex. *Grant var en framstående general*. Grant was a prominent general.

2. After the word *vilken*, how (what) in exclamations, nor after *hur*, however, or *mången*, many a (one). Ex. *Vilken härlig dag!* What a glorious day! *Hur stor missstag jag än har gjort...* However great a mistake I have made... *Mången gång var det svårt för honom*. Many a time it was difficult for him.

§119. The Swedish indefinite article is placed before the adjective in expressions like the following: *en halv mil*, half a mile; *with sådan (sådant)*, such, cf. German and French. Ex. *ett sådant svårt problem*, such a difficult problem; *vid ett sådant tillfälle*, on such an occasion, etc.

§120. *The Definite Article.* In most cases the use of the definite article in Swedish corresponds to the use of the definite article in English. The definite (postpositive) article is used:

1. With abstract nouns, nouns of material and class. Ex. *Leve friheten!* Long live freedom! *Guldet är tyngre än järnet*. Gold is heavier than iron. *Människan är en förfuglig varelse*. Man is a rational being.

Note. The article is omitted when the noun is used in a partitive sense.

Ex. *Han har guld och silver*. He has gold and silver.

2. With names of seasons, days and weeks. Ex. *Sommaren är här.*
Summer is here. *På måndagen*, on Monday.

Note. Article is omitted: *om måndag (nästa måndag)*, next Monday

3. With many names of rivers, lakes, oceans and mountains. Ex. *Lagan*, name of a Swedish river; *Vänern*, name of a Swedish lake; *Klippiga bergen*. Rocky mountains.

4. Names of streets. Ex. *kungsgatan*, King Street.

5. In expressions like *i kyrkan*, in church; *i skolan*, at (in, to) school; *inför rätten*, in court.

6. In a distributive sense where English has the indefinite article. Ex. *en krona metern*, one crown a meter; *tio kronor om dagen*, ten crowns a day; *två gånger om året*, twice a year.

7. Instead of possessive adjectives. Ex. *Jag har förlorat boken*, I have lost my book; *han har ont i bröstet*, he has a pain in his chest; *han slog sig i huvudet*, he hurt his head.

8. With titles. Ex. *Vill herr doktorn (professorn) vara så god och stiga in?* Would you be so kind as to step in doctor, (professor)?

Note 1. For use of the prepositive article, see §§73,84.

Note 2. Nouns which end in unstressed -en do not take the definite (postpositive) article. Ex. *början*, beginning; *klagan*, complaint; *längtan*, longing, the singular *fröken*, miss (young lady), and others.

THE NOUN AND ITS CASES

§121. A brief statement relative to the noun and its cases was made in Lesson I. The fact was stressed that although the noun in modern Swedish has but a single inflectional ending, i.e., -s of the possessive case, singular and plural, it has, functionally, four cases: the nominative, genitive (possessive), the dative (indirect object), and the accusative (direct object). The nominative, the dative, and the accusative need no further explanation. The statement about the genitive is amplified below.

§122. *The Genitive (Possessive) Case.* As already stated (§67,2), the genitive is formed by adding an -s to the nominative form of the word. See the several paradigms of the nouns (Lessons I - VI). This genitive, which precedes the word to which it belongs, may be formed from almost any noun whether it represents living beings or inanimate objects, or whether it is indefinite or definite, singular or plural. It is most commonly used with names of persons and occurs oftener with the definite form of the word than with the indefinite. As a rule, no apostrophe is used. Ex. *en gossens mössa*, a boy's cap; *gossens mössa*, the boy's cap; *gossarnas mössor*, the boys' caps. It should be noted that the noun representing the object possessed does not take the definite (postpositive) article. Other examples of the genitive: *Göteborgs hamn*, the harbor of Gothenburg; *syndens lön*, the wages of sin; *ett fem veckors gammalt barn*, a child of five weeks; *Sveriges huvudstad*, the capital of Sweden; *Lincolns liv*, the life of Lincoln.

The following deviations from the general rule should be noted:

a) The genitive of proper nouns ending in an s-sound (*s, x*) remain unchanged, but in writing, possession is indicated by an apostrophe after -*s(x)*:
Ex. *Johannes' evangelium*, the Gospel according to St. John; *Strix' utgivare*, the publisher of *Strix*.

Note. The genitive of the indefinite form of common nouns ending in -*s* (ex. *en stins' åligganden*) the duties of a station-master, is usually avoided.

b) The genitive relation may be expressed by means of prepositional phrases. Ex. *taket på ett hus*, the roof of a house; *taket på huset*, the roof of the house; *locket till lådan*, the lid of the box; *ägaren (av) till gården*, the proprietor of the estate; *en man av ära*, a man of honor.

In most cases, nouns ending in -*st*, -*xt* are so periphrased in order to prevent difficult sound-combinations, or the definite form of the genitive is resorted to. Ex. *skafset på en kvast*, the handle of a broom; *blixten's förstörande verkan* (rather than *en blixts förstörande verkan*), the destructive effect of the lightning.

c) Proper nouns ending in a vowel add no genitive ending. Ex. *Örebro län*, the district of Örebro; *Mora socken*, the parish of Mora; *Uppsala universitet*, the University of Uppsala; *Falu gruva*, the mine of Falun. Some proper nouns ending in *s* indicate no genitive, e.g., *Västerås stad*, the town of Västerås.

d) A Latin genitive in -*i* occurs with nouns ending in -*us*. Ex. *Kristus*, gen. *Kristi*; *Kristi liv*, the life of Christ. The gen. of Jesus is *jesu*.

e) In such titles as *Karl den stores rike*, the realm of Charles the Great, the last word forming part of the title generally takes the genitive -*s*. Cf. also *konungens av Sverige hov* (or, *konungen av Sveriges hov*), the court of the king of Sweden.

§123. Note also the following uses of the genitive: *min automobil är dyrare än min brors (automobil)*, my automobile is more expensive than that of my brother, where English uses a determinative pronoun before the genitive.

A form resembling the genitive is frequently used, particularly in the spoken language, to signify the home, family, business, etc. Ex. *Jag har köpt boken hos Melanders*. I have bought the book at Melander's; *Magnussons är inte hemma*, the Magnussons are not at home.

§124. In medieval Swedish the preposition *till* governed the genitive case which then had a distinct case-ending. A few of these old phrases have survived, but the preposition is not, as a rule, to be rendered by *to*.
Ex. *till lands*, by land; *till sjöss*, by sea; *ligga till sängs*, to lie in bed; *gå till bords*, to sit down at table; *sitta till bords*, to be seated at table; *vara till hands*, to be at hand; *gå till mötes*, to go to meet; *till fots*, on foot; *att gå till väders*, to go aloft.

Note also the use of the preposition *i* in temporal expressions referring to the past. Ex. *i måndags*, last Monday; *i våras*, last spring; *i julas*, last Christmas.

§125. Nouns denoting quantity are not followed by a preposition to express the partitive sense. Ex. *ett glas vatten*, a glass of water; *ett par månader*, a couple of months; *mycket pengar*, plenty of money; *ett par skor*, a pair of shoes.

§126. No preposition is used:

a) After geographical names. Ex. *landskäpet Värmland*, the province of Värmland; *ön Gotland*, the island of Gotland.

b) After the nouns *månad*, month; *namn*, name; *titel*, title; *rop*, cry (shout); *parti*, game; *betydelse*, sense. Ex. *januari månad börjar året*, the month of January begins the year; *en man vid namn Gyberg*, a man by the name of Gyberg; *han fick titeln professor*, the title of professor was bestowed upon him; *det var mellan den 25 juni och den sista augusti*, it was between the 25th of June and the last of August.

B. READING SELECTION

Lasse liten (cont.)

1.

Världen är så stor, så stor,
Lasse, Lasse liten.
Större än du nänsin tror,
Lasse, Lasse liten.

3.

Många mänskor leva där,
Lasse, Lasse liten.
Lycklig den, som Gud har kär,
Lasse, Lasse liten.

2.

Där är hett, och där är kallt,
Lasse, Lasse liten.
Men Gud råder överallt,
Lasse, Lasse liten.

4.

Säg, var trives du nu mest?
Lasse, Lasse liten.
Borta bra, men hemma bäst,
Lasse, Lasse liten.

När drömmarna sjungit sin visa, hoppade alla bort, och Nukku Matti bar Lasse åter i båten. Länge låg han helt stilla, och allt hörde han ännu, hur plätppannan fräste där hemma i spiseln. Fräsandet blev allt tydligare. Lasse liten hörde det helt nära bredvid sig - och så vaknade han och slog upp sina ögon.

Då låg han i båten, där han hade somnat. Vinden hade vänt sig, och båten hade med den ena vinden drivit ut, med den andra åter tillbaka till stranden, medan Lasse litensov. Men det, som Lasse ansett för plätppannans fräsande, det var vågornas sakta sorl, när de slogo mot stenarna vid stranden. Lasse liten gnuggade sömnen ur ögonen och såg sig omkring. Allt var som förr: kråkan i björken, katten på gräset och ärtskidsflottan vid stranden. Somliga av skeppen hade förlist, och somliga hade drivit tillbaka till stranden. Herkules hade kommit med sin last från Asien; Loppan hade kommit från Polynesien. Och alla världsdelarna voro precis där de varit förut.

Då kommo bror och syster emot honom och ropade på långt håll: "Var har du varit så länge, Lasse? Kom hem, får du smörgås." Men köksdörren stod öppen, och därifrån hördes ett fräsande.

Trädgårdsmästaren stod nära grinden och vattnade till kvällen dill och persilja, morötter och palsternackor. "Nå," sade han, "var har Lasse liten varit så länge?"

Lasse liten knyckte på nacken, såg styv ut och svarade: "Jag har varit i Asien, Afrika, Amerika och Polynesien. Jag har seglat kring världen uti en ärtisksbåt."

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

större, bigger	fräste, sizzled	såg sig omkring, looked around
nånsin, (någonsin), ever	i spiseln, on the stove	som förr, as before
tror, think	allt tydligare, more and	gräset, the grass
hett, hot	more distinct	ärtisksflottan, pea-pod fleet
kallt, cold	helt nära bredvid sig,	hade förlist, had foundered
råder, reigns	quite close to him(self)	hade kommit, had come
överallt, everywhere	vaknade, woke up	precis, exactly
mänskor (människor), people	slog upp sina ögon,	(hade) varit, had been
leva, live	opened his eyes	syster, sister
lycklig, happy	hade sonat, had fallen	emot, toward
den som, he (the person) whom	asleep	ropade, called
har kär, holds dear (loves)	hade vänt sig, had shifted	på långt håll, from a distance
säg, say	den ena --- den andra,	så länge, so long
trives du nu mest, dost	the one--- the other	får du smörgås, (and you
thou like it most (best)	drivit ut, drifted out	will) get a sandwich
borta, away	dter tillbaka, back again	nära, near
bäst, the best	medan, while	grinden, the gate
(hade) sjungit, had sung	sov, was sleeping (was	vattnade, (was) watering
hoppade, hopped	asleep)	till kvällen, for the evening
bort, away	(hade) ansett för, had	dill, dill
bar, carried	taken for	persilja, parsley
åter i båten, back into	vågornas sakta sorg, the	morötter, carrots
the boat	gentle murmur of the waves	palsternackor, parsnips
länge, for a long while	slogo mot, beat against	nå, well.
läg, lay	stenarna, the stones	knyckte på nacken,
helt, very	vid stranden, on the shore	turned up his nose
stilla, still	gnuggade, rubbed	styv, important (lit. stiff)
allt, everything	sömmen, the sleep	såg styv ut, looked important
ännu, yet	ur ögonen, from his eyes	uti, in

D. QUESTIONS

1. Hur kom Lasse liten åter i båten?
2. Sov Lasse liten ännu (still)?
3. Vad var plätppannans fräsande?
4. Var satt kråkan?
5. Hade alla skeppen förlist?
6. Vad ropade bror och syster emot Lasse liten?
7. Vad gjorde trädgårdsmästaren och vad ville han veta?
8. Hur såg Lasse liten ut och vad berättade (related) han för trädgårdsmästaren?

B. EXERCISE

§127. Translate into Swedish:

1. The world is very (*mycket*) large.
2. The dreams sang (past of *sjunga*) a ballad and when they had done (supine of *göra*) that (*det*), they ran (*word order?*) away (past of *springa*).
3. Little Lawrence slept (past of *sova*) in the boat.
4. Nukku Matti had carried (supine of *bära*) him to (*till*) the boat.
5. When he woke up he saw (*word order?*) the crow. The bird (*fågel*, com. gender) was hopping about (*omkring*) on the ground (*mark*, com. gender).

LESSON VIII

A. GRAMMAR

*Conjugation of the Verb. Survey of Personal Endings
of the Verb. Weak and Strong. Present and Past Indicative.
Formation of Tenses, see §§366, ff. Use of the Tenses of the Indicative.*

§128. *Conjugation of the Verb.* There are four conjugations in Swedish. They are easily distinguishable by the different forms of the supine. The supine is the neuter singular of the past participle and corresponds to the English past participle when used with the auxiliary *to have*. The supine is always used with *hava*. Ex. *Han har suttit på stenen*, he has sat on the rock (stone). The supine is invariable.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE VERB

	Infinitive	Past Ind.	Supine
I. Conjugation	<i>kalla, call</i>	<i>kallade</i>	<i>kall-at</i>
II. "	<i>böja, bend</i>	<i>böjde</i>	<i>böj-t</i>
III. "	<i>tro [trə:], believe</i>	<i>trodde</i>	<i>tro-tt</i>
IV. "	<i>gripa, seize</i>	<i>grep</i>	<i>grip-it</i>

§129. Survey of the personal endings of the four conjugations in the present and past indicative:

PRESENT INDICATIVE

	I to love	IIa to bend	IIb to buy	III to believe	IV to seize
Sg.	1. { <i>jag älskar</i>	<i>böjer</i>	<i>köper</i>	<i>tror</i>	<i>griper</i>
	2. } <i>du</i> "	"	"	"	"
	3. } <i>ni</i> "	"	"	"	"
		"	"	"	"
		"	"	"	"
		"	"	"	"
Pl.	1. { <i>vi älska</i>	<i>böja</i>	<i>köpa</i>	<i>tro</i>	<i>gripa</i>
	2. { <i>I älsken</i>	<i>böjen</i>	<i>köpen</i>	<i>tron</i>	<i>gripen</i>
	3. { <i>ni älska</i>	<i>böja</i>	<i>köpa</i>	<i>tro</i>	<i>gripa</i>
	3. { <i>de</i> "	"	"	"	"

PAST INDICATIVE

	I	IIa	IIb	III	IV
Sg.	1. { jag 2. { du ni han hon 3. { den det	älskade " " " " " " " " " "	böjde " " " " " " " " " "	köpte " " " " " " " " " "	trodde " " " " " " " " " "
	1. { vi 2. { I ni 3. { de	älskade älskaden älskade " "	böjde böjden böjde " "	köpte köpten köpte " "	trodde trodden trodde " "
					grep " " " " " "
					grepo grepen grepo " "

SUPINE (with *ha*va)*

I	IIa	IIb	III	IV
jag har älskat, etc.	jag har böjt, etc.	jag har köpt, etc.	jag har trott, etc.	jag har gripit, etc.

PAST PARTICIPLE (with *vara*)

Common gender	mannen är älskad kvinnan är älskad	böjd "	köpt "	trodd "	gripen*
Neuter	barnet är älskat	böjt	köpt	trott	gripet
Plural	de äro älskade	böjda	köpta	trodda	gripna

§130. *Present Indicative* refers:

1. To an action which takes place at the present time, e.g., *jag skriver*, I am writing.
2. To an action which is continuous and regular, e.g., *jorden rör sig i rynden*, the earth moves in space.
3. To something which took place in past time (historical present). In this sense the present time is often used by writers when they wish to bring something vividly before the reader. Ex. *Gustav sätter sig i spetsen för dalkarlarna, slår danskarne, intager Stockholm...* Gustav puts himself at the head of the Dalecarlians, defeats the Danes, occupies Stockholm...
4. The present tense also expresses futurity. Ex. *Jag är strax färdig*, I'll be ready in a second; *han reser i morgon*, he will be off tomorrow.

§131. *The Past Indicative* indicates:

1. That something took place in the past. Ex. *Han skrev ett brev i går*. He wrote a letter yesterday. This is the *narrative past*.

Note. In exclamations Swedish uses the past tense when English has the present: *Det var en vacker tavla!* That is a beautiful painting.

Note also the use of the present tense in Swedish when English employs the past. Ex. *När är ni född?* - *Jag är född 1895*. When were you born? - I was born 1895.

* See also list of strong and irregular verbs §388.

a. The Past Indicative is also used descriptively. Ex. *Nin bror sysslade alltid med att läsa, medan hans kamrater roade sig.* My brother always busied himself with reading while his chums amused themselves. *Socrates sade (plägade säga) att...* Socrates used to say (was in the habit of saying) that...

§132. The Present Perfect indicates that something has happened (has been completed). The tense is used as in English. Ex. *Vi ha alla läst boken.* We have all read the book. *"Var har du varit så länge, Lasse liten?" - "Jag har seglat kring världen uti en ärtskidsbåt."* "Where have you been so long, little Lawrence?" - "I have sailed around the world in a pea-pod boat."

Note 1. An action having begun in the past and continuing to be in effect at the present time is referred to by the perfect or the present. Ex. *Jag har bott (or jag bor) i Philadelphia sedan några år tillbaka.* I have lived (have been living) in Philadelphia a few years. Compare the idiomatic use of the present tense in French and German.

Note 2. Swedish and English differ in the use of the present perfect. Cf. Swedish: *Hur har du sovit i natt?* with English: How did you sleep last night? *Var har ni fått tag i den här kniven?* Where did you find this knife?

§133. The Past Perfect indicates that something had already happened when something else happened. Ex. *Johan hade redan skrivit uppsatsen, när modern inträdde i rummet.* John had already written the theme when the (his) mother came into the room. For the conjugation of the past perfect, future and future perfect, see §§ 366,ff., and 374,ff.

§134. The Future indicates that something will (is likely to) happen. Ex. *Jag skall skriva till Er ofördörligen, och Ni skall vara så god och visa mig samma artighet.* I shall write to you without delay, and you will be so good as to show me the same courtesy. The future expressed by *skola* and infinitive often conveys the idea of a resolution, decision or command.

Pure Futurity is expressed by the present of *komma + infinitive*. See §§ 237,1; 366,ff., 374,ff.

Note. Immediate Future, English, *to be about to, on the point of*, is expressed by *std i begrepp att*. Ex. *Han står i begrepp att sälja sin fastighet.* He is about to sell his property.

§ 135. The Future Perfect indicates that something will have taken place at a certain time in the future. Ex. *Jag skall ha(va) (kommer att ha(va)) uträttat ärandet vid 12-tiden i morgon.* I shall have done the errand about 12 o'clock tomorrow.

The tense is usually replaced by the perfect: *jag har nog uträttat ärandet; jag är nog färdig vid 12-tiden.* I'll probably be done (ready) about 12 o'clock.

AGREEMENT OF THE VERB WITH THE SUBJECT.

§166 a) In the literary language the verb agrees with its subject in number and person. Ex. *Gud skapade universum*. God created the universe. *Dagarna äro korta*. The days are short. *I bören väl använda tiden*. You (ye) ought to make good use of your time.

If the subject is a collective noun (of multitude), followed by a substantive in the plural, the verb is usually in the plural. Ex. *En mängd personer ha anmält sig*. A large number of persons have reported. But, if the idea of unity is prominent, the verb is in the singular. Ex. *En trupp soldater kom marscherande*. A troop of soldiers came marching along.

N.B. But the verb is usually plural when the predicate term is in the singular.

If a relative pronoun is the subject, the verb agrees with the antecedent. Ex. *I, som ären unga, bören lyda oss, som äro äldre*. You, who are young, should obey us who are older.

Ni as subject usually has a singular verb, even when it is used in addressing several persons. Ex. *Vill ni det, barn?* Do you want that, children?

But the verb is in the plural when the predicate term is plural. Ex. *Ni äro alla närvarande, synes det*. You are all present, it seems.

When *det*, formal subject, occurs together with the real subject, the verb is always in the singular. Ex. *Det är många här, som önska uttrycka sig - många äro här*.

§166 b) If several subjects in the singular, connected by *och* or *samt*, have a common verb, it is in the plural. So, usually, also with *både - och* (both, and). If, furthermore, the subjects are of different persons, the 1st person has precedence over the 2nd, and the 2nd over the 3rd. Ex. *Husbonden, hustrun och sonen har kommit hem*. The husband, the wife and the son have come home. *Jag och de mina är gott*. I and mine are well. *Du och din broder ären mina vänner*. You and your brother are my friends. *Både han och hans hustru har insjuknat*. Both he and his wife have fallen ill.

But verb is singular:

a) If the subjects are coupled and comprehended as a unity. Ex. *Ljus och liv utbreder sig med morgonsolens strålar*.

b) If several singular subjects are joined by other copulative conjunctions than *och*, *samt*, *bdes - och*, the verb is preferably put in the singular.
 Ex. *Varken hög eller låg är förkallad, etc....Såväl glädjen, som smärtan, förgår.*

c) If the subjects constitute a rising series. Ex. *Makt, ära, rikedom, allt blev honom berövat.*

d) If the subjects are merely different names for the same person.
 Ex. *Vår skollärare och klockare... Our teacher and sexton...*

e) If the subjects are infinitives or clauses (sentences). Ex. *Att lata sig möja är vinnning nog. To be satisfied is gain enough.*

But if the verb stands next to a plural subject, it is in the plural even with disjunctive or adversative conjunction. Ex. *Ej blott författaren utan många av hans kamrater varo med...*

When *man* is subject and indicates plurality, the verb is in the plural. Ex. *Man satte sig till bords, glade och möjda med sin värld och med varandra (Strindberg).* They seated themselves at table, happy and contented with their world and with one another.

B. READING SELECTION

En blick på Sveriges karta

Jag ser från skolans där en bild,
av fingrar märkt, med plumpar spilld,
på kalkad vägg i prima*,
en karta, klistrad upp på lärft,
utav den svenska jord vi ärvt,
vårt land från fordomtima. (Carl Snoilsky)

Ja, här ligger landet framför oss mellan fjäll och vatten. Dess areal är två gånger så stor som Englands och Irlands tillsammans. Över sex miljoner människor bygga här, och hälften av dem bo i städerna.

I norr och öster gränsar Sverige till Norge och Finland, i väster till Norge, Skagerack och Kattegatt, i öster till Östersjön och i söder till Öresund. Vilken älskvärd torva detta Sverige, som sträcker sig från Sandhammarns udde i söder till treriksröset i landets nordligaste hörn.

Trots det nordliga läget är klimatet icke ofördelaktigt, tack vare Golvströmmen, som stryker utmed norska kusten. Den kalla vintern kommer från Ryssland. I det sydliga Sverige är sommaren lång; i norra delarna kort. Sveriges växt- och djurliv har i allmänhet sina motsvarigheter på kontinenten. Landets skogar bestå huvudsakligen av tall och gran. Men det finns också åtskilliga arter lövträd i mellersta och södra Sverige, såsom björk, ek, alm, lind, lönn, hassel, o.s.v. Boken förekommer endast i vissa delar av Bohuslän, i Halland, Skåne och Blekinge.

Sveriges fauna omfattar varg, björn (som häller på att dö ut), älg, rådjur, räv, grävling, utter, lo, o.s.v. I Lappland följa lapparna ännu sina renhjordar på fjället och i lågländerna.

Sveriges inbyggare äro av indo-europeisk härkomst. År 1934 uppgick deras antal till 6,211,566. Vid 1850-talet bodde 10 procent av befolkningen i städerna. Folkräkningen 1900 visade 21 procent. År 1933 hade städerna 50 procent av hela landets befolkning.

Sveriges fysiska geografi visar, att lejonparten av det vidsträckta Norrland är en ödemark, genomfluten av ett antal floder som hastat mot Bottniska viken. Men ödemarken är på samma gång en av rikets skattkammarer, förnämligast på grund av den stora tillgången på järn, timmer och vattenkraft.

Mellersta och södra Sverige visa en mera leende och omväxlande natur. Vänern är landets största vattensamling och näst Ladoga (Ryssland) Europas största insjö. Vättern, Hjälmmaren, Siljan och Storsjön äro förtjusande vatten, och Mälaren och Mälardalen med sin uråldriga kultur komma den som en gång sett dessa regioner att längta dit igen.

Sveriges kommunikationer äro ytterst moderna. Järnvägsförbindelserna, som kompletteras av en massa buss- och ångbåtslinjer, göra det möjligt att färdas var och helst utan tidsspillan, samt för en ringa penning.

Skalden Erik Axel Karlfeldt skrev för några år sedan, att Sverige icke är något turistland och att det aldrig kommer att bli det. Den städse tilltagande turistström som översvämmar Sverige varje sommar synes motsatsen. Vem kan nu för tiden göra anspråk på epitetet "berest" utan att vara förtrogen

* The first class in school

med västkustens förtjusande badorter från Strömstad till Båstad och Mönle? Vem har inte latat sig några soliga och rofulla dagar i Skanör eller Falsterbo, i skuggan av Borgholms slott, eller i rosornas och ruinernas stad på Gotland? Men ens goda rykte som resenär beror på mer än detta. Man måste naturligtvis ha färdats över Göta kanal i hela dess utsträckning, beskådat medeltida kloster, borgar, slott och herresäten. Konversationen får lov att röra sig om Trolleholm, Vittskövle, Kalmar, Bohus, Läckö, Vadstena, Alvastra och Vreta Kloster, Örebro, Gripsholm, Sigtuna, Skokloster, Uppsala och Lunds katedraler. Och när man sett allt detta, då återstår Selma Lagerlöfs romantiska landsända. Därifrån går vägen till Sveriges hjärta, Dalarna. Längst i norr ligga Norrlands öde vidder, som sträcka sig långt bortom polcirkeln in i midnattssolens, järnets, träskens och de svenska alpernas värld. Och när man sett även detta, har man ännu mycket kvar.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

Explanations

In Lessons I to VII the vocabularies have recorded the words in the form and order in which they have occurred in the reading selections. Difficult phrases and clauses have generally been paraphrased or translated for the benefit of the learner. Duplicates have been subjected to systematic elimination. The order of listing and of elimination of duplicate words continues in the remaining lessons VIII - XVI, but a different treatment is accorded the parts of speech that are subject to change of form.

The perpendicular line (|), the dash (-) and the tilde (~) are used to render the repetition of words unnecessary. Gender and declension are indicated by the *indefinite* and the *definite singular* and the *indefinite plural* form of the nouns. Ex. *flick|a, -an; -or*, girl, the girl, girls. And so in the case of the other declensions: *dal, -en; -ar*, dale, etc.; *park, -en; -er*, park, etc.; *bo, -(e)t; -n*, nest, etc.; *arbetar|e, -(e)n; -*, worker, etc. In the last example the dash (-) indicates that the plural of the noun is identical in form with the singular. The use of the tilde may be illustrated as follows: *flickskola, ~skola*, school for girls; *en blick pd, en~ på*, a glance at; *att sträcka sig, att ~ sig*, to stretch (o.s.).

The listing of the adjective, participial and otherwise, presents first, the common gender form, secondly, the neuter singular, and thirdly, the plural form for all genders. Ex. *kalka|d, -t; -ade*, white-washed; *nordlig, -t; -a*, northern.

Of the verb, active voice forms only have been listed as a rule. The weak conjugations are indicated by Roman numbers. Ex. *gränsa I, bygga IIa, sträcka IIb, bo III*; the strong (4th) conjugation, e.g., *skriva, skrev, skrivit*, is not indicated by a number. The principal parts of the verbs of this conjugation, and the principal parts of all irregular verbs, regardless of classification, are written out in full.

The formation of compound nouns has not been indicated in any way and should be looked up under their component parts, e.g., *ärt+skids+båtar* is composed of *ärt+skids+båtar*.

Constructions (verbal, adjectival and prepositional government) have been indicated in some instances. Ex. *tänka*, to think; *~pd ngn (ngn)* or

något (ngt), to think of (about) someone or something. Cf. French: penser à quelqu'un (qqu.) or quelque chose (qqch.), and German denken + an + acc.; tala to talk (speak), ~ över något, to speak on something (some subject). Cf. French: discourir sur qqch.; vara ond, to be angry; ~ på ngn, to be angry with (at) someone; förträstan, confidence; sätta sin ~ till ngn, to put one's trust (confidence) in someone; att borsta, to brush; ~ sig själv, to brush o.s. (=oneself); sin (ens) hatt, o.'s hat.

<i>blick, -en; -ar, glance</i>	<i>stad, -en; städer, city, town</i>	<i>sydlig, -t; -a, southern</i>
<i>en~på, a ~ at</i>	<i>norr, North</i>	<i>lång, -t; -a, long</i>
<i>Sverige, Sweden</i>	<i>i ~, to the ~</i>	<i>norra, northern</i>
<i>kart a, -an; -or, map</i>	<i>öster, East</i>	<i>del, -en; -ar, part</i>
<i>se, såg, sågo; sett, see</i>	<i>i ~, to the ~</i>	<i>kort, -; -a, short</i>
<i>skolla, -an; -or, school</i>	<i>gränsa I, border</i>	<i>växtliv, -et, -, plant life</i>
<i>dar (see dag), days</i>	<i>~ till, ~ on</i>	<i>djurliv, -et; -, animal life</i>
<i>bild, -en; -er, picture</i>	<i>Norge, Norway</i>	<i>i allmänhet, in general</i>
<i>finger, -en (and fingret);</i>	<i>Finland, Finland</i>	<i>motsvarighet, -en; -er,</i>
<i> fingrar, finger</i>	<i>väster, West</i>	<i>counterpart</i>
<i>märkt, -; -a, marked</i>	<i>Skagerack, Skagerrack</i>	<i>kontinent, -en;-er, continent</i>
<i>plump, -en; -ar, (link) blot</i>	<i>Kattegat, Cattegat</i>	<i>skog, -en; -ar, forest</i>
<i>spill d, -t; -da, soiled</i>	<i>Östersjön, The Baltic Sea</i>	<i>bestå, bestod, bestått, consist</i>
<i>kalka d,-t;-de, white-washed</i>	<i>söder, South</i>	<i>huvudsakligen, mainly</i>
<i>vägg, -en; -ar, wall</i>	<i>Öresund, Öresund</i>	<i>tall, -en; -ar, pine</i>
<i>klistral d, -t;-de, pasted</i>	<i>älskvår d, -t; -da, lovable</i>	<i>gran, -en; -ar, fir, spruce</i>
<i>upp, up</i>	<i>torv a, -an; -or, sod</i>	<i>också, also</i>
<i>läuft, -et; -er, linen</i>	<i>vilken älskvård ~</i>	<i>åtskillig, -t; -a,</i>
<i>utav, of</i>	<i>what a lovely land</i>	<i>various, several</i>
<i>svensk, -t; -a, Swedish</i>	<i>sträcka IIb, extend</i>	<i>art, -en; -er, kind</i>
<i>jord, -en; -ar, earth, soil</i>	<i>Sandhammars udde, Cape</i>	<i>variety (of)</i>
<i>ärvd, -t; -da, inherited</i>	<i>Sandhammar</i>	<i>lövträd, -et; -</i>
<i>vår, -t; -a, our</i>	<i>udd e, -en; -ar, cape</i>	<i>mellerst, -; -a, middle</i>
<i>fordomtima, of old, yore</i>	<i>treriksrös, -et; -,</i>	<i>södra, southern</i>
<i>här, here</i>	<i>cairn of three countries</i>	<i>såsom, such as</i>
<i>ligga, ligg, legat, lie</i>	<i>nordligaste, northernmost</i>	<i>ek, -en; -ar, oak</i>
<i>framför, before</i>	<i>hörn, -et; -, corner</i>	<i>alm, -en; -ar, elm</i>
<i>fjäll, -et; -, mountain</i>	<i>trots, in spite of</i>	<i>lind, -en; -ar, linden</i>
<i>vatt en, -net; -, water</i>	<i>nordlig, -t; -a, northerly</i>	<i>lönn, -en; -ar, maple</i>
<i>areal, -en; -er, area</i>	<i>läge, -t; -n, location</i>	<i>hassel, -n; hasslar, hazel</i>
<i>gång, -en; -er, time (measure)</i>	<i>klimat, -et; -er, climate</i>	<i>o.s.v.- och så vidare, etc.</i>
<i> två ~, twice</i>	<i>ofördelaktig, -t; -a,</i>	<i>bok, -en; -ar, beech</i>
<i>så stor som, as large as</i>	<i>disadvantageous</i>	<i>förekomma, förekomm, före-</i>
<i>England, England</i>	<i>tack vare, thanks to</i>	<i>kommit, occur, be found</i>
<i>Irland, Ireland</i>	<i>Golvströmmen, Gulf Stream</i>	<i>endast, only</i>
<i>tillsammans, together</i>	<i>stryka, strök, strukit,</i>	<i>viss, -t; -a, certain</i>
<i>sex, six</i>	<i>run, move</i>	<i>Bohuslän, } names</i>
<i>miljon, -en; -er, million</i>	<i>~ utmed, skirt</i>	<i>Halland, } of</i>
<i>människ a,-an;-or, man</i>	<i>norsk, -t;-a. Norwegian</i>	<i>Skåne, } Swedish</i>
<i> human being; pl. people</i>	<i>kall, -t; -a, cold</i>	<i>Blekinge, } provinces</i>
<i>bygga IIa, build</i>	<i>winter, -n; vintrar, winter</i>	<i>faun a, -an; -or, fauna</i>
<i>hälft,-en; -er, half</i>	<i>komma, kom, kommit, come</i>	<i>omfatta I, comprise</i>
<i>bo III, live, dwell</i>	<i>Ryssland, Russia</i>	<i>varg, -en; -ar, wolf</i>

björn , bear	<i>Bottniska Viken.</i>	mass a,-an;-or, number (of)
hälla , höll, hällit, hold	The Gulf of Bothnia	ångbåtslinje,-n;-r,
~ på att, be on the point of	på samma gång, at the	steamship line
dö, dog, dött, die	same time	göra, gjorde, gjort, make do
~ ut, become extinct	rike, -t; -n, country, kingdom	~ möjligt, make it possible
älg,-en;-ar, (elk) moose	skattkammar, -n; -, treasure-house, treasury	färdas I (dep.), travel
rådjur, -et; -, roe (deer)	förnämligast, principally	var som helst, anywhere
räv, -en; -ar, fox	på grund av, on account of	tidsspillan (indecl.), waste of time
grävling, -en; -ar, badger	tillgång,-en;-ar (på), supply (of)	samt, and, as well as
utter, -n; uttrar, otter	järn, -et; -, iron	ringa (indecl.), small
lo, -n; -ar, lynx	timmer, timret; -, timber	penning,-en;-ar (or pengar), coin (here: sum of money)
Lappland, Lapland	vattenkraft, -en;-er, water power	skald,-en;-er, poet
Lapp, -en; -ar, Lapp	mera, more	skriva, skrev, skrivit, write
renhjord, -en; -ar, herd	leende, smiling	för några år sedan, some years ago
of reindeer	omväxlande, varying	icke är något, is not
lägland,-et; -länder,	natur,-en;-er, nature, scenery	any = is not
lowland	vattensamling,-en;-ar, body of water	turistland,-et; -länder, country for tourists
inbyggare,-n; -, inhabitant	näst, next	aldrig kommer att bli det, never will become one
indo-europeisk,-t;-a,	Europa, Europe	städse, ever
Indo-European	insjö, -n;-ar, lake	tilltagande, increasing
härförmst,-en, origin, descent	förtjusande, charming, lovely	turistström,-men;-mar, stream (influx) of tourists
år, -et; -, year	vatten, vattnet, vattnen, water (body of)	översvämma I, overflow, deluge
~ 1934, in 1934	uråldrig,-t;-a, ancient	varge, every
uppgå, uppgick, uppgingo;	Mälaren, the Mälar	tyckas IIb (dep.), seem
uppgått, amount	Mälardalen, the Mälar Valley	bevisa I, prove
~ till, ~ to	kultur,-en;-er, culture, civilization	motsats,-en;-er, opposite
deras, their	komma att, cause, will	kunna, kan, kunde; kunnat, can
antal,-et; -, number	en gång, once	nu för tiden, nowadays
1850-talet, the 1850's	region,-en;-er, region	anspråk,-et; -, claim
bo III, live, dwell	längta I, long	göra ~ på, lay ~ to
procent,-en; -, per cent	dit, there	epitet,-et;-er, epithet
befolknings,-en;-ar,	komma den, som en gång sett	berest,-;-a, traveled
population	dessa regioner, att längta dit	utan att vara förtrogen med
folkräkning, -en; -ar, census	igen, will cause him, who has	without being familiar with
visa I, show	once seen these regions, to	västkusten, the West Coast
hel,-t;-a, whole, entire	long to go there again.	badort, -en;-er, bathing resort
fysisk,-t;-a, physical	komunikation, -en; -er, communication (means of)	Strömstad,] Swedish
geografi,-(e)n; -, geography	ytterst, extremely, utterly	Båstad,] summer
lejonpart, -en; -er, the	modern,-t;-a, modern	Mölle,] resorts
lion's share	järnvägsförbindelse,-n;-r, railway communication	lata (sig) I, idle (away)
vidsträckt,-;-a, extensive	komplettera I, complement	solig,-t;-a, sunny
Norrland, Norrland		rofull,-t;-a, peaceful
(northern part of Sweden)		Skanör, Swedish town
ödemark,-en,-er, wilderness		Falsterbo, Swedish town
genomflut en, -et; -na,		
traversed		
antal,-et; -, number (of)		
flod, -en; -er, river		
hasta I, hurry, hasten		
mot, toward		

<i>Borgholm</i> , Swedish town	<i>få; fick, fingo; fått, get</i>	<i>katedral,-en;-er, cathedral</i>
<i>skugg a, -an; -or,</i> shade, shadow	<i>~ lov att, have to, must</i>	<i>återstå,-stod,-stått,</i> remain, be left
<i>slott,-et;-, castle</i>	<i>röra (sig) I, concern</i>	<i>romantisk,-t;a, romantic</i>
<i>ros,-en;-or, rose</i>	<i>Trolleholm</i> , castle, province of Skåne	<i>landsänd e,-en;-ar,</i> countryside
<i>ruin,-en;-er, ruin</i>	<i>Vittskövle</i> , a castle	<i>gå, gick, gingo, gått, go</i>
<i>Gotland</i> , island province	<i>Kalmar</i> , ancient castle, city of Kalmar	<i>väg,-en;-ar, way</i>
<i>ens, one's</i>	<i>Bohus</i> , old fort on Göta älv	<i>hjärta,-t;-n, heart</i>
<i>rykte,-t;-n, reputation</i>	<i>Läckö</i> , ancient castle on Lake Vänern	<i>Dalarna, Swedish province</i>
<i>resenär,-en;-er, traveler</i>	<i>Vadstena</i> , ancient cloister	<i>längst i norr, farthest north</i>
<i>som ~ . as a ~</i>	<i>Alvastra</i> , old monastery, cloister	<i>öde (indecl.), deserted,</i> <i>desolate</i>
<i>bero III, depend</i>	<i>Vreta</i> , old monastery, cloister	<i>vidd,-en;-er, tract, expanse</i>
<i>detta, this</i>	<i>Örebro</i> , capital of the Province of Närke	<i>sträcka (sig) I, stretch, extend</i>
<i>naturligtvis, naturally</i>	<i>Gripsholm</i> , ancient castle	<i>bortom, beyond, away</i>
<i>Göta kanal, Gotha Canal</i>	<i>Sigtuna</i> , old castle	<i>Polcirkeln, the Arctic circle</i>
<i>i hela dess utsträckning.</i> for its whole length	<i>Skokloster</i> , old castle	<i>midnattsol,-en;-ar,</i> midnight sun
<i>beskåda I, view, look at</i>	<i>Uppsala</i> , university cities	<i>träsk,-et;-, marsh</i>
<i>medeltida, medieval</i>	<i>Lund</i> , of Sweden	<i>alp,-en;-er, alp</i>
<i>kloster, klostret; -, cloister</i>		<i>även detta, all this</i>
<i>borg, -en;-ar, fortified castle</i>		<i>kvar, left</i>
<i>herresåte, -t;-n,</i> manor-house		

D. QUESTIONS

§ 136. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. Var ligger landet? | inbyggare bor i städerna? |
| 2. Hur stor är dess areal? | 10. Varför är ödemarken en av rikets skattkammar? |
| 3. Hur många människor bo där? | 11. Hur stor är Vänern? |
| 4. Till vilka land gränsar Sverige? | 12. Hur kompletteras järnvägsförbindelserna i Sverige? |
| 5. Varför är klimatet icke ofördelaktigt? | 13. Vad skrev Erik Axel Karlfeldt för några år sedan? |
| 6. Hur är sommaren i Sverige? | 14. Vad bevisar motsatsen? |
| 7. Av vad består Sveriges skogar? | 15. Vad bör man i synnerhet besöka? |
| 8. Vad följa lapparna? | |
| 9. Hur stor procent av Sveriges | |

E. EXERCISE

§ 137. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. --(millions of) människ- --(past indic. of bygga) --(their) --(indef. pl. of home) i Sverige.
2. Han har --(supine of spilla) plump- (indef. pl.) på kart- (def. sing.).
3. Hälft- av --(them) -- (past indic. of följa) lappar- .

4. Land- (def. sing.) --(past ind. of sträcka sig) från söder till norr.
5. Jag har --(supine of följa) --(him) genom --(the) sydlig- Sverige.
6. --(the) städse tilltagand- turistströmm-(def. sing.) --(pres. indic. of synas) bevisa motsats- (def. sing.).
7. Konversation- (def. sing.) --(past indic. of röra) sig om ruinerna- stad på Gotland.
8. --(this) land, --(which) ligger mellan fjäll och vatten, ha vi --(supine of ärva) från fordomtima.
9. Detta --(past indic. of göra) det möjligt för --(us) att färdas utan tidsspillan.
10. --(he) har inte --(supine of göra) anspråk på detta epitet.

§138. Give the principal parts and present indicative in Swedish of the following verbs: inherit, build, extend, follow, do, seem, touch on.

F. COMPOSITION

§139. Translate into Swedish:

1. Many people built their (sina) homes in Sweden at that time.
2. The children spilled ink (bläck) on the map.
3. We have followed them half the way to Lapland.
4. It (n.) extends about 300 miles north of Denmark.
5. The Lapps followed the reindeer herds across the mountains and the lowlands.
6. It seemed as if (som om) the ever-increasing influx of tourists had disproved his theory.
7. The conversation touched on various beauty spots in Sweden.
8. Those (dessa) men tried to prove that they had inherited this land.
9. It was not possible for us to do it.
10. He has not made any such (något sådant) claim.

LESSON IX

A. GRAMMAR

Conjugation of the Verb. 1st Conjugation: Indicative and Subjunctive; Active and Passive. Numerals: Cardinals and Ordinals.

§140. As we have seen in Lesson VIII, there are in Swedish four conjugations of the verb, the 1st, 2nd and 3rd weak, and the 4th strong conjugation. The distinction *weak* and *strong* in Swedish is the same as in all Germanic languages. The regular weak verb forms the past tense by adding the tense-characteristic -d or -t or -dd to the verbal stem and to this tense-sign the personal ending -e, common to all persons, except the archaic 2nd which has the ending -en.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>	75
kalla I *	kalla-d-e	-at	
böja IIa	böj-d-e	-t	
köpa IIb	köp-t-e	-t	
tro III	tro-dd-e	-tt	
gripa IV	grep	grip-it	

The chief characteristic of the strong verbs is their change of the root-vowel in the past tense and sometimes in the supine and the past participle. Cf. English *sing*, *sang*, *sung*, with Swedish *sjunga* [sjʊŋ'a'], *sjöng* [sjöŋ:], *sjungit* [sjʊŋ'it']. The personal endings of the past indicative of the strong verbs: *none* in the singular, and *-o*, *-en*, *-o* in the plural.

Note 1. For a survey of the personal endings of the weak and the strong verbs, the form of the supine and the past participle, and the use of the tenses of the indicative, see Lesson VIII.

Note 2. For a complete survey of the model verbs of the several conjugations active and passive, all moods and tenses, see §§366,374 ff. The paradigms will afford the student an excellent opportunity to study the verb in its entirety and to grasp the interrelation of moods and tenses and their functions.

Note 3. For the formation of the passive, see Lesson XII; compound verbs, Lesson XIII; reflexive verbs, Lesson XIII; deponent verbs, Lesson XIV.

§141. First conjugation. The majority of Swedish verbs belong to this conjugation.

1. Almost all verbs derived from other parts of speech by means of consonantal endings. Ex. *gulna* [gʊl'nɑ:] (from *gul*) to turn yellow; *vidga* [vid'ga:] (from *vid*) to widen; *rensa* [ren'sa:] (from *ren*) to clean.

2. All verbs ending in *-era* [-e:ra]. Ex. *reglera*, to regulate; *regera*, to rule; *korrigera* [korɪsə-ra:] to correct.

3. Almost all weak verbs, the stem of which ends in a consonant and contains one of the back palatal (hard) vowels *a*, *o*, *u*, *å*. Ex. *koka* [kɔ:kɑ:] to cook (boil); *skada*, to harm (scathe); *fråga*, to ask (inquire).

4. All verbs having a vowel before the infinitive ending *-a*.
Ex. *fria*, to woo; *skria*, to scream, shout.

§142. Irregular verbs of the 1st conjugation.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Past Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>heta</i> , to be called	Sg. heter Pl. heta	hette	hetat
<i>kunna</i> , to be able	Sg. kan Pl. kunna	kunde	kunnat
<i>leva</i> , to live	Sg. lever Pl. leva	levde	levat
<i>veta</i> , to know	Sg. vet Pl. veta	visste	vetat
<i>vilja</i> , to want	Sg. vill Pl. vilja	ville	velat

* The final *a* of the infinitive of verbs of the 1st conjugation belongs to the stem, Prim. Nordic *kallōn* developed into *kalla*, *kallōdō* into *kallade*. Hence the tense-sign of the past is properly *-d*. Popularly it is stated, however, that the ending of the past tense in question is *-ade*. But it should be borne in mind that the stem of weak verbs of the 1st and 3rd conjugations is identical with the infinitive (*kalla*, *tro*); in the 2nd weak and the 4th conjugation, the infinitive is formed by adding *-a* to the verbal stem (*böj-a*, *köp-a*, *grīp-a*).

NUMERALS

§143.

A. CARDINAL NUMBERS

0	noll	16	sexton	50	femtio (femti)
1	en, m.f. (neut. ett)	17	sjutton	60	sextio (sexti)
2	två	18	aderton (arton)	70	sjuttio (sjutti)
3	tre	19	nitton	80	åttio (åtti)
4	fyra	20	tjugo (tjuge)	90	nittio (nitti)
5	fem	21	tjugoen (-ett)	100	(ett) hundra
6	sex	22	tjugotvå	101	hundraen, -ett
7	sju	23	tjugotre	120	hundratjugo
8	åtta	24	tjugofyra	121	hundratjugoen, -ett
9	nio (nie)	25	tjugofem	200	två hundra
10	tio (tie)	26	tjugosex	1,000	(ett) tusen
11	elva	27	tjugosju	1,777	(ett) tusen sju hundra
12	tolv	28	tjugoåtta		sjuttiosju
13	tretton	29	tjugonio	2,000	två tusen
14	fjorton	30	trettio (tretti)	1,000,000	en miljon
15	femton	40	fyrtio (fyrti)	2,000,000	två miljoner

NOTES ON THE CARDINAL NUMBERS

§144. The numeral adjective *en* for common gender, has the neuter form *ett*. Ex. *en gosse* (*flicka*), a boy (girl); *ett hus*, a house; *tjugoett* är och *tjugoen dagar*, twenty-one years and twenty-one days.

When used substantively *en* has the genitive *ens*. Ex. *Det är ej ens fel, att två tråta*. It is not the fault of one that two quarrel. (It takes two to quarrel). Any other cardinal number, when used substantively, takes the genitive ending *-s*. Ex. *De adertons förbund*, The Society of (the) Eighteen; *hundraelvas gevär*, the rifle of (recruit No.) 111.

Note. *Hundra* and *tusen*, invariable neuter nouns, may also have the forms *hundrade* and *tusende*. They are used mostly in the definite form. Ex. *Det första (andra) hundredet (tusendet)*, the first (second) hundred (thousand). *Miljon*, million; *biljon*, billion, are common nouns of the 3rd declension.

§145. An old form *tu* is used in place of *två* in some standing expressions. Ex. *De unga tu*, the newly married (engaged) pair; *på tu man hand*, in private; *klockan är tu*; it is two o'clock. This usage of *tu* is confined to certain localities.

For *två* and *tre*, *tvenne* and *trenne* are used in the literary language, but they do not enter into compounds. *Två* may be preceded by either *båda*, both, or *bägge* [beg'e:] both. Ex. *Båda två*, both; *bägge två*, the two (of them).

§146. In so far as compound cardinal numbers are concerned, note that when they are written out, the English coordinating *and* as in *seven hundred and seventy-seven*, has no counterpart in Swedish. Ex. *sjuhundra sjuttiosju* [ʃw: hun:dra sjutiosju:]. Tens and digits are always written together. Above

the tens and the digits usage varies. Ex. *fem hundra femtiofem* or *femhundra-femtiofem* [fem'hun'drafemtiofem:] five hundred and fifty-five. The Academy recommends the latter form.

The cardinals *hundra* and *tusen* are rarely preceded by *ett* [et:] except in contrast with *tvåhundra* [två: hun:dra] two hundred, etc. Ex. *Vad kostar varan?* [va(:d) kos'tar' va'ran'] - *Hundra (tusen) kronor.* [hun:dra (tm:sən) krə'no:r] What's the price of the merchandise (wares)? -- One hundred (one thousand) crowns. *Inte en på hundra (tusen) skulle ha gissat det* [in'te' en: po: hun:dra (tm:sən) skul'e' ha: jis'at' de(:t)]. Not one in a hundred (thousand) would have guessed it. But *ett tusen ett hundraen (-ett)* [et: tm:sən et: hun:draen(-et:)], one thousand one hundred and one.

N.B. When dates are written out in letters, e.g., *nittionhundratrettiosju* (1937) [nitonhundratrettiɔʃm:], *hundred* is never omitted as it may be and mostly is in English.

§147.

B. ORDINAL NUMBERS

1st	<i>första</i> (-e)	16th	<i>sextonde</i>	40th	<i>fyrtionde</i>
2nd	<i>andra</i> (-e)	17th	<i>sjuttonde</i>	50th	<i>femtionde</i>
3rd	<i>tredje</i>	18th	<i>adertonde</i>	60th	<i>sextionde</i>
4th	<i>fjärde</i>	19th	<i>nittonde</i>	70th	<i>sjuttonde</i>
5th	<i>femte</i>	20th	<i>tjugonde</i>	80th	<i>åttionde</i>
6th	<i>sjätte</i>	21st	<i>tjugoförsta</i>	90th	<i>nittionde</i>
7th	<i>sjunde</i>	22nd	<i>tjugoandra</i>	100th	<i>hundrade</i>
8th	<i>åttonde</i>	23rd	<i>tjugotredje</i>	101st	<i>hundraförsta</i> (-e)
9th	<i>nionde</i>	24th	<i>tjugofjärde</i>	120th	<i>hundratjugonde</i>
10th	<i>tionde</i>	25th	<i>tjugofemte</i>	200th	<i>två hundrade</i>
11th	<i>elfte</i>	26th	<i>tjugosjätte</i>	1,000th	<i>tusende</i>
12th	<i>tolfte</i>	27th	<i>tjugosjunde</i>	1,777th	<i>ett tusen sjuhundra sjuttiosjunde</i>
13th	<i>trettonde</i>	28th	<i>tjugoåttonde</i>		
14th	<i>fjortonde</i>	29th	<i>tjugonionde</i>	2,000th	<i>två tusende</i>
15th	<i>femtonde</i>	30th	<i>trettionde</i>		

NOTES ON THE ORDINAL NUMBERS

§148. The ordinal numbers are all adjectival in function. The ordinals *första*, first and *andra* (-e), second, have the inflection of the definite (weak) adjective, §83. If a noun follows the ordinal, it must have the definite (weak) form, even if the ordinal is not preceded by the prepositive article. Ex. *första* (*andra*) *gången*. The first (the second) time. See §92.

The older masculine ending -e of the ordinal must be used when forming part of a masc. title. Ex. *Gustaf I* [gus'tav' den: fæg'te:], Gustavus I. Otherwise *den förste(-a)*, *den andre(-a)* *gossen*, but only *den första* (*den andra*) *flickan*.

Whenever used substantively, the ordinals take the usual possessive ending -s. Ex. *Den förstes försök misslyckades*; *den andres utföll väl*. The attempt of the first one did not succeed; that of the second turned out well.

§149. The ordinals are, generally speaking, formed by adding to the cardinals the endings *-de*, *-nde* or *-te*. Note, however, the irregularities of *första*, *andra*, *tredje*, *fjärde*, *sjätte*, *åttonde* and *elfte*.

Note 1. In compound forms of ordinals only the last component part is inflected.
Ex. (*Den*) *trehundra tjugosjätte turen*, the three hundred and twenty-sixth trip.

Note 2. When giving year or serial number, the cardinal numbers (arabics) are used as a rule. Ex. *År 450 (-det fyra hundra femtioende året e. Kr.)*, (the year 450 A.D.); *Kap. 4, §6 (-fjärde kapitlet, sjätte paragrafen)*, Chapter 4, §6.

B. READING SELECTION

Stockholm (Delvis efter Carl Laurin)

Omkring år 1200 anlades ett fäste där Mälarens och Östersjöns vatten mötas. Det skulle skydda trakten mot sjörövare. Birger Jarl utvidgade fästningens murar. Så uppkom staden Stockholm vid mitten av 1200-talet. Innan århundradets slut räknade den 8,000 invånare. Men krig och smittsamma sjukdomar minskade befolkningen. Då Gustav Vasa befriat Sverige och intågade i Sveriges huvudstad på midsommarafton 1523 hade denna endast 2000 - 3000 invånare. Från mitten av 1800-talet växte staden snabbt. Detta berodde på landets blomstring och på att fabrikerna, som uppkommo i staden, drogo till sig arbetsfolk. År 1850 uppgick folkmängden till 100,000, vid århundradets slut till 300,000. I denna dag har Stockholm i dess helhet över 500,000 inbyggare och är Skandinaviska halvöns största samhälle.

Med stolthet och glädje säga Stockholmare: "Vi bo i en av världens vackraste städer, i vårt lands största och rikaste stad och i Sveriges andliga medelpunkt." Detta är ingen överdrift. Stockholm uppskattas nästan högre av den besökande främlingen än av inbyggarna själva.

I Stockholm bor konungen. Där samlas landets valda ombud för att i riksdagen bestämma om landets viktigaste ärenden. Där sammanträder högsta domstolen, och där bestämmer härens och flottans ledning om hur landet bäst skall skyddas. Dit föres huvudparten av Sveriges största och skönaste konstalster.

Stockholms skönhet beror till stor del på läget - den stora rikedomen på vatten. Mittpunkten är Stadsholmen, där Slottets "ädla fyrkant" reser sig. Konungaborgen är byggd av Nikodemus Tessin d.y., och fullbordades under 17-hundratalet.

Till "Staden inom broarna" höra utom Stadsholmen också Riddarholmen och Helgeandsholmen. I dessa stadsdelar finner man de äldsta byggnaderna. En fotvandring i Gamla staden är högst intressant. Gatorna äro krokiga, gränderna trånga och brinkarna branta. Själva gatunamnen ge besökaren en känsla av medeltid i det 20:e århundradet.

Från Södermalm har man ett hänsynslagande panorama över staden och i all synnerhet inloppet. Till höger nedanför ligga holmarna och där bortom Djurgårdens vita hus bland lövverket, Nordiska museet och det vittberömda Skansen.

Något till vänster ligger Nationalmuseum. Där bevaras mycket, som är nationen dyrt, kärt och oersättligt.

Förflytta vi oss än en gång ned till Kungaborgen, så märka vi Norrbro med Strömparterren. Här reser sig Milles' *Solsängaren*, ett minnesmärke över skalden Tegnér. Den stolta byggnaden mitt emot är Riksdagshuset. Ett stenkast härifrån ligger Sveriges "Westminster Abbey". Vi träda in ochstå inför minnena från Sveriges storhetstid, och dess störste konung, Gustav II Adolf. Här vilar han bland rivna segerfanor.

"I blod hans här till segerherrar döptes,
Hur outsägligt dyrt den dagen köptes *
Skall Svea minnas än i tidens höst."

Vid Gustav Adolfs torg ligger Operahuset och mitt emot Arvfurstarnas palats. Söder om Norrbro är slottet. I Kungsträdgården står den tolfta Karl i brons och pekar i Österled. Inte långt därifrån sorlar Molins fontän. Ett stenkast och vi äro i Berzelii park, uppkallad efter den frejdade kemisten. Strax intill reser sig Dramatiska teatern med Sveriges främsta talscen. Fortsätta vi uppåt Birger-Jarlsgatan så kommer vi snart till Humlegården. Här vämlar det av barn som leka kring "blomsterkonungens" staty. Karl von Linné - vem känner icke namnet på den som vetenskapligt ordnade världens flora? Och nära bredvid sitter kemisten Scheele, i brons, och grubblar över något problem. Här ligger också Kungliga biblioteket. Det hyser en halv miljon böcker och bland dem mången dyrgrip, såsom t. ex. Västgötalagen, Sveriges äldsta handskrift.

Men om vi ämna se mera i den ljusa skymningen, så måste vi skynda på. Bil här! Se så! Kör enligt den här marschrutan! Var så god! Nu skymta bilderna som på biografen. Vi ha sett Värtahamnen och den moderna stadsdelen vid Ladugårdsgärdet, Stockholms Stadion, Tekniska högskolan, Stadsbiblioteket, Handelshögskolan, Stockholms högskola, Sabbatsbergs sjukhus, Karlbergs slott, och kommit tillbaka för att kasta ett öga på det imponerande Konserthuset. Därifrån går det rakaste vägen över Vasabron till Södra Mälarstrand. Här stå vi inför en stor syn - den största kanske: Stadshuset, en av världens schönaste byggnader.

Totalintrycket av vår blixtturné är, att Stockholm förtjänar namnet "Nordens Venedig" ty "Mälardrottningen" är enastående fager i den ljusa sommarnatten såväl som i höstens mörker.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

<i>delvis</i> , partly	<i>mot</i> , against	<i>invånare</i> e, -en; -, inhabitant
<i>anlägga</i> , -lade, -lagt, built	<i>sjörövar</i> e,-(e)n; -, pirate	<i>krig</i> , -et; -, war
<i>fäste</i> , -t; -n, fort	<i>utvidga</i> I, extend	<i>smittosam</i> , -t; -ma, contagious
<i>mötas</i> IIb (dep.), meet,	<i>fästning</i> , -en; -ar, fortress	<i>sjukdom</i> , -en; -ar, disease
come together	<i>mur</i> , -en; -ar, wall	<i>minsa</i> I, reduce
<i>skola</i> , shall, skulle; <i>skolat</i>	<i>uppkomma</i> , -kom; -kommit,	<i>befria</i> I, liberate, free
shall, will (imperf.)	arise, come into existence	<i>intåga</i> I, march into
<i>skulle</i> , was to	<i>vid mitten av</i> , in the middle of	~, make one's entry into
<i>skydda</i> , protect, defend	<i>århundrade</i> , -t; -n, century	<i>huvudstad</i> , -en; -städer, capital
<i>trakt</i> , -en; -er, region,	<i>slut</i> , -et; -, end	<i>midsommarafton</i> , -en; -aftnar,
part of the country	<i>räkna</i> I, count	Midsummer Eve

* November 6, 1632

snabb, -t; -a, quick, rapid	ärande, -t; -n, matter, affair	fotvandring, -en; -ar,
bero III, depend	sammanträda II, meet, convene	walk, stroll
~ på, be due to	hög, -re; -st, high	Gamla staden, The Old City
blomstring, -en; -ar,	domstol, -en; -ar,	intressant, -; -a, interesting
prosperity	court (of justice)	högst, ~, most ~
och på att, and to the	här, -en; -ar, army	gat a, -an; -or, street
fact that	flott a, -an; -or, navy	krokig, -t; -a, crooked
fabrik, -en; -er, factory	ledning, -en; -ar, man-	gränd, -en; -er, alley
uppkomma (see komma).	agement (administration)	trång, -t; -a, narrow
spring up	bestämma IIa, determine	brink, -en; -ar, hill
draga, drog, dragit, draw	~ om hur, ~ how	brant, -; -a, steep
~ till sig, attract	skydda I, protect	själva, even, the very
arbetsfolk, -et; -,	föra IIa, bring	gatunamn, -et; -, street name
working people	huvudpart, -en; -er,	giva, ge, gav, gävo;
folkängd, -en; -er,	the major part	givit, give
population	skön, -are; -ast, beautiful	besökar e, -en; -, visitor
i denna dag, today	konstalst er, -ret; -	känsl a, -an; -or, feeling
i dess helhet, in its entirety	work of art	medeltiden, the Middle Ages
skandinavisk, -t; -a,	skönhet, -en; -er, beauty	Södermalm, proper name
Scandinavian	till stor del, to a	hänförande, enchanting
halvö, -n; -ar, peninsula	great extent	panoram a, -at; -or, panorama
samhälle, -t; -n,	rikedom, -en; -ar, abundance	~ över, ~ of
community (city)	mittpunkt, -en; -er,	i all synnerhet, above
stolthet, -en, pride	central point, center	all, particularly
glädje, -n, joy	Stadsholmen, oldest part	inlopp, -et; -, entrance
vack er, -rare; -rast,	of Stockholm	mouth of harbor
beautiful	ädel, -t; -ädra, noble	höger, right (direction)
vår, -t; -a, our	fyrkant, -en; -er, square	till ~, to the ~
rik, -are; -ast, rich, wealthy	resa(sig) IIb, rise, tower	holme, -en; -ar, island
andlig, -t; -a, spiritual,	k(on)ungaborg, -en; -ar,	där bortom, beyond that
intellectual	royal castle	Djurgården, "The deer park"
medelpunkt, -en; -er, center	bygga IIa, build	lövverk, -et; -, foliage
denna, detta; dessa, this	är byggd, was built	nordisk, -t; -a, Nordic,
överdrift, -en; -er,	d.y.(den yngre), the younger	northern
exaggeration	fullborda I, complete	muse um, -et; -er, museum
uppskatta I, appreciate, rate	17-hundratalet, the	vittberömd, -t; -da, far-famed
nästan, almost	18th century	Skansen, "The Fort", famous
besökande, visiting	inom, between, within	open air museum and park
främling, -en; -ar,	bro, -n; -ar, bridge	vänster, left
stranger, foreigner	utom, besides	bevara I, preserve
själv, -t; -a, himself, etc.	Riddarholmen, "Isle of	nation, -en; -er, nation
konung, -en; -ar, king	Knights"	(here: to the nation)
samlas I (dep.), gather	Helgeandsholmen, "Isle	dyr, -t; -a, dear, costly
val d, -t; -da, elected	of the Holy Ghost"	kär, -t; -a, beloved
ombud, -et; -, representative	stadsdel, -en; -ar,	oersättlig, -t; -a,
för att, in order to	section of the city	invaluable, irreplaceable
riksdag, -en; -ar, parliament	finna, fann, funno;	förflytta (sig) I, shift
bestämma IIa, decide	funnit, find	about, move
~ om, ~ upon	gammal, äldre, äldst, old	än en gång, once again
viktig, -are; -ast, important	byggnad, -en; -er, building	ned, down

märka IIb, notice	fontän, -en; -er, fountain	ämma I, intend, plan
Solsångaren, "The Sun singer"	park, -en; -er, park	ljus, -t; -a, bright
minnesmärke, -t; -n, memorial	uppkalla d, -t; -de, named	skymning, -en; -ar, dusk,
~ över, ~ to	frejda d, -t; -de, famous	twilight
stolt, -; -a, proud	kemist, -en; -er, chemist	skynda (på) I, hurry up
mitt emot, right opposite	strax invid, close by	bil, -en; -ar, automobile
Riksdagshuset, The House	dramatisk, -t; -a,	~här, taxi!
of Parliament	dramatic "legitimate"	se så, now, there now
stenkast, -et; -en,	teater, -n; teatrar, theatre	köra IIa, drive
stone's throw	Dramatiska teatern, "The	enligt, according to
kärfirån, from here	Dramatic Theatre"	marschrut a, -an; -or,
träda (in) IIa, enter	främst, -; -a, foremost	itinerary
stå, stod, stått, stand	talscen, -en; -er,	var så god, please
~ inför, ~ before,	dramatic stage	skynta I, flash by
in front of	fortsätta, -satte; -satt,	biograf, -en; -er, motion
minne, -t; -n memory	continue	picture theatre
~ från, ~ from	uppåt, up toward	på ~, at the ~
storhetstid, -en; -er,	Birger-Jarlsgatan,	Värtahamnen, "The Värtä
period of greatness	Birger-Jarl Street	Harbor"
konung, -en; -ar, king	snart, soon	Ladugårdsgården, proper name
vila I, rest	Humlegården, "The Hop Garden"	Stadion, The Stadium
bland, among	vimla IIa, swarm	Tekniska högskolan,
riven, -et; -na torn,	barn, -et; -, child	Institute of Technology
tattered	leka IIb, play	Stadsbiblioteket, City Library
segerfan a, -an; -or,	kring, around	Handelshögskolan, School
standard of victory	blomsterkonung, -en; -ar,	of Business Administration
blod, -et; -, blood	"Flower King"	Stockholms högskola.
segerherr e, -en; -ar,	staty, -n; -er, statue	University of Stockholm
conqueror, lord of victory	namn, -et; -, name	sjukhus, -et; -, hospital
döpa IIb, baptize	vetenskaplig, -t; -a,	kasta I, throw
outsäglig, -t; inexpressible	scientific	~ ett öga på, to glance at
köpa IIb, buy	ordna I, classify	imponerande, imposing
Svea, Sweden (poetic)	flor a, -an; -or, flora	Konserthuset, The Concert Hall
minnas (dep.) IIa, remember	nära bredvid, close by	Vasabron, The Vasa Bridge
än (ännu), yet (even in)	sitta, satt, sutto;	Mälarstrand, proper name
tid, -en; -er, time	suttit, sit, be seated	syn, -en; -er, spectacle
höst, -en; -ar, autumn, fall	grubbla I, ponder, muse	Stadshuset, City Hall
torg, -et; -, square,	problem, -et; -, problem	totalintryck, -et; -,
(market-place)	kunglig, -t; -a, royal	general impression
Operahuset, The Opera House	bibliotek, -et; -er, library	blixtturné, -n; -er, rapid tour
Arvfurstarnas palats,	hysa IIb, contain	förtjäna I, deserve
Royal Princes' Palace	halv a, -an; -or, half	Nordens Venedig, "Venice
Kungsträdgården, Royal Gardens	mång en, -t; -a, many a	of the North"
söder om, south of	dyrgrip, -en; -ar, treasure	Mälardrottningen, "The
Norrbro, "North Bridge"	t.ex. (till exempel),	Queen of the Mälars"
tolfte, twelfth	e.g., (for example)	enastående, unique
den~Karl, Charles XII	Västgötalagen, law of	fag er, -ert; -ra, fair
brons, -en; -er, bronze	Västergötland	sommarnatt, -en; -nätter,
peka I, point	handskrift, -en; -er,	summer night
~ ::, ~ toward	manuscript	såväl som, as well as
sorla I, murmur	om, if	mörker, -ret, darkness

D. QUESTIONS

§150. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. När och var anlades Stockholm?
2. Vad gjorde Birger Jarl?
3. Vad minskade befolkningen?
4. Hur många invånare hade Stockholm vid Gustav Vasas intåg?
5. Varför växte staden snabbt från mitten av 1800-talet?
6. Hur många invandrare har Stockholm nu?
7. Vad säga Stockholmare om sin stad?
8. Vilka uppskatta Stockholm nästan högre?
9. Vem bor i Stockholm?
10. Varför är Stockholm en sådan viktig stad för Sverige?
11. Varpå beror Stockholms skönhet?
12. Vad reser sig på Stadsholmen?
13. När fullbordades Slottet?
14. Vad hör till staden inom broarna?
15. Beskriv gatorna i Gamla staden?
16. Vad kan man se från Södermalm?
17. Vad reser sig på Strömparterren?
18. Varför besöka vi Sveriges "Westminster Abbey"?
19. Var ligger Operahuset?
20. vem var Berzelius?
21. vem var Karl von Linné?
22. Vad och var är Sveriges äldsta handskrift?
23. Vad säger man om Stadshuset?
24. Hurudant är totalintrycket av vår blixturné?
25. När är "Mälardrottningen" fagrast?

E. EXERCISES

I

§151. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. krig och smittsam- sjukdom- (ind. pl.) --(past indic. of minska) befolkning- (def. sing.) --(but) från mitten av 1800-tal- --(past ind. of växa) stad- snabbt.
2. I blod --(his) här till segerherr- (ind. pl.) --(past ind. pass. of döpa) och outsäglig- dyrt den dag- --(past ind. pass. of köpa).
3. --(I hope) han kan skydda trakt- (def. sing.) mot sjörövar- (def. pl.).
4. --(we) bo i --(one) av världen- vackrast- städer, --(our) land- störst- och rikast- stad.
5. Själv- gatunamn- (def. pl.) ge --(the) besökande främling- (def. sing.) --(a) känsla av medeltid i --(the) --(20th) århundradet.
6. Vi måste skynda --(ref. pron.) om vi ämna se mera i --(the) ljus-skymning- (def. sing.).
7. Fabrik- (def. pl.) drogo till --(ref. pron.) arbetsfolk- (def. sing.).
8. Vi träda in och stå inför minnen- (def. pl.) från Sverige- storhetstid, --(its) dåd och --(its) störst- konung.
9. --(this) vit- hus är --(his) inte --(ours).
10. Då Gustav Vasa --(past ind. of intåga) i Sverige- huvudstad på midsommarafton 1523 hade --(it) endast 2000 - 3000 invånare.

II

§152. Give the principal parts and present indicative in Swedish of the following verbs: *protect, rise, count, grow, belong*.

F. COMPOSITION

§153. Translate into Swedish:

1. Although wars and contagious diseases reduced the population during the Middle Ages, the city of Stockholm grew rapidly after 1850.
2. That day in Sweden's history was bought at too high a price.
3. I hope that they may liberate the city.
4. He lives in our house at Djurgården.
5. The quaintness of the Medieval Ages is still with us in the 20th century.
6. We hurried so that we could see more of the city in the twilight.
7. The new factories attracted a large number of working people.
8. They stopped reverently before the memories of Sweden's past, its achievements and its greatest king.
9. This is his child, not theirs.
10. The population was only 5,637 in 1923, but in 1937 it had grown much larger.

LESSON X

A. GRAMMAR

Conjugation of the Verb (cont.). 2nd Conjugation: Indicative and Subjunctive; Active and Passive. Personal Pronouns. Possessive, Reflexive and Reciprocal Pronouns. Demonstrative and Determinative Pronouns.

§154. The verbs belonging to this conjugation may be divided into two classes: IIa and IIb.

1. Verbs, the stem of which contains a front palatal (soft) vowel and ends in a voiced consonant. Ex. böja IIa, böj-de, böj-d, to bend.

2. Verbs, the stem of which contains a front palatal (soft) vowel (e, i, y, å, ö) and ends in an unvoiced consonant (k, p, s, t). Ex. köpa IIb, köp-te, köp-t, to buy.

Note 1. Verbs, the stem of which ends in -r, add no personal ending (-er) in the singular. Ex. Jag begär (not begärer). I request, and in the same manner: jag hör, hear, kör, drive, stör, disturb, etc. In poetry and lofty style the er-forms occur: hörer, lärer, styrer, etc. Here belongs also spar, I save (imperf. spärde). Gala, mala tål, always have the forms: gal, mal, tål.

Note 2. In verbs, the stem of which ends in -nd or -t preceded by another consonant, the tense-character coalesces with the consonant of the stem, e.g. infin. sända, to send; past ind. sände (for sänd-de); past part. sänd (for sänd + d); infin. gifta (sig), to marry; past gifte (sig) (for gift-te), etc.

Note 3. Verbs, the stem of which ends in mm or nn, elide one m or n before adding the verbal ending. Ex. drömma, to dream, dröm-de, drömt; minnas, to remember, mindes, mints.

IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE 2nd CONJUGATION

§155. Certain verbs of the 2nd conjugation (class IIa) with *j* in the infinitive, the present indicative and some imperative forms, drop this *j* in the past tense, the supine and the past participle. The consonant *j* has caused mutation of the root vowel in the infinitive, present indicative and imperative. The original vowel is restored in the past indicative, the supine and the past participle. In certain cases there are double forms.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Imperat.</i>	<i>Past Ind.</i>	<i>Supine</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
<i>dvälgas</i> , to dwell	<i>dvälg(e)s</i>		<i>dvaldes</i>	<i>dvalts</i>	
<i>kvälja</i> , to nauseate	<i>kväljer</i>		<i>kväljde</i>	<i>kväljt</i>	
<i>sälja</i> , to sell	<i>säljer</i>	<i>sälj</i>	<i>sålde</i>	<i>sält</i>	<i>såld</i>
<i>välja</i> , to choose	<i>väljer</i>	<i>välj</i>	<i>valde</i>	<i>valt</i>	<i>vald</i>

N.B. For other verbs of this type and class, see *List of strong and Irregular verbs*, §388.

Note. For a complete survey of the active and passive, all moods and tenses of the model verbs of the 2nd conjugation, see §§ 368, ff.

PRONOUNS

§156. The Swedish language has the following kinds of pronouns: *personal*, *possessive*, *demonstrative (determinative)*, *relative*, *interrogative* and *indefinite*.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

§157. The personal pronouns refer: a) either to the speaker (writer), the first person; b) to the person spoken to, the second person; or c) to the person or thing spoken of, the third person. All the personal pronouns are substantives. They are declined as follows:

<u>1st Person</u>	<u>2nd Person</u>	<u>3rd Person</u>			<u>Reflexive</u>
<i>I, etc.</i>	<i>Thou, etc.</i>	<i>He, etc.</i>	<i>She, etc.</i>	<i>It, etc.</i>	<i>It, etc.</i>
N. <i>jag</i> [ja:(g)]	<i>du</i> [d̥u:]	<i>ni</i> [ni:]	<i>han</i> [han:]	<i>hon</i> [hən:]	<i>den</i> [dən:] <i>det</i> [d̥s:(t)]
G.			<i>hans</i> [han:s]	<i>hennes</i> [hen'əs']	<i>dess</i> [dəs:] <i>dess</i> [d̥s:s:]
D. <i>mig</i> [m̥s:j:]	<i>dig</i> [d̥e:j:]	<i>er</i> [e:r]	<i>honom</i> [hən'om']	<i>henne</i> [hen'ə']	<i>den</i> [dən:] <i>det</i> [d̥s:(t)] <i>sig</i> [s̥e:j:]
A. <i>mig</i> [m̥s:j:]	<i>dig</i> [d̥e:j:]	<i>er</i> [e:r]	<i>honom</i> [hən'om']	<i>henne</i> [hen'ə']	<i>den</i> [dən:] <i>det</i> [d̥s:(t)] <i>sig</i> [s̥e:j:]
	<i>we, etc.</i>	<i>ye</i>	<i>you</i>		<i>they</i>
N. <i>vi</i> [vi:]	<i>I</i> [i:]	<i>ni</i> [ni:]		<i>de</i> [de:]	
G.				<i>deras</i> [de'ras']	
D. <i>oss</i> [ɔs:]	<i>eder</i> [e:dər]	<i>(er)</i> [e:r]		<i>dem</i> [dəm:]	<i>sig</i> [s̥e:j:]
A. <i>oss</i> [ɔs:]	<i>eder</i> [e:dər]	<i>(er)</i> [e:r]		<i>dem</i> [dəm:]	<i>sig</i> [s̥e:j:]

NOTES ON THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

§158. It should be noted that the personal pronouns of the 1st and 2nd person, singular and plural, lack (pronominal) genitive forms. These are supplied by the possessive pronouns, § 168.

Note. The 2nd person plural constitutes an exception to the above statement since the form *Eders (Ers)* occurs in such expressions as *Eders (Ers) Majestät*, Your Majesty; *Eders (Ers) Kungliga Höghet*, Your Royal Highness, etc.

§159. The pronominal genitives of the 3rd person, singular and plural (*hans, hennes, dess; deras*), are invariable. Ex. *hans (hennes, deras) bok (böcker)*, etc., his (her, their) book (books), etc.

Note. The pronouns *han*, *hon* and *de* are the only words in the Swedish language that have three distinct case forms.

§160. The second person singular pronoun *du* [dʉ:] is used, among the educated, to members of the family; in most cases, however, not by children to their parents. Furthermore, it is current among friends and comrades who have agreed "not to stand on ceremony any longer" (*att lägga bort titlarna*). *Du* is also used by grown-ups to address children (up to the age of puberty, roughly speaking), and to a limited extent by employers and husbandmen to their help and servants.

§161. The second person plural pronoun *I, ye*, which corresponds to the familiar singular *du* [dʉ:] thou, is used principally in the elevated style (Bible, pulpit, poetry) and occasionally by the older generation of the peasantry. The pronoun *ni* has replaced *I* in the ordinary use of the language, spoken and (often) written. The singular form of the verb is generally used, regardless of whether a single person is addressed, or several.

The pronoun *ni* is not yet generally accepted as a form of address like German *Sie*, French *vous* and English *you*. There is no objection to its use when addressing several persons, but when a single individual is concerned the speaker avoids it, especially when speaking to someone more advanced in years or of higher rank or station than himself. This circumstance has led to the use of titles in the definite form together with the person's name. Ex. *"Generaldirektör Hultenkrantz, får jag be generaldirektören om skrivelsen, som lag på generaldirektörens bord och som generaldirektören lovade signera innan generaldirektören for hem?"* "(Mr.) Director general Hultenkrantz, may I ask the Director general for the letter which lay on the Director general's table and which the Director general promised to sign before the Director general went home?"

In a recent *ni*-reform campaign, Prince Wilhelm advocated the use of *ni*. He suggested that the above awkward form of address be changed so as to read: *"Generaldirektör Hultenkrantz, får jag be er om skrivelsen, som lag på ert bord och som ni lovade signera [signe:ra] innan ni for hem?"* "(Mr.) Director general Hultenkrantz, may I ask you for the letter which lay on your table and which you promised to sign before going home?" *Ni* used in connection with the title and name of the person addressed is recommended as an acceptable form of address, e.g., *"Herr Svensson, har ni..."*, "Mr. Svensson, have you..."; *"Fröken Andersson, är ni..."*, "Miss Andersson, are you...", is just as polite and

correct as "Prins Wilhelm, kan ni...", "Prince William, can you...", "Grevinnan Gripenhjelm, önskar ni...", "Countess Gripenhjelm, do you wish...", or ought at least to be so.

§162. When addressing an unknown person, *min herre*, Sir, is used. *Herrn* is less polite. A young lady is addressed *fröken*, Madam, or *damen*, the lady. Several men are addressed *herrarna*, gentlemen; a company of ladies *damer*, the ladies. *Han*, 3rd sing., is a common substitute for *ni*. Ex. *Jasd, man har inte varit längre här i landet!* Is that so, you haven't been longer in this country!

§163. The forms *honom*, *den* and *henne* are often replaced in colloquial speech by the enclitic forms -en, -n for *honom*; -na for *henne*; -et, -t for *det* [dɛ:t]. Ex. *Tag fatt på'n.* - *Tag fatt på honom!* Catch him! *Jag sag 'na i går.* - *Jag såg henne i går.* I saw her yesterday. *Vill ni inte ha't?* - *Vill ni inte ha det?* Don't you want it? *Giv hit 'et!* - *Giv hit det!* Hand it to me!

§164. The pronoun *den* refers to nouns of common gender. Ex. *Var är käppen?* Where is the cane? - *Den står i vrän.* It stands (is) in the corner. *Det* refers to a noun of neut. gender. *Och hundkopplet?* And the leash? - *Det ligger på trappan.* It is lying on the steps.

§165. *Själv*, -t; -a, English *self*, is often used as an intensifier with the personal pronoun. Ex. *Jag själv*, I myself; *de själva*, they themselves. *Själv* (*självt*, neut. *själva*) may be added to a substantive, and may be used with absolute superlative force. Ex. *Tillståndet självt*, the condition itself. *Självaste kungen*, even the king (the very king himself).

THE REFLEXIVE PRONOUN

§166. The reflexive pronoun *sig*, cf. French *se* and German *sich*, occurs in the dative and accusative singular and plural. It refers back to the subject of the clause in which it stands. Ex. *Han slog sig*, he struck (hurt) himself; *hon tvättar sig*, she washes herself.

If the object is another person than the subject, the ordinary object forms (*honom*, *henne*, *den*, *det*, *dem*) are used. Ex. *Han slog honom* (etc.), he beat (hurt) him (her, it, them). *Hon tvättade honom* (*gossen*), she washed him (the boy).

In some instances either *sig* or one of the ordinary objective pronominal forms may be used. Ex. *Fadern bad dottern stödja sig* (or *honom*). The father asked the daughter to support him (the father). Such a sentence may, of course, be written: *Fadern bad dottern att hon skulle stödja honom*.

THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

§167. *Varandra*, each other, one another, is used to express the reciprocal idea. The pronoun is used either with reference to two, or more than two. The possessive case (plural) ends in -s. Ex. *Vi (de) hjälpa varandra*. We (they) help each other. *De buro varandras bördor*. They carried the burdens of one another.

With prepositions: *med varandra*, with each other; *hos varandra*, at the home of one another; *mot varandra*, against each other, etc.

Note. Some deponent verbs are used reciprocally. *Vi ses i morgon*. I'll see you tomorrow. *Hästarna bitas*. The horses are biting each other. *De klappas och kyssas*. They caress and kiss each other.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

§168. ONE POSSESSOR

OBJECT POSSESSED

		Singular		Plural All genders
		Common	Neuter	
1st Pers.	jag I [ja:(g)]	{ min [min:] my (mine)	mitt [mit:] my (mine)	mina [mi'na'] my (mine)
2nd Pers.	du thou [d̥u:]	{ din [din:] thy (thine)	ditt [dit:] thy (thine)	dina [di'na'] thy (thine)
	ni [ni:]	er (eder) [e:r (e:dər)]	ert (edert) [e:t (e:də:t)]	era (edra) [e'ra' (e:dra)]
	you	your(s)	your(s)	your(s)
	han he [han:]	{ sin [sin:] his	sitt [sit:] his	sina [si'na'] his
3rd Pers.	hon she det [hən:]	{ sin [sin:] her(s)	sitt [sit:] her(s)	sina [si'na'] her(s)
	it [də:(t)]	sin [sin:] its	sitt [sit:] its	sina [si'na'] its

MORE THAN ONE POSSESSOR

OBJECT POSSESSED

1st Pers.	v <i>i</i> we [vi:]	{	v&r [vo:r] our(s)	v&rt [vot:] our(s)	våra [vo'ra'] our(s)
2nd Pers.	I ye ni [i:] [ni:]	{	er (eder) [e:r (e:dər)] your(s)	ert (edert) [e:t (e:də:t)] your(s)	era (edra) [e'ra' (e:dra)] your(s)
3rd Pers.	de* they [de: they]	{	sin [sin:] their(s)	sin [sin:] their(s)	sina [si'na'] their(s)

* Coll. form, nom., dat. and acc. dom [dom:]

Note. The difference between the use of the pronouns *hans*, *hennes*, *dess*, *deras* on the one hand and *sin*, *sitt*, *sina* on the other, must be clearly understood. The principal rule is: *sin*, etc. is used when it refers to the subject of the sentence; in other cases use *hans*, *hennes*, *dess*, *deras*.

a) Examples

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Fadern skrev ett brev till sin son. | 1. Sonen fick hans brev. |
| The father wrote a letter to his son. | The son received his letter. |
| 2. Han har sålt sin häst. | 2. Min bror köpte hans häst. |
| He has sold his horse. | My brother bought his horse. |
| 3. Hon hade sin dotter med sig. | 3. Vi sågo henne och hennes dotter. |
| She had her daughter with her. | We saw her and her daughter. |
| 4. Barnen besökte sina skolkamrater i deras hem på landet. | 4. Deras skolkamrater bo i sitt hem på landet. |
| The children visited their schoolmates in their home in the country. | Their schoolmates live in their (own) home in the country. |

b) Examples

Note. It is important to note that *sin*, etc., cannot be used to qualify the subject.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

§169. Note the following forms and uses of the demonstrative pronouns:

Singular		Plural
Common gender	Neuter	All genders
den, that	det, that	de, those
denna(-e), this	detta, this	dessa, these
den där, that	det där, that	de där, those
den här, this	det här, this	de här, these
1. <i>Denne</i> , instead of <i>denna</i> , is often used in the masculine.		
2. <i>Den här</i> and <i>den där</i> are generally used in conversation. <i>Denne (-a)</i> , <i>denna</i> , <i>dessa</i> are used more generally in the written language. Note also that <i>denna (-e)</i> , etc., is followed by an indefinite noun while one qualified by <i>den där</i> etc., is definite:		
<i>denna bok</i>	<i>detta band</i>	<i>dessa saker</i>
this book	this ribbon	these things
<i>den här boken</i>	<i>det här bandet</i>	<i>de här sakerna</i>
<i>den där</i>	<i>det där</i>	<i>de där</i>
3. <i>Den</i> , <i>det</i> , <i>de</i> , when used substantively, are inflected like the personal pronoun <i>den</i> , <i>det</i> , <i>de</i> . <i>Denna (-e)</i> , <i>detta</i> , <i>dessa</i> , when used substantively, take -s in the genitive.		

§170. *Densamma(-e)* and *Samma(-e)*.

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Common gender</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>All genders</i>	
<i>densamma(-e)</i>	<i>the same</i>	<i>detsamma</i>	<i>the same</i>
<i>samma(-e)</i>		<i>samma</i>	<i>samma</i>

Densamma(-e), etc., is used substantively. It takes an -s in the genitive; *samma(-e)* is used as an adjective. Ex. *Han är alltid densamma*. He is always the same.

After *samma* the adjective takes the definite form, but the noun takes the indefinite form: *samma gamla hatt*, the same old hat. No article is used before *samma* in expressions like: *i samma ögonblick*, at the same moment, *på samma gång*, at the same time.

§171. *Sådan* and *Dylik*.

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Common gender</i>	<i>Neuter gender</i>	<i>All genders</i>	
(en) <i>sådan</i> such	(ett) <i>sådant</i> such	<i>sådana</i>	such
(en) <i>dylik</i>	(ett) <i>dylikt</i>	<i>dylika</i>	

Sådan and *dylik* are used substantively and adjectively. Ex. *En sådan häst kostar pengar*. Such a horse costs money. *Jag skulle gärna vilja ha en sådan*. I should like very much to have such a one. *Dylika metoder är icke att rekommendera*. Such methods are not to be recommended. *Något dylikt har jag aldrig hört*. I have never heard anything like it.

DETERMINATIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

§172. The demonstrative pronouns *den*, *det*, *de* are called determinatives when they function as antecedent of a restrictive clause or equivalent element. They are followed by the noun in the indefinite form. Ex. *Jag har köpt de pennor, som ni rekommenderade*. I have bought the pens you recommended. *Den dsikten, att jorden är platt, lever ännu här och där*. The notion that the earth is flat still exists here and there. *Rätta er efter dens råd, som vill ert bästa*. Follow the advice of him who wishes you well.

B. READING SELECTION

På Stadion *

Det är en solig söndagseftermiddag på Stockholms stadion. Dagen till ära vaja de tre nordiska ländernas färger från idrottsborgens torn. I dag tävla Danmark, Norge och Sverige om segerpalmen. Stadion är fyllt till sista plats. Musiken spelar upp. Adertontusen par hänsa idrottsmännen, som nu göra den vanliga runden kring banan.

Defileringen är förbi, och inom några ögonblick företer den stora planen en livlig tavla av idrottsmän och tävlingsledare, vilka var och en skynda till sitt. Från läktarna väller sorlet som en flodvåg ner över planen, och hastighetslöparna, vilka nu göra sig i ordning för 100-metersloppet, måste ha nerverna i ordning. Mannen, som skall starta de sex löparna, förrättar uppropet, nere vid målet spännes det vita, sköra ullgarnet mellan målstolarna, tidtagare och andra funktionärer äro alla på sina platser. En visselpipa ljuder. Det betyder, att allt är klart för matchens första tävling, och som på ett trollslag blir allt tyst. Löparna huka sig ned i startgroparna, och den starka spänningen löses äntligen genom startskottet. Sida vid sida kämpa Skandinaviens snabbaste löpare om äran att bli den främste, åskådarna ryckas med av den jämna striden och ropa uppmuntrande till sina favoriter. Några ögonblick senare har ullträden fångats av ett bröst. "Vem vann", fråga sig alla, "skillnaden mellan dem var ju så liten?" Svaret på frågan ges så gott som genast, då på den norra Stadionarkadens segerstång den svenska flaggan raskt hissas i vädret. Stormande jubel! Och modern på läktaren torkar en glädjetår ur ögonvrån och mumlar för sig själv: "Min käre, duktige gosse!" Det var Karl-Erik, som vann.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

på Stadion, in the stadium	idrottsborg, -en; -ar,	adertontusen, 18,000
läsebok, -en; läseböcker, reader	athletic "citadel" torn, -et; -, tower	par, -et; -, pair (of)
annan, annat, andra, second	tävla I, compete	hand, -en; -händer, hand
folkskola, -an; -or, public school	— om, — for	hälsa I, greet
avdelning, -en; -ar, section	Danmark, Denmark	idrottsmän, -manen; -män, athlete
förlag, -et; -, Publishing company	segerpalm, -en; -er, palm (of victory)	vanlig, -t; -a, usual, customary
söndagseftermiddag, -en; -ar, Sunday afternoon	fyllt, -t; -da, filled	rund, -en; -er, round, circle
dagen till ära, in honor of the occasion	plats, -en; -er, place	banan, -an; -or, track
vaja I, flutter	till sista — to the last —	defilering, -en; -ar, parade
färg, -en; -er, color	musik, -en, music	förbi, past, over
	spela I, strike up	ögonblick, -et; -, moment
	— upp, — up	förete III, exhibit, present
* Läsebok för folkskolan, andra avdelningen, del II. Stockholm, Norstedt och Söners förlag. 1935.	plan, -en; -er, field	

<i>livlig</i> , -t; -a, lively	<i>funktionär</i> , -en; -er,	<i>sen</i> , -are; -ast, late
<i>tavl a</i> , -an; -or, picture	<i>functionary</i> , official	<i>ulltråd</i> , -en; -ar, woolen thread
<i>tävlingsledare</i> , -en; -, athletic director, (sports-official)	<i>visselpip a</i> , -an; -or, whistle	<i>fånga</i> I, catch
<i>vilka</i> (see <i>vilken</i>), who	<i>ljuda</i> , <i>ljöd</i> , <i>ljudit</i> ,	<i>bröst</i> , -et; -, chest
<i>var och en</i> , everyone	blow, (lit. to sound)	<i>vinna</i> , <i>vann</i> , <i>vunno</i> ;
<i>sitt</i> , his own (place, duties, etc.)	<i>betyda</i> II, mean, signify	<i>vunnit</i> , win
<i>läktar e</i> , -(e)n; -, stand	<i>klar</i> , -t; -a, clear, ready	<i>fråga</i> (sig) I, ask oneself
<i>välla</i> IIa, swell up, surge forth	<i>match</i> , -en; -er, match	<i>skillnad</i> , -en; -er, difference
<i>flodvåg</i> , -en; -er, tidal wave	<i>tävling</i> , -en; -ar, contest	<i>ju</i> , really, you know
<i>ner</i> (see <i>ned</i>), down	<i>på</i> , tr. by	<i>svar</i> , -et; -, answer
<i>hastighetslöpar e</i> , -(e)n; -, sprinter, runner	<i>trollslag</i> , -et; -, stroke of magic	~ på, ~ to
<i>ordning</i> , -en; -ar, order, arrangement	<i>huka</i> I, crouch, squat	så gott som, almost, (lit. as good as)
<i>göra sig i</i> ~, get ready	~sig ned, get down	<i>genast</i> , immediately
100-metersloppet, the 100-meter dash	<i>startgröp</i> , -en; -ar, toe hole	<i>Stadionarkad</i> , -en; -er, The Arcade of the Stadium
<i>nerv</i> , -en; -er, nerve	<i>stark</i> , -t; -a, strong	<i>segerstång</i> , -en; stänger, victory pole
i ordning, in shape	<i>spänning</i> , -en; -ar, tension, suspense	<i>flagg a</i> , -an; -or, flag
<i>man</i> , -nen; -män,	<i>lösa</i> IIb, relieve	<i>raskt</i> , speedily
<i>starta</i> I, start	<i>äntligen</i> , finally	<i>hissa</i> I, hoist
<i>löpar e</i> , -(e)n; -, runner	<i>genom</i> , through, by	<i>väder</i> . <i>väret</i> ; -, weather (here: air)
<i>förrätta</i> I, perform	<i>startskott</i> , -et; -, starting shot, pistol	<i>hissa i</i> ~, hoist in the air
~ uppropet, call the roll	<i>sid a</i> , -an; -or, side	<i>stormande</i> , thunderous
<i>nere vid</i> , down by	<i>kämpa</i> I, struggle	<i>jubel</i> , jublet, cheers
<i>mål</i> , -et; -, goal	~ om, ~ for	<i>moder</i> , -n; mödrar, mother
<i>spänna</i> IIa, stretch	<i>snabb</i> , -are; -ast, swift	<i>torka</i> I, dry, wipe
<i>skör</i> , -t; -a, fragile	<i>ära</i> , -n, honor	<i>glädjetår</i> , -en; -ar, tear of joy
<i>ullgarn</i> , -et; -, woolen thread, tape (yarn)	att bli den främste, of being the first	<i>ur</i> , from, out of
<i>målstolp e</i> , -en; -ar, post (at the finish)	<i>åskådar e</i> , -en; -, spectator	<i>ögonvrå</i> , -n; -r, corner of the eye
<i>tidtagar e</i> , -(e)n; -, time-keeper	<i>rycka</i> IIb, pull	<i>mumla</i> I, mumble
<i>annan</i> , <i>annat</i> ; <i>andra</i> , other	~ s med, carry along	~ för sig själv, ~ to oneself (herself)
	<i>jämn</i> , -t; -a, even, close	<i>min</i> , <i>mitt</i> , <i>mina</i> , my
	<i>strid</i> , -en; -er, fight	<i>duktig</i> , -t; -a, clever, able
	<i>ropa</i> I, shout, call	
	~ uppmuntrande till, urge encouragingly on	
	<i>favorit</i> , -en; -er, favorite	

D. QUESTIONS

§173. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. Vad vajar från idrottsborgens torn?
5. När är allt klart?
2. Vad företer den stora planen?
6. Hur löses den starka spänningen?
3. Varför måste hastighetslöparna ha nerverna i ordning?
7. Vad kämpar man om?
4. vem förrättar uppropet?
8. Hur ropa åskådarna till sina favoriter?
9. Vad händer några ögonblick senare?

- | | |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 10. Vad frågar man sig? | 13. Varmed hälsas den? |
| 11. När ges svaret? | 14. Vad gör då modern på läktaren? |
| 12. Vilken flagga hissas nu? | 15. Vad numlar hon för sig själv? |

E. EXERCISES

I

§174. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the Swedish translation first):

1. På --(that) solig- söndagseftermiddag- voro vi på Stadion.
2. -- (these) färger- äro --(the) tre nordiska länderna- flagg-.
3. Äro --(those) idrottsmän-, --(who) nu göra rund- kring ban- (def. sing.)?
4. --(this) ögonblick --(past indic. of betyda) att allt var klar- för matchen- först- tävling.
5. --(the one) --(who) --(past ind. of springa) snabbast --(past ind. of vinna) tävling-(def. sing.).
6. --(the man) --(who) förrättar upprop- (def. sing.) står vid mål-.
7. --(these) äro löpar- (def. pl.), --(who) huka sig ned i startgropar-.
8. --(he who) vill vinna måste ha nerver- i ordning.
9. Han ropade till --(his) favorit, att --(he, this one) måste vinna.
10. --(that) flagga, --(which) nu hissades i vädret var --(the) svensk- flagg-.

II

§175. Illustrate by simple Swedish sentences the use of the following demonstrative pronouns and relative pronouns:

1. denna, detta, dessa, den, det, de, den här, det här, de här, densamma, detsamma, desamma.
2. vilken, vilket, vilka, vad, som.

F. COMPOSITION

§176. Translate into Swedish:

1. On that sunny day we went to the Stadium.
2. Those are the Swedish, and these are the Norwegian colors.
3. Were those who stood at the goal the sprinters?
4. There was a sound of the whistle. That meant that all was ready for the start.
5. He who ran the fastest won the race.
6. Who is the man out on the athletic field?
7. Those who run must have their nerves in shape.
8. That man shouted continually to his favorite.
9. This sprinter fought hard to be the foremost of them all.
10. The flag that was raised was the Swedish flag.

LESSON XI

A. GRAMMAR

Conjugation of the Verb, (cont.). 3rd Conjugation: Indicative and Subjunctive; Active and Passive. Relative Pronouns and Adjectives. Interrogative Pronouns and Adjectives. Indefinite Pronouns and Adjectives.

§177. The 3rd Conjugation contains but relatively few verbs. Unless compounds, they are monosyllabic. The infinitive ends in another vowel than -a. The present participle ends in -ende.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past Ind.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
ro [rə:] to row	rodde [rəd'ə:]	rott [rət:]

Note. For a complete survey of all moods and tenses, active and passive, of the model verb for the 3rd conjugation, see paradigms §§ 370, 371,

§178. *Irregular Verbs of the 3rd Conjugation.**

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Past Ind.</i>	<i>Supine</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
bedja, <i>be</i> , to ask	ber	Sg. bad Pl. bådo	bett	bedd
dö, to die	dör	Sg. dog Pl. dogo	dött	(död)
få, to get	får	Sg. fick Pl. fingo	fått	(and)fådd short of breath
gå, to go	går	Sg. gick Pl. gingo	gått	gången
le, to smile	ler	Sg. log Pl. logo	lett	(be)ledd derided
se, to see	ser	Sg. såg Pl. sågo	sett	sedd
stå, to stand	står	Sg. stod Pl. stodo	stätt	(över)stånden ended, surmounted
slå, to strike (slay)	slår	Sg. slog Pl. slogo	slagit	slagen

RELATIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

§179. The relative pronouns are: *som* (indecl.) who, which, that; *vars* (only genitive), whose, of whom, of which; *vad* (indecl.) what, that, used with neuter antecedent only; *vilken*, neuter *vilket*, plural, all genders, *vilka*, who, that, which.

* See also *List of Strong and Irregular Verbs* §388.

§180. *Som* is the most common relative pronoun and almost the only one employed in conversation. It is used with all genders, singular and plural, and with all cases with the exception of the genitive which is supplied by *vars* and *vilkens* (*vilkets*, *vilkas*). Ex. *Min bror, som nu är här på besök, reser hem i morgon.* My brother who is now visiting here is leaving tomorrow. *Jag har talat vid mannen, vars hus brunnit ned.* I have talked with the man whose house burned down. *Han har funnit ringen, som han tappade på gården.* He has found the ring he lost in the field.

Note 1. If *som* has to be used in connection with a preposition, the latter must not precede *som* but be placed at the end of the relative clause, or somewhere in the clause. Ex. *Jag är inte bekant med mannen, som ni taler om.* I am not acquainted with the man you speak about (= of whom you are speaking). *Odin hade ett skepp, som han for på över stora hav.* Odin had a ship which he fared (traveled) on over great oceans.

Note 2. Instead of *som - om*, *som - på*, in the above sentences, *om vilken*, of whom and *på vilket*, on which, could be used. In conversation, however, the *som*-construction is the better form.

§181. *Vilken* (*vilket*; *vilka*) is used both pronominally and adjectivally. The forms take an *-s* in the genitive and are freely preceded by prepositions. Ex. *Valet, på vars (or vilkets) utgång så mycket berodde, var ovanligt livlig.* The election, on the results of which so much depended, was exceptionally lively.

Note. In Swedish the relative pronoun is often left out. Ex. *Mannen ni träffade i mitt hem är en framstående författare.* The man you met in my home is a prominent author.

§182. After *ingen*, *någon*, *sådan*, and *samma*, "*som*" must be used (not *vilken* or *vad*). Ex. *Ingén som har läst Karlfeldt glömmer honom lätt.* No one who has read Karlfeldt forgets him easily. *Han köper alltid det dyraste som finns.* He always buys the most expensive there is (to be had).

§183. *Vilket* (or *något som*) must be used when reference is made to a whole clause. Cf. German *was* and French *ce qui*. Ex. *I dag betalte han sin skuld, vilket (något som) jag inte hade väntat mig.* Today he paid his debt which I had not expected.

§184. *Vad* is used in the neuter singular only.

1. When equivalent to *det som*, English *that which*, cf. German *was* (=*das was*). Ex. *Vad han gladde sig åt blev aldrig verklighet.* What he rejoiced at never became a reality.

2. Occasionally when equivalent to English *all that*. Ex. *Det är allt (vad) jag vet.* That is all (that) I know.

Note. Whenever *vad* is the subject of a relative clause preceding the principal clause it is followed by *som*. Ex. *Vad som fräpperar mest är färgrikedomen.* What strikes one most (forcibly) is the wealth of colors.

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

§185. The interrogative pronouns and adjectives are:

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Common gender</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>All genders</i>
vem, who		(vilka), who
vems, whose		(vilkas), whose
	vad, what	
vilken, which	vilket, which	vilka, who, which, what
vilkens, whose	vilkets, whose	vilkas, whose
vad för en , What kind of, what	vad för ett, What kind of, what	vad för (ena), what kind of, what
hurudan, how	hurudant, how	hurudana, how, what kind of
vilkendera, which	vilketdera, which	(vilka), which (of two)
vilkenderas, whose	vilketderas, whose	(vilkas), whose

Note 1. *Vem* is used as a noun and only about persons.

Note 2. *Vad* is used like English *what*, i.e., as a neuter interrogative pronoun.

Ex. *Vad står på här?* What is the matter here? Only rarely does *vad* function as an interrogative adjective. Ex. *Vad (för en) fördel har du därav?* What advantage do you derive from that?

Note 3. *Vilken* is used both as a noun and as an adjective. Ex. *Vem är mannen?* Who is the man? *Vems hus är detta?* Whose house is this? *Vilka äro edra (era) föräldrar?* Who are your parents? *Vad för en bok önskar ni köpa?* What (kind of) book do you wish to buy? *Vad för folk (människor) är det där?* What people are those? *Vad är ni för ena?* What kind (sort) of people are you? *Hurudant blir vädret i morgon?* What will the weather be like tomorrow? *Hurudana knappar ämnar hon använda?* What kind of buttons does she intend to use? *Vilken spårvagn (vilket tåg) skall jag ta?* Which street car (what train) am I to (do I) take? *Här har jag två vackra blommor. Vilkendera vill ni ha?* Here I have two pretty flowers. Which do you want? *Vad för slags bläck använder ni?* What kind of ink do you use?

§186. An interrogative pronoun used as subject in a subordinate clause (indirect question) is followed by the relative pronoun *som*. Ex. *Vet ni, vem som har gjort det?* Do you know who has done that (it)? *Har ni hört, vilka som kommo först?* Have you heard who arrived first?

Note. Unless *vem* (*vilken*) is in the nominative case, *som* is not used.

Ex. *Jag vet inte vem han rekommenderade.* I do not know whom he recommended. *Hon frågade mig vilka jag tänkte skicka först.* She asked me which (whom) I intended to send first.

§187. *Vilken* in exclamations. Note that the indefinite article is not used in Swedish after *vilken* in expressions of the following type:

Ex. *Vilken härlig utsikt!* What a glorious view! *Vilket missstag!* What a blunder!

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS (ADJECTIVES)

§188. Indefinite pronouns and adjectives are:

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>
<i>Common gender</i>	<i>Neuter</i>	<i>All genders</i>
all	all	alla
.....		båda (bägge), both
annan	other, else	andra
den andra(-e)	the other	de andra
den ena(-e)	the one	de ena
en	one	
.....		flera, more, several
.....		flesta(-e), most, the majority
.....		få, few
ingen	no, no one	inga
.....	
man	one (we, you, they)	många
mången	many a, many	några
någon	some, any	någonting something,
.....		somliga
somlig	some, certain	somligt, somt
varje	every, each	varje
var	every, each	vart
var och en	each one, everybody	vart och ett
varenda (en)	each, every one	vartenda (ett)

§189. When used as pronouns the indefinites have, generally, a possessive case ending in -s. Ex. *ens vänner*, one's friends; *någons handskar*, somebody's gloves; *vars och ens skyldigheter*, the duties of each one.

REMARKS ON THE USE OF SOME OF THE INDEFINITES

§190. *All*, *allt*, *alla*. When *all* in English means *whole* it is rendered by *hel*. Ex. *hela landet*, all of the country. *Alla är välkomna*. All are welcome. *Alla människor är besläktade*. All human beings are related. *Allt är förgängligt*. Everything is transitory. *Det är allas mening*. That is the opinion of all.

§191. *Båda (bägge)* are often used together with *två* (two). Ex. *båda två*, both. When preceded by the definite article or any determinative modifier, *båda (bägge)* are rendered in English *the two*. Ex. *de båda sönerna... dessa båda flickor*, the two sons... these two girls.

Note. Compounds whose last component part is *-dera* (historically a genitive plural) when used as adjectives are followed by a definite noun.

Ex. *intetdera slaget*, neither the one nor the other kind. Apart from *vardera*, each (of them), these words belong to the written language.

§192. *Annan* (*annat; andra*) in certain Swedish expressions does not mean another (= one more) but rather a different one. Cf. French and German usage. Ex. *Får jag be om en annan kopp* (*kniv, tallrik*)? May I ask for another (different) cup (knife, plate)? The English *another* (= an additional one) is in Swedish *ännu en* or *en till*. Ex. *Får det vara en kopp kaffe till?* Would you care for another cup of coffee?

§193. *Någon* (*något; några*). Ex. *Har någon varit här?* Has anybody been here? *Nej, det har inte varit någon här.* No, there hasn't been anybody here (= nobody has been here). *Kanske ni önskar någonting bättre?* Perhaps you want something better? *Det finns väl ingenting som är vackrare än detta?* I don't suppose there is anything prettier than this? *Någonting är bättre än ingenting.* Something is better than nothing.

§194. *Man* (genitive *ens*, dative and accusative *en*) is used a great deal more in Swedish than *one* in English. Note the following usages of it: *Man gör det bästa man kan.* One does the best one can. *Ens vänner fordra mycket av en.* One's friends demand much of one.

Note. *Man* is used in Swedish in a great many instances when English has *you, we, they, people*. Compare the use of Swedish *man* with that of German *man* and French *on*.

§195. *Någon* and *ingen* are used as adjectives or as nouns, not only in affirmative, but also in negative and interrogative sentences where English employs *any*. Note examples above §193, and the following: *Jag har inga tändstickor.* *Har ni några?* I have no matches. Have you any? *Han har inga cigaretter, och inte jag heller.* He has no cigarettes, and I haven't any either.

Note 1. Compare the use of Swedish *heller* with English *nor I*, German *ich auch nicht*, and French *ni moi non plus*.

Note 2. *Any* (*anybody, anything*) when used in a question, in a negative or conditional clause, is rendered in Swedish by *någon* (*något, några*). Ex. *Jag har inte sett någon.* I have not seen anybody. *Har någon varit här?* Has anybody been here? *Om någon hade varit här och inte funnit någon hemma...* If anybody had been here and not found anybody at home...

§196. *Var och en*, common gender, possessive *vars och ens*. Ex. *Var och en för sig*, each one for himself. *Var och en av gossarna fick ett äpple.* Each one of the boys received an apple apiece. *Man inrättar sig här enligt vars och ens smak.* People arrange themselves here each according to his (her) taste.

Var and the neut. *vart och ett* are used mostly as adjectives. Ex. *Var dag.* Every day. *Vart och ett träd som icke bär god frukt...* Each and every tree that does not bear good fruit...

§197. The interrogative pronouns *vem*, *vad*, *vilken* (*vilket*; *vilka*) are made into indefinite pronouns and indefinite relatives by adding *som helst*. Compare French *qui que ce soit* (*quoi que ce soit*). Ex. *Vem som helst må försöka*. Anybody (at all) may try. *Mannen kan göra vad som helst*. The man can do anything (at all). *Jag kan (kunde, kunde inte) komma vid vilken tid på dagen som helst*. I can (could, could not) come at any time of the day. *Ni får ta vilket som helst av dessa föremål ni behagar*. You may take any (whichsoever) of these objects you desire.

B. READING SELECTION

Ur Sveriges historia

I början av elfte århundradet blev kristendomen införd i Sverige på allvar. Nu började i stället för vikingatågen ett nytt slags härtåg eller kors-tåg, som hade för ändamål att omvända hedningarna på andra sidan Östersjön. Och dessa omvändelsekrig fördes med samma järnklädda nit, som en gång utmärkte vikingatågen. Under medeltiden var Sverige också härjat av inbördeskrig och slitningar till dess Gustav Vasa kom på tronen 1523 och gjorde reda i oredan. Kung Gustav införde också den protestantiska läran.

I och med Gustav II Adolfs inträde i trettioåriga kriget 1630, började Sveriges storhetstid, som varade nära ett århundrade. Han efterträddes av sin minderåriga dotter, Kristina. Under hennes minderårighet var Axel Oxenstierna riksföreståndare. Drottning Kristina avsade sig tronen 1654.

Karl XII besteg tronen 1697. Han är kanske den bäst kände av storhetstidens regenter, delvis på grund av Voltaires biografi. Han var en framstående härförare, men efter många segrar i sin kamp mot Danmark, Polen och Ryssland, blev han slutligen slagen och föll vid ett sista försök att erövra Norge 1718. Därmed slutar Sverige sin historia som politisk stormakt.

Gustav III, som övertog regeringen 1772, var Sveriges "solkonung" och en varm beundrare av Ludvig XIV av Frankrike. Han gjorde mycket för att uppmuntra svensk konst och litteratur. Under hans regering levde Sveriges "Anarkreon", Carl Michael Bellman.

Då den gamla svenska konungaätten hotade att dö ut med Karl XIII, som var barnlös, valdes en fransk marskalk, Bernadotte, till tronföljare. Han besteg tronen 1818 under namnet Karl XIV Johan. Norge, som förenats med Sverige vid kongressen i Wien 1814-15, löste sig från unionen 1905 och valde en dansk prins till konung.

Sveriges nuvarande konung, Gustaf V, är en mycket populär monark både hemma och utomlands. Skämtsamt kallas han stundom "Mr. G."

Trots de många krig, som de tre skandinaviska folken fört mot varandra i flydda tider, äro de nu förenade med de starkaste vänskapsband.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

ur, from	protestantisk, -t; -a,	försök, -et; -, attempt
histori a, -en; -er, history	Protestant	vid ett sista ~
början (indecl.), the beginning	lär a, -an; -or, faith	in a final ~
elfte, eleventh	i och med, with	erövra I, conquer
bliva, blev, blivit, become, be	~ Gustav II Adolfs in-	därmed, with that
kristendom, -en, Christianity	träde i, with G. II A's	sluta I, close
införd (p.p. of införa),	entrance into	politisk, -t; -a, political
introduced	vara I, last, endure	stormakt, -en; -er, great power
blev kristendomen ~ i	nära, nearly	tillträda IIa, come to,
Christianity was ~ into	hjältemodig, -t; -a, heroic	ascend
allvar, -et, seriousness	kamp, -en, struggle	solkonung, -en; -ar, "Sun-king"
på ~, in earnest	mäktig, -t; -a, powerful	varm, -t; -a, warm
ställe, -t; -n, place	österrikisk, -t; -a, Austrian	beundrar e, -en; -, admirer
i ~ för, instead of	kejsar e, -en; -, emperor (Kaiser)	Ludvig, Louis XIV
vikingatåg, -et; -.	rädda I, save	Frankrike, France
Viking expedition	förlust, -en; -er, loss	uppmuntra I, encourage
ny, -tt; -a, new	stupa I, fall	litteratur, -en; -er,
ett~slags, a ~ kind of	slagfält, -et; -, field	literature
härtåg, -et; -, military	of battle	regering, -en; -ar,
expedition	esterträda IIa, succeed, follow	reign, government
eller, or	minderårig, -t; -a, minor,	Anakreon, Anacreon
korståg, -et; -, crusade	not of age	stor, -t; -a, great
ändamål, -et; -, purpose	dotter, -n; döttrar, daughter	konungaätt, -en; -er, dynasty
för ~, for a purpose	hennes, her	hota I, threaten
omvända IIa, convert	minderårighet, -en; minority	dö, dog, dött, die
att ~, tr. the con-	under hennes ~	~ ut, become extinct
verting of the	during her ~	barnlös, -t; -a, childless
hedning, -en; -ar, heathen	riksföreståndar e, -en; -,	välja, valde, valt IIa, choose
andra, other	regent	~ ngn. till ngt.,
på~ sidan, on the ~ side	drottning, -en; -ar, queen	~ someone for something
omvändelsekrig, -et; -, war of	avsåga, avsade, avsagt,	fransk, -t; -a, French
conversion (religious war)	(sig) IIa, abdicate	marskalk, -en; -er,
föra IIa, wage, carry on	bestiga, besteg, bestigit	[maʃal:k], marshal
järnklä dd, -tt; -ddæ,	ascend	tronföljar e, -en; -,
iron-clad	bäst (see bra, god), best	successor to the throne
nit, -et, zeal	kän d, -t; -da, known	förena I, unite
utmärka IIb, distinguish	regent, -en; -er, ruler	kongressen i Wien,
härja I, harry, lay waste	delvis, partly	The Congress of Vienna
inbördeskrig, -et; -, civil war	biografi, -(e)n; -er, biography	lösa (sig) IIb, withdraw
slitning, -en; -ar, discord	framstående, prominent	union, -en; -er, union
till dess, until	härförar e, -en; -, general	dansk, -t; -a, Danish
tron, -en; -er, throne	seger, -n; segrar, victory	prins, -en; -ar, prince
komma på ~, come to the ~	Polen, Poland	populär, -t; -a, popular
red a, -an, order	slag en, -et; -na, defeated	monark, -en; -er, monarch
ored a, -an, disorder	falla, föll, fallit, fall	bäde, both
göra reda i oredan, make	be killed	utomlands, abroad
order out of chaos	sist, -; -a, last	skämtsamt, in jest
kung (konung), -en; -ar, king		stundom, occasionally

<i>folk.</i> -et; -, def. pl. <i>folken.</i> peoples <i>fört</i> (supine of <i>föra</i>), wage <i>som de</i> — <i>med varandra</i> ,	that they have waged with one another : <i>flydda tider</i> , in the past <i>förenad</i> , -t; -de, united	— <i>med</i> , — by <i>stark</i> , -are, -ast, strong <i>vänksapsband</i> , -et; -, bond of friendship
--	---	---

D. QUESTIONS

§198. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. När infördes kristendomen i Sverige?
2. Vad slags härtåg började nu?
3. Hur fördes dessa omvändelsekrig?
4. När härjades Sverige av inbördeskrig?
5. Vad gjorde Gustav Vasa?
6. I och med vad började Sveriges storhetstid?
7. Vad var det som Gustav II Adolf räddade?
8. Var stupade han?
9. vem efterträdde honom?
10. När avsade hon sig tronen?
11. Varför är kanske Karl XII den mest kände av storhetstidens konungar?
12. Vad var han?
13. Varmed avslutar Sverige sin historia som politisk stormakt?
14. vem var "solkonungen"?
15. vem beundrade han?
16. Vad uppmuntrade han?
17. vem var Bellman?
18. Varför valde man en fransk marskalk till tronföljare?
19. När besteg han tronen?
20. När förenades Norge med Sverige?
21. Vad hände 1905?
22. Vad heter Sveriges nuvarande konung?
23. Vilket är hans "smeknamn"?
24. När förde de Skandinaviska folken krig mot varandra?
25. Hurudant är förhållandet dem emellan nu för tiden?

E. EXERCISES

I

§199. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the translation in Swedish first):

1. Kristendom- införde- --(into) Sverige --(in) början --(of) elfte århundrade-.
2. --(these) ny- slags korståg förde- --(with) samma järnklädd- nit --(which) en gång --(past indic. of utmärka) vikingatåg-.
3. --(during) medeltid- och till dess Gustav Vasa --(past indic. of komma) --(on, to) tron- --(past indic. of härjas) Sverige ofta --(by) inbördeskrig.
4. --(to) Sverige- oersättlig- förlust stupade konung- --(on) slagfält-.
5. --(after) mång- seg- (indef. pl.) --(in) --(his) kamp --(against) Danmark, Polen och Ryssland --(was) han slutligen slag- och --(past ind. of falla) --(in) --(a) sist- försök att erövra Norge.

6. --(during) Gustav III:s regering --(past indic. of leva) Nordens storsångare, Bellman.
7. --(the) gamla svensk- konungaätt- hota- (past indic.) att dö ut --(with) Karl XIII och därfor --(past indic. of väljas) --(a) fransk marskalk --(to) tronföljare.
8. --(at) kongress- (def. sing.) --(in) Wien 1814-15 hade Norge --(supine of förenas) --(with) Sverige, men 1905 --(past indic. of lösa) sig --(this) land --(from) Union- (def. sing.).
9. --(these) folk äro --(now) --(p.p. of förena) med --(the) starka- vänskapsband.

II

§200. Give the s-passive and auxiliary passive in Swedish of the infinitive, present indicative and the past indicative tenses of the following verbs: *introduce, carry on, save, choose, unite.*

F. COMPOSITION

§201. Translate into Swedish:

1. After the introduction of Christianity in the 11th century, a new kind of military expedition began which had for its object the conversion of the heathens.
2. These wars of conversion were carried on with the same ironclad zeal that once distinguished the Viking expeditions.
3. During the Middle Ages, before Gustav Vasa came to the throne (1523), Sweden was laid waste by civil wars.
4. His young daughter Kristina succeeded him. During her minority Axel Oxenstierna was regent.
5. Towards the end of the century (1697) Karl XII came to the throne. He is, perhaps, the best known of the rulers during the Age of Greatness.
6. After victories over Denmark, Poland and Russia, he was finally defeated and was killed in a last attempt to conquer Norway in 1718.
7. Bellman lived during the reign of Gustavus III.
8. As the old Swedish royal dynasty threatened to die out with Karl XIII, a French marshal was chosen successor to the throne.
9. In spite of many (*många*) wars that the Scandinavian peoples have waged against each other they are now united by the strongest bonds of friendship.

LESSON XII

A. GRAMMAR

Conjugation of the Verb, cont. 4th Conjugation.

*Forms of the Passive. The s-Passive. The Auxiliary Passive:
bliva, vara, varda. Substitute for the Passive: Man + the Active.*

§202. The chief characteristics of the strong verb and its conjugation have been discussed in Lessons VIII and IX. For a complete survey of the model verb for the 4th conjugation, active and passive, all moods and tenses, see §§ 372,373. Particular attention is called to the paradigms setting forth the conjugation of the s-passive in all its moods and tenses. For the form and use of the past participle, see introductory statement, *List of Strong and Irregular Verbs*, § 388.

§203. *Classification of the Strong Verb.* In medieval Swedish the strong verbs were divided into the so-called gradation (Ablaut) series, each series showing the changes undergone by the root vowel in the different verbal forms. There were seven series:

	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past Ind.</i>	<i>Supine</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
I	gripa, grip (seize)	Sg. grep Pl. grepo	gripit	gripen
II	bjuda, offer (bid)	Sg. bjöd Pl. bjödo	bjudit	bjuden
III	binda, bind	Sg. band Pl. bundo	bundit	bunden
IV	bära, bear	Sg. bar Pl. buro	burit	buren
V	giva, give	Sg. gav Pl. gävo	givit	given
VI	fara, fare (travel)	Sg. for Pl. foro	farit	fare
VII To this series belonged reduplicated verbs, the vowel-changes of which were not due to regular gradation. Such verbs are falla, fall, föllo, fallit, fallen; löpa, leap (run), lopp, lupo, lupit, lupen (förlupen).			

The above series are not as a rule introduced in grammars of modern Swedish. In such works it is usual to discuss the strong verb under three headings:

a) Those which change their root-vowel only in the past tense and have the same vowel in the singular and plural:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past Ind.</i>	<i>Supine</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
gripa, grip (seize)	Sg. grep Pl. grepo	gripit	gripen
slå, strike (slay)	Sg. slog Pl. slogo	slagit	slagen
läta, let	Sg. lät Pl. läto	lätit	läten (kvarläten)
äta, eat	Sg. åt Pl. äto	ätit	äten (aväten)

b) Those which have two vowel-changes: One in the singular of the past tense, and one in the plural of that tense, the supine and the past participle:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past Ind.</i>	<i>Supine</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
brinna, burn	Sg. brann Pl. brunno	brunnit	brunnen
bära, bear	Sg. bärä Pl. buro	burit	buren
svär(j)a, swear	Sg. svor Pl. svuro	svurit	svuren

c) Those which after the pattern of a) have the same vowel-change in the singular and plural of the past tense, but, after the pattern of b) have *u* in the supine and past participle:

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Past Ind.</i>	<i>Supine</i>	<i>Past Part.</i>
drypa, drip	Sg. dröp Pl. dröpo	drupit	
bryta, break	Sg. bröt Pl. bröto	brutit	bruten

Note 1. Either one of the classifications may be used, but the original seven series may be more acceptable to students who are familiar with modern or medieval German, or both.

Note 2. Strong verbs, the gradation of which is not entirely regular, have been marked irregular (irr.). See *List of Strong and Irregular Verbs*, § 388.

§204. *Formation of the Passive.* The passive is formed in Swedish by adding *-s* to the active in accordance with the following rules:

1. If the active form ends in another sound than *-r*, the *-s* is added directly. Ex. *Vi älskas*, we are loved; *I älskens*, ye are loved; *de älskades*, they were loved.

2. If the form ends in *-r* it is dropped before *-s* is added. Ex. *Jag kallas*, I am called (from active: *jag kallar*); *jag tros*, I am believed (from active: *jag tror*).

Note 1. If the verbal form ends in *-er* the following usage obtains:

- a) *-r* is dropped. Ex. *Boken läses*, the book is being read (from active form: *läser*).
- b) *-er* is dropped before adding *-s* to the verbal form. A long vowel is often shortened before the *-s* of the passive. Ex. *Han rivas* [rif:s], (*nypas* [nyp:s]). Dep. verbs: He scratches (pinches), from active *riva* [ri'va:] to scratch, and *nypa* [ny'pa:] to pinch.

Note 2. The short forms are the more common in colloquial speech. Ex. *Vad tycks?* What's your opinion? In normal prose: *Det tyckes vara så*. It seems to be so.

Note 3. The present subjunctive (optative) *s*-forms have very limited use and periphrastic forms (*med*) usually replace them. See *Model Verb Paradigms* § 366, ff.

Note 4. Because of the very nature of the imperative it can as a rule not have a passive form. See *Model Verb Paradigms* § 366, ff.

§205. Use of the *s*-Passive. Ex. *Lampan tändes (=Man tänder lampan)*.

The lamp is being lit (=Someone lights the lamp). *Uppsala universitet grundades år 1477*. The University of Uppsala was founded in the year 1477. *Gustav Vasa valdes till Sveriges konung år 1523*. Gustav Vasa was elected king of Sweden in the year 1523. *Förbrytaren har gripits*. The criminal has been apprehended.

Note 1. The use of the *s*-passive is very common in prose. In the colloquial use of the language it is less usual. *Hon älskas av alla* is apt to be replaced by: *Hon är älskad av alla*. She is loved by all.

Note 2. Agency in passive constructions is expressed by the preposition *av*, by, together with a pronoun or a noun. Ex. *Boken läses av alla*. The book is (being) read by all. *Han besegrades av sin motståndare*. He was defeated by his opponent.

§206. The Periphrastic Passive. The periphrastic passive, also referred to as the auxiliary passive, is formed by the auxiliaries *bliva*, to become, *vara*, to be, and (to some extent) by *varda* (=*bliva*), (cf. German *werden*), plus the past participle of the principal verb. The past participle then agrees in gender and number with the subject. See § 207, ff.

Vara, varda, bliva.

§207. In order to be able to deal intelligently with the periphrastic passive, it is necessary to note the distinction that exists between the verbs *bliva* (*varda*) on the one hand, and *vara* on the other. *Vara* indicates, or refers to, a continuous state; *bliva* (*varda*) on the other hand indicates a transition from one state into another:

Continuous state

Mannen är sjuk (trött,
fattig).
The man is sick (tired,
poor).

Transition from one state into another

Mannen blev (har blivit) sjuk,
(trött, fattig).
The man became (has become) sick
(tired, poor).

§208. The distinction noted between *vara* and *bliva* (*varda*) obtains also in the case of other verbs. Swedish verbs are therefore classified according to the meaning revealed in their action as verbs of *duration* and verbs of *transition*. Many of the verbs may, of course, function in both capacities. Ex. *Han stannade länge hos oss.* He stayed a long time with us. *Väggklockan stannade* (*har stannat*). The wall-clock stopped (has stopped).

§209. Examples of verbs of duration and of transition:

Verbs of Duration

Action does not terminate in anything definite.

Han sover. He is sleeping.
Han vakar. He is awake.

And so:

fortfara, continue; *färdas*, travel; *nalkas*, draw nigh; *hata*, hate; *leva*, live; *minnas*, recall; *sitta*, sit; *söka*, seek; *tala*, talk; *förbliva*, remain; *vara*, endure; etc.

Verbs of Transition

Action terminates in something, or it constitutes a turning point or a change from or to something.

Han soñnade. He fell asleep.
Han vaknade. He woke up.

börja, begin; *sluta*, cease; *erövra*, conquer; *anlända*, arrive; *avresa*, depart; *dö*, die; *erinra sig*, recall; *glömma*, forget; *sätta*, put, set; *finna*, find; *tystna*, become silent; *bliva*, become; etc.

§210. The Passive of Verbs of Duration.*

1. In the present and past tenses, s-forms and periphrastic forms with *vara* denote proceeding action.

Han fruktas av sina fiender.
He is feared by his enemies.
Han fruktades, etc.

Han är fruktad av sina fiender.
Han var fruktad, etc.

Note. *Blir fruktad* denotes the inception of an action in the future: *He will be feared*; *blev fruktad* denotes the inception of an action in the past: *Came to be (became) feared*.

2. In the present and in the past perfect, s-forms and periphrastic forms with *vara* and *bliva* are interchangeable.

Han har (hade) fruktats, etc.
He has (had) been feared, etc.

Han har (hade) blivit fruktad, etc.

§211. The Passive of Verbs of Transition.

1. In the present tense the s-form is the rule.

Ljusen tändas och julklapparna utdelas. The candles are (being) lighted and the Christmas gifts are distributed.

* Cf. Björknagen: Modern Swedish Grammar.

2. In the past tense, s-forms and periphrastic forms with *bliva* are used without distinction.

Förbrytaren greps på bar gärning.
The criminal was caught in the act.

Förbrytaren blev gripen på bar gärning. The criminal was caught in the act.

Böckerna lades på hyllan.
The books were placed on the shelf.

Böckerna blevo lagda på hyllan.
The books were placed on the shelf.

Note. Periphrastic forms with *vara* in the present and past (imperfect) tenses indicate a previous completed action, the result of which still remains or remained.

Ex. Himmel är (var) täckt av moln. Compare: Himmel täckes av moln.
The sky is (was) covered with clouds. The sky is being covered (is getting overcast).

3. In the present perfect and past perfect tenses, s-forms and periphrastic forms with *bliva* denote completed action:

Pulpeten har (hade) reparerats.
The desk has (had) been repaired.

Pulpeten har (hade) blivit reparerad. The desk has (had) been repaired.

Note. Periphrastic forms with *vara* in the present perfect and in the past denote:

- a) Completed action the result of which no longer obtains.
Ex. Bordet har varit målat rött en gång, men... The table has been (was) painted red once, but...(had a coat of red paint once, but..)
- b) An action which began in the past and the result of which continues or continued into the present time.
Ex. Han har (hade) varit borta från hemmet i många år. He has (had) been away from home for many years.

Note 1. It is important for the English-speaking student of Swedish to bear in mind that the s-passive and the periphrastic forms are, generally speaking, used interchangeably. While the s-passive is not a favorite form in colloquial speech, it is used regularly in statements, rules and directions. Ex. Min klocka drages upp varje dygn. My watch is wound every twenty-four hours. Stöld straffas med fängelse. Theft is punished with imprisonment. The s-form is also of frequent use in formulas and recipes where English uses the imperative. Ex. Äpplena skalas, skäras i bitar, och kärnhusen tagas bort. Peel the apples, cut them in pieces and remove the cores. Förvaras på kyligt ställe. Keep in a cool place. *

Note 2. The learner should also bear in mind that the English combination *be + the past participle of verbs of transition* frequently has a meaning that is not passive, but that one and the same auxiliary is used whether the expression is a passive or merely an apparent passive. In Swedish a different auxiliary *bliva* (or in the past singular *vart* from *varda*) is used, as we have seen above, as the chief auxiliary of the periphrastic passive. The verb *vara*, corresponding to English *to be* may be employed only in the case of verbs of duration. The use is limited, however, because there are relatively few transitive verbs of duration. *Vara + the past participle of verbs of transition is not a passive but an apparent passive.* Cf. German: *Die Tür ist geschlossen;* Swedish: *Dörren är stängd;* English: The door is closed, where in each instance the past participle is used adjectively in the predicate.

* See Elmquist: *Swedish Grammar*, §222, Note 2.

- Note 3. The *s*-passive may be formed from most intransitive verbs, but only impersonally.
 Ex. *Det dansas här, ser jag.* Lit. It is being danced here, I see. - They (you) are dancing (having a dance) here, I notice. *Det sprangs och väsnades förskräckligt både uppe och nere.* There was a terrible running about and making of noise both upstairs and downstairs.
- Note 4. Only verbs governing the accusative can, as a rule, form a passive. Ex. *Läraren berömmes gossen.* The teacher praises the boy. Passive: *Gossen berömmes (blev berömd, har blivit berömd) av läraren.* The boy is being praised (was praised, has been praised) by the teacher.
- Note 5. Often an active infinitive in Swedish corresponds to an English passive infinitive.
 Ex. *Vad är att göra?* What is to be done? *Det stod att läsa i tidningen i dag.* It was to be read in the paper today.
 The Swedish verb *läta* + infinitive has its parallel use in German and French, but not in English. Note the following sentences: *Han lät öppna fönstret*, which means: *Han lät någon öppna fönstret* (or, *han befallde någon...*); in English: He had the window opened = He caused (ordered) somebody to open the window. Compare also: *Han lät honom gå.* He let him (allowed, suffered him to) go.
- Note 6. The passive is often avoided, particularly in the spoken language, by substituting an active construction with *man* (one, we, you, they, people) as subject. Compare French and German usage. Ex. *Man säger, att han är omtyckt.* (Passive: *Han säges vara omtyckt*). They say that he is liked = he is said to be liked. *En man föll på gatan.* Man bar honom till en bil och förde honom till sjukhuset. A man fell on the street. He was carried to an auto and taken (driven) to the hospital.

B. READING SELECTION

*Om svenskarna vid Delaware **

När William Penn landsteg vid Delaware-flodens strand i nuvarande staten Pennsylvania, hade svenskarna redan varit bofasta där i över fyrtio år. Han fann flodens stränder mer eller mindre bebyggda ifrån Delaware Bay ända till Trenton. Befolkningen bestod huvudsakligen av svenskar, finländare, holländare och engelsmän.

Tack vare det stort anlagda arbetet *The Swedish Settlements on the Delaware* av Dr Amandus Johnson har man numera en detaljerad bild av den svenska koloniens grundläggning, utveckling och undergång. Klarast tecknade är de ytter förhållandena, såsom t.ex. de olika expeditionerna, landförvärven, fortifikationerna, såväl som kolonisternas ställning i förhållande till hemlandet, till de europeiska grannarna på det amerikanska fastlandet samt till landets urinvånare.

Om de inre förhållandena - de sociala - ha vi ringa eller ingen kännedom, särskilt före Björks, Rudmans och Aureens ankomst. "Printz", skriver Amandus Johnson, "ger full upplysning om tvistigheterna med holländarna och engelsmännen, men han nämner intet om hur folket levde, hurudana hus de byggde, vad de hade på sig, och annat som vi skulle vilja veta... Lindheström, Campanius och Rising beskriva landet, men återigen söka vi förgäves efter "sociala fakta."

* (Ur *Svenskarna i Amerika* av Hildebrand och Fredenholm).

Följaktligen äro meningarna ganska skiljaktiga, då det gäller en framställning av svenskarnas vid Delaware inre förhållanden. William Penn karakteriserade dem såsom ett enkelt, starkt och idigt folk. Bancroft säger, att de voro väl uppfostrade (*instructed*). Ferris menar i sitt arbete *History of the Original Settlements on the Delaware*, att de hade lidit brist på fysisk och andlig fostran, samt att de hade åstadkommit relativt litet vid tiden för William Penns ankomst 1682.

Rudman, Björk, Hesselius, Thomas Campanius Holm och andra bestyrka delvis dessa uttalanden. Själve Acrelius, som i sju års tid verkade såsom själasörjare i Kristina församling och som borde ha varit någorlunda väl underrättad, har fallit långt ifrån smickrande omdömen om kolonisterna och deras kultur. I sin år 1759 utgivna bok skriver han: "Längre tillbaka än 40 år visste vårt folk föga hwad någon Schola war. De förste åbyggare af Swenske och Hålländske woro et fattigt, ringa och okunnigt folk, som i samma oförstånd födde up sina barn. Detta är orsaken, at landsens infödingar kunna hwarken räkna eller skrifwa; äro och ganska få av dem skickelige til något ämbete inom Regeringen!"

Vad nu svenskarna vid Delaware före 1697 angår, så är det svårt att fastställa vad som gjordes för upplysningen vid sidan av den själens ans och rykt, som förmedlades av prästerna. Man kan endast stödja sig på hypoteser. Det gives ingen anledning att tro, att mycket uträttades i den vägen före 1600-talets slut. Planer lades, det veta vi, för uppförande och underhåll av kyrkor och skolhus, men många av de senare kommo aldrig längre än på papperet. Boningshusen fingo tjäna såsom skolhus, då någon undervisning förekom. Präst och klockare fungerade såsom lärare. Innanläsning och kristendom voro de enda undervisningsämnen. För övrigt torde det mellan 1638 och 1655 icke ha varit så särdeles starkt behov av skolor på grund av att jämförelsevis få barn funnos i kolonien.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

<i>landstiga, landsteg,</i>	<i>anlag d, -t; -da</i> , designed	<i>olik, -t; -a</i> , various
<i>landstigit, land</i>	<i>arbet e, -et, -en</i> , work	<i>expedition, -en; -er,</i>
<i>stat, -en; -er</i> , state	<i>numera, nowadays</i>	<i>expedition</i>
<i>befast, -; -a</i> , settled	<i>detaljera d, -t; -de</i> , detailed	<i>landförvärv, -et; -,</i>
<i>fyrto, forty</i>	<i>koloni, -(e)n; -er</i> , colony	<i>acquisition of land</i>
<i>finna; fann, funno;</i>	<i>grundläggning, -en; -ar,</i>	<i>fortifikation, -en; -er</i>
<i>funnit, find</i>	<i>founding</i>	<i>fortification</i>
<i>bebygg d, -t; -da</i> , settled	<i>utveckling, -en; -ar.</i>	<i>kolonist, -en; -er</i> , colonist
<i>mer eller mindre, more</i>	<i>development</i>	<i>ställning, -en; -ar,</i>
<i>or less</i>	<i>undergång, -en; -er.</i>	<i>position, attitude</i>
<i>ifrån, from</i>	<i>klarast (see klar).</i>	<i>förhållande, relation</i>
<i>ända till, as far as</i>	<i>most clearly</i>	<i>: ~ till, in ~ to</i>
<i>finländar e, -en; -, Finlander</i>	<i>teckna d, -t; -de,</i>	<i>hemland, -et; -, native</i>
<i>holländar e, -en; -,</i>	<i>drawn, delineated</i>	<i>land (home country)</i>
<i>Hollander, Dutchman</i>	<i>yttre, external</i>	<i>europeisk, -t; -a</i> . European
<i>engelsman, -nen; engels-</i>	<i>förhållande, -t; -n, condition</i>	<i>grann e, -en; -ar, neighbor</i>
<i>män. Englishman</i>		<i>amerikansk, -t; -a, American</i>

<i>fastland</i> , -et; -, continent, mainland	<i>ledning</i> , -en; -ar, leadership	<i>åbyggare</i> , -en; -, settler
<i>ursnvánar e</i> , -en; -, aborigine	<i>utbilda</i> I, develop	<i>af</i> (see <i>av</i>), of
<i>inre</i> , internal, inner	<i>människ a</i> , -an; -or, man (pl. people)	<i>Swenske</i> (see <i>svensk</i>), Swede
<i>social</i> , -t; -a, social	<i>intellektuell</i> , -t; -a, intellectual	<i>Hålländske</i> (see <i>holländsk</i>).
<i>ringa</i> (indecl.), slight	<i>kraft</i> , -en:-er, power, strength	<i>Hollander</i>
~ <i>eller ingen</i> , little or no	<i>historiker</i> , -n; -, historian	<i>woro</i> (<i>voro</i> , see <i>vara</i>), were
<i>kännedom</i> , -en, knowledge	<i>åsikt</i> , -en; -er, opinion	<i>et</i> (see <i>ett</i>), a
<i>särskilt</i> , especially	<i>pionjär</i> , -en;-er, pioneer	<i>fattig</i> , -t; -a, poor
<i>före</i> , before	<i>uppfostran</i> (indecl.), education	<i>ringa</i> (indecl.), humble
<i>ankomst</i> , -en;-er, arrival	<i>försumma</i> I, neglect	<i>okunning</i> , -t; -a, ignorant
<i>skriva</i> , <i>skrev</i> , <i>skrivit</i> , write	<i>åstad komma</i> , -kom;-kommit, achieve, produce	<i>förstånd</i> , -et, ignorance
<i>upplysning</i> , -en;-ar, information, enlightenment	<i>relativ</i> , -t; -a, relative	<i>föda</i> IIa, bear, give birth to
<i>tvistighet</i> , -en; -er, dispute (pl. differences)	~ <i>litet</i> , relatively little	~ up, bring up, raise
<i>nämna</i> IIa, mention	<i>vid tiden för</i> , at the time of	<i>at</i> (see <i>att</i>), that
<i>intet</i> , nothing	<i>andra</i> (see <i>annan</i>), others	<i>landsens</i> (archaic def. form
~ <i>om</i> , ~ about	<i>bestyrka</i> IIb, confirm	for <i>landets</i>), of the country
<i>hurudan</i> , -t; -a, what kind(s) of	<i>uttaland e</i> , -et; -en, statement	<i>inföding</i> , -en;-ar, native
<i>hus</i> , -et; -, house	<i>sju</i> , seven	<i>hwarken</i> (see <i>varken</i>), neither
<i>ha(v)a</i> , have	<i>verka</i> I, act	<i>skrifwa</i> (see <i>skriva</i>), write
~ <i>på sig</i> , wear	<i>själasörjar e</i> , -en;-ar, spiritual guide	<i>ock</i> , also, too
<i>vi skulle vilja veta</i> , we should like to know	<i>församling</i> , -en; -ar, congregation	<i>ganska få</i> , very few
<i>beskriva</i> , <i>beskrev</i> , be-	<i>böra</i> , borde bort, ought	<i>skickelig</i> (see <i>skicklig</i> ,
<i>skrivit</i> , describe	<i>nägorlunda</i> , fairly	-t; -a), skilled, trained
<i>återigen</i> , again	<i>underrätta d</i> , -t; -de, informed	<i>ambet e</i> , -et;-en, office
<i>söka</i> IIb, seek	<i>fälla</i> IIa, fell, cause to fall	<i>regering</i> , -en; -ar, government
~ <i>efter</i> , look for	~ <i>ett omdöme</i> , make a statement	<i>angå</i> , <i>angick</i> , <i>angingo</i> ;
<i>förgäves</i> , in vain	<i>smickrande</i> , flattering	<i>angått</i> , concern
<i>faktum</i> , <i>fakta</i> , fact	<i>omdöme</i> , -t; -n, opinion, judgment	<i>svår</i> , -t; -a, hard, difficult
<i>följaktligen</i> , consequently	<i>utgiva</i> , -gav, -gåvo; -givit, publish	<i>fastställa</i> IIa, determine
<i>mening</i> , -en;-ar, opinion	<i>bok</i> , -en; böcker, book	<i>göra</i> , gjorde, gjort, do, make
<i>ganska</i> , quite	<i>i sin 1759 utgivna bok</i> , in his book (which was)	<i>vid sidan av</i> , besides
<i>skiljaktig</i> , -t; -a, divided	<i>published in 1759.</i>	<i>själ</i> , -en;-ar, soul
<i>det gäller</i> (see <i>gälla</i>), it is a matter of	<i>wisste</i> (visste, see <i>veta</i>), know	<i>ans</i> , -en, care
<i>framställning</i> , -en;-ar, presentation	<i>wärt</i> (värt, see <i>vår</i>), our	<i>rykt</i> , -en, cultivation
<i>karakterisera</i> I, characterize	<i>föga</i> , scarcely	<i>förmmedla</i> I, impart
<i>enkel</i> , -t; <i>enkla</i> , simple	<i>hwad</i> (see <i>vad</i>), what	<i>präst</i> , -en;-er, minister
<i>idog</i> , -t;-a, industrious	<i>Schola</i> (see <i>skola</i>), school	<i>stödja</i> (sig), stödde, stött,
<i>mena</i> I, contend, opine	<i>war</i> (var, see <i>vara</i>), was	IIa, base one's opinion
<i>lida</i> , led, lidit, suffer		<i>hypotes</i> , -en;-er, hypothesis
<i>gruvlig</i> , -t;-a, grievous		<i>det gives</i> (impersonal see <i>giva</i>), there is (are)
<i>sakna</i> I, lack		<i>anledning</i> , -en; -ar, cause, reason
<i>sådan</i> , -t;-na, such		<i>uträtta</i> I, accomplish
		<i>i den vägen</i> , in that respect
		<i>plan</i> , -en;-er, plan
		<i>lägga</i> , lade, lagt, lay
		<i>uppförand e</i> , -et, erection
		<i>underhåll</i> , -et; -, maintenance
		<i>kyrk a</i> , -an;-or, church

<i>skolhus, -et; -.</i> schoolhouse	<i>tjäna I, serve</i>	and Biblical History
<i>senare, later</i>	<i>få ~, had to serve</i>	<i>undervisningsämne, -t; -n.</i>
<i>de ~, the latter</i>	<i>undervisning, -en, instruction</i>	subject taught
<i>kommo aldrig längre än på,</i>	<i>förekomma, -kom; kommit, occur</i>	<i>för övrigt, besides</i>
<i>never got further than on</i>	<i>klockar[e]. -en; -, sacristan</i>	<i>torde det (see töra),</i>
<i>papper, -et; -.</i> paper	<i>fungera I, function</i>	<i>it is likely</i>
<i>boningshus, -et; -.</i> dwelling	<i>lärar[e]. -en; -, teacher</i>	<i>särdeles, particularly</i>
<i>få, fick, fingo, fått,</i>	<i>innanläsning, -en; -, reading</i>	<i>behov, -et; -.</i> desire, urge
<i>receive, be permitted</i>	<i>kristendom, -en; Catechism,</i>	<i>jämförelsevis, comparatively</i>

D. QUESTIONS

§212. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. Hur länge hade svenskarna varit där när William Penn landsteg vid Delaware-flodens strand?
2. Hur utbredd fann han befolkningen vara?
3. Av vilka bestod denna befolkning?
4. Varför har man numera en detaljerad bild av den svenska kolonien?
5. Hur står det till med vår kunskap om de inre förhållandena?
6. Vad ger Printz upplysning om?
7. Hur karakteriserade Penn svenskarna?
8. Vad skriver Ferris om dem?

E. EXERCISES

I

§213. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. När --(he) landsteg där hade --(they) redan --(been) i landet i över fyrtio --(years).
2. --(I) fann --(it) mer eller mindre bebyggd-
3. Tack vare --(him) ha --(we) numera --(a) detaljera- bild av --(the) svensk- kolonien- grundläggning.
4. --(it) --(past ind. of bestå) huvudsakligen av svensk- , finländ- , engelsm- , och holländ- .
5. Nämnde --(you, familiar) något --(about) det?
6. --(she) skriver att --(they) ej visste --(where) --(you, formal) var.
7. --(they) fällde mycket smickrande omdöme- om --(us).
8. Vad --(her) --(pres. indic. of beträffa) så är det svår- att fastställa vad som gjordes.
9. Det står --(less) väl --(what prepos.?) med --(you, familiar) och --(me).
10. --(I) gav --(you) upplysning om tvistigheter- med engelsmän- (def. pl.).

II

§214. Illustrate by sentences and explain every possible construction with the following verbs: *bebygga, bestå, omnämna, utgöva, fastställa*.

F. COMPOSITION

§215. Translate into Swedish:

1. When they landed in the state of Pennsylvania he had been there for over 40 years.
2. We found it (n.) more or less inhabited by Swedes and Englishmen.
3. I have now a detailed picture of the founding of the Swedish colony, thanks to them.
4. It consisted mostly of Swedes, Finlanders, Hollanders and Englishmen.
5. Didn't he mention something about it (n.) to you (familiar)?
6. We wrote them that you were there.
7. His opinion of us was very flattering.
8. He gave you (formal) and me full information about the controversies.
9. How does it (n.) concern her?
10. You (formal) wrote them that she had met us.

LESSON XIII

A. GRAMMAR

Reflexive Verbs. Compound Verbs.

§216. Any verb in the Swedish language that uses a personal pronoun reflexively, i.e., as its object (dative or accusative), is called a reflexive verb. Ex. *Han anser sig väl underrättad.* He considers himself well informed. *Generalen förvärvade sig* (dat.) *folkets ynnest* (acc.) The general gained (for himself) the favor of the people.

All transitive verbs in the language, the subject of which is capable of directing the action of the verb upon itself (the subject) can be used reflexively. Reflexive verbs are used much more extensively in Swedish than in English. They are divided into two groups:

1. *Occasionally reflexive verbs.* Ex. *Han skadade sig*, he hurt himself. *Människan bör glömma sig själv.* The human being ought to forget himself (keep the ego in the background).

In very many instances the English idiom differs from the Swedish. Compare also French and German usage: French *se lever*, German *sich erheben* and Swedish *resa sig*, all meaning to *raise oneself*, but the English expression is merely to *rise* or to *get up*. The student should, therefore, not translate literally but give in every case the correct English rendering of the Swedish reflexive. *Förkyla sig* means in Swedish to *over-chill oneself*; in English it means to *catch a cold*; *gifta sig* (*med*) to *get married*, to *wed*; *erinra sig*, to *remember* (*recall*), etc. Other examples: *Flickan skar sig i fingret.* The girl cut her finger. *Han ångrade sig.* He repented. *Akta dig för hunden!* Look out for the dog! In other cases the usage may correspond: *att tvätta sig*, to *wash oneself*; *kläda sig*, to *dress oneself*; *lägga sig*, to *lay oneself down* = to *lie down*.

2. Always reflexive verbs. Ex. *misstaga sig*, to be mistaken; *föriura sig*, to get excited, etc. *Vi får inte förhasta oss*. We must not be in too great a hurry. *Han befinner sig nu i Förenta staterna*. He is at present in the United States. *Vi begav oss i väg tidigt*. We departed (set out) early. *Det begav sig att...* It came to pass (happened) that... *Mannen slog sig ned i gräset*. The man sat down on the grass. *Nu dummade jag mig!* Now I made a blunder (made a fool of myself)!

THE REFLEXIVE VERB

Singular

Plural

Present Indicative

1. jag tvättar mig, I wash myself	vi tvätta oss, we wash ourselves
2. du " dig, thou washest thyself	vi tvätten eder, ye " yourselves
ni " er, you wash yourself	ni tvätta er, you " "
han " sig, he washes himself	de tvätta sig they " themselves
hon " " she washes herself	
den " " it washes itself	
det " " it washes itself	

Past Indicative

jag tvättade mig, I washed myself, etc.	vi tvättade oss, we washed ourselves, etc.
--	---

Future Indicative

jag skall(kommer att)tvätta mig, etc. I shall wash myself	vi skola(komma att)tvätta oss, etc. we shall wash ourselves, etc.
--	--

Present Perfect

jag har tvättat mig, I have washed myself, etc.	vi ha(va) tvättat oss, we have washed ourselves, etc.
--	--

Past Perfect

jag hade tvättat mig, I had washed myself, etc.	vi hade tvättat oss, we had washed ourselves, etc.
--	---

Future Perfect

jag skall(kommer att)ha(va) tvättat mig, I shall have washed myself, etc.	vi skola(komma att) ha(va) tvättat oss, we shall have washed ourselves, etc.
--	---

Conditional I

jag skulle tvätta mig, I should wash myself, etc.	vi skulle tvätta oss, we should wash ourselves, etc.
--	---

Conditional II

jag skulle ha(va) tvättat mig, I should have washed myself, etc.	vi skulle ha(va) tvättat oss, we should have washed ourselves, etc.
---	--

Imperative

1st Pers. tvätton vi oss, let's wash ourselves
låt(om) oss tvätta oss, let us wash ourselves, etc.

2nd Pers. tvätta (du) dig, wash thyself	tvätten eder, wash (ye) yourselves, etc.
tvätta (ni) er, wash yourself	tvätta (ni) er, wash yourselves, etc.

	<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Participle</i>
Pres.	(att) <i>tvätta sig</i> , to wash oneself	Pres. <i>tvättande mig</i> , washing myself, etc.
Perf.	(att) <i>ha(va) tvättat sig</i> , to have washed oneself	
Fut.	(att) <i>skola (komma att) tvätta sig</i> , to be about to wash oneself	Supine (jag har) <i>tvättat (mig, etc.)</i> , I have washed myself, etc.

COMPOUND VERBS

There are two kinds of compound verbs, or verb compounds: *inseparable* and *separable*.

INSEPARABLE VERB COMPOUNDS

§217. Inseparable verb compounds have the following prefixes which are not to be separated from the verb: *be-*, *bi-*, *ent-*, *er-*, *för-*, *gen-* [je:n], *här-*, *miss-*, *sam-*, *um-*, *und-*, *van-*, *veder-*, *å-*.

Note 1. Verb compounds of which the first member is a noun are generally inseparable. Ex. *korsfästa*, to crucify, pres. ind. *korsfäster*, past indic. *korsfäste*, pres. perf. *har korsfäst*. Cf. also *landsätta*, to land (put ashore); *nagelfara*, to scrutinize; *rädfråga*, to consult; *bönhöra*, to grant someone's petition.

Note 2. If the noun is compounded with a preposition, for instance *i in i land*; *å in å sido*, etc., such compound prefixes may be separated from the verb. Ex. *åsidosätta*, to set aside; *jag sätter åsido*, *satte åsido*, *har satt åsido*, etc. The present and past participles of such verb compounds are always inseparable when used as attributive adjectives. Ex. *det ådagalagda nitet*, the manifested zeal; *den landsatte passageraren*, the landed passenger. When equal to a subordinate clause, or when used as predicate terms, they are occasionally separable: *satta i land* (= *när vi hade blivit satta i land*) *vid kajen*, *skyndade vi...* Landed at the quay, we hastened... *Våra saker ha blivit satta i land*. Our things have been put ashore.

SEPARABLE VERB COMPOUNDS

§218. *Adjective prefixes*. Adjectives when so used sometimes form separable verb compounds. Ex. *friköpa*, to effect a ransom, past indic. *friköpte* or *köpte fri*; pres. perf. *har frikört* or *har köpt fri*. But note that *frikalla*, to acquit, cannot be used separably. Many other adjective prefixes are inseparable. Ex. *blottställa*, to expose; *fullfölja*, to follow up; *godkänna*, to approve; *brådmogna*, to ripen prematurely, etc.

Note. When the adjective prefix is separable, it functions as a predicate adjective or as an adverb. Ex. *blankslipa*, to grind so as to produce a polish. *Han slipade ytan blank*. He ground the axe to a polish. In the same manner: *finhacka*, to chop up into small (fine) pieces; *vitmåla*, to paint white; *renskriva*, to make a clean copy; *högakta*, to esteem highly, etc.

§219. *Adverb and Preposition prefixes*. These form both separable and inseparable compounds. Separable verb compounds of this class often change their meaning when the prefix follows the verb.

1. Separable, but usually with no difference in meaning. Ex. *föregå* [fœ'rəgo'] and *gå före* [gœ fœ're'] to precede; *genomläsa* [je'nomlæ'sa] and *läsa genom* [læ'sa' ge'nœm'] to read through; *fräntaga* [frœn'ta'ga] and *taga från* [taga frœn:] to take away from; *avhugga* [a'vhug'a] and *hugga av* [hug'a a:v] to cut off, etc.

2. Separable and with difference in meaning. The figurative sense obtains when the verb and the prefix are not separated; the literal when the verb and prefix are separated.

<i>Figurative sense</i>	<i>Literal sense</i>
<i>avgå</i> [a'vgo'] to resign	<i>gå av</i> [gœ a:v] to break
<i>anlägga</i> [an'leg'a] to establish, organize	<i>lägga an</i> [lega an:] to aim
<i>framhålla</i> [fram'hol'a] to point out	<i>hålla fram</i> [hola fram:] to stretch forth
<i>underhålla</i> [un'derhol'a] to entertain	<i>hålla under</i> [hola un;dœr] to hold beneath
<i>framgå</i> [fram'go'] to become evident	<i>gå fram</i> [gœ fram:] to go forth
<i>avbryta</i> [a'vbry'ta] to discontinue, end (a conversation)	<i>bryta av</i> [bryta a:v] to break off (a stick)

- Note 1. The stress falls on the prefix; if it be a phrase, it falls on the noun. *be-*, *ent-*, *för-*, constitute exceptions. They are not subject to accentuation.
- Note 2. Do not confuse *för-*, the inseparable prefix and the adverb *före-*. Ex. *fördraga* [fœgrœ:ga], *fördrog* [fœgrœ:g], etc., to endure; *föredraga* [fœ'rœdra'ga], *föredrog* [fœ'rœdrœ:g], etc., to prefer, execute.
- Note 3. Care should be taken not to confuse an affix* with a preposition introducing a phrase. The affix is accented; the preposition very rarely. Ex. *Han bröt av brödet och åt*. He broke a piece off the bread and ate. *Han bröt av brödet* [han brœt a:v brœdet], with principal sentence stress on the separable prefix means: He broke the loaf in two.

§220. Synopsis of the Separable Verb compound *omtala*, *tala om*, to relate, in the indicative, conditional and imperative moods:

	<i>Inseparable</i>	<i>Separable</i>
Present	jag omtalar [o'm'ta'lar], etc.	jag talar om [talar o:m:], etc.
Past	" omtalade	" talade om
Future	" kommer att omtala	" kommer att tala om
Pres. Perf.	" har omtalat	" har talat om
Past. Perf.	" hade omtalat	" hade talat om
Fut. Perf.	" kommer att ha(va) omtalat	" kommer att ha(va) talat om
Cond. I	" skulle omtala	" skulle tala om
Cond. II	" skulle ha(va) omtalat	" skulle ha(va) talat om
Imperative	omtala omtalen	lät(om) oss tala om talen om

S-Passive

Present	omtalas	talas om
Past	omtalades	talades om
Future	kommer att omtalas	kommer att talas om
Pres. Perf.	har omtalats	har talats om
Past Perf.	hade omtalats	hade talats om
Fut. Perf.	kommer att omtalas	kommer att talas om
Cond. I	skulle omtalas	skulle talas om
Cond. II	skulle ha(va) omtalats	skulle ha(va) talats om

Periphrastic Passive

Present	blir omtalad	Pres. Perf.	har blivit omtalad
Past	blev (vart) omtalad	Past Perf.	hade blivit omtalad
Future	kommer att bli omtalad	Fut. Perf.	kommer att ha(va) blivit omtalad
Cond. I	skulle bli omtalad	Cond. II	skulle ha(va) blivit omtalad

Note. The periphrastic passive, formed with the past participle, has no loosely attached forms. This means, in other words, that in the past participle the components are, with few exceptions, closely attached (= inseparable) in all types of compound verbs. While we write: *Jag tycker (tyckte, har alltid tyckt) om honom* I like (liked, have always liked) him, the past participle must have the form *omtyckt*. Ex. *Han (är, var, blir, etc.) omtyckt.* He is (was, etc.) liked.

The supine does not show this peculiarity. Ex. *Han har brutit av käppen.* He has broken the cane in two. *Han har (hade redan) avbrutit samtalet.* He has (had already) discontinued the conversation. *

B. READING SELECTION

Om svenskarna vid Delaware (cont.)

Efter William Penns ankomst 1682 gick det av allt att döma raskt ut för med spillrorna av den lilla svenska kolonien i ödemarken. Om man kan sätta tro till de historiska källorna, led folket ingen lekamlig nød. Men det saknade andlig spis, ty gamle pastor Lock hade slutat sina dagar 1688, och Fabritius hade varit blind och oförmögen under ett tiotal år före sitt frånfälle 1693.

Det var vid denna tid som kolonisterna anropade fosterlandet om hjälp. Konung Karl XI bönhörde dem. De fingo de begärda böckerna och dessutom tre prästmän: Erik Björk, Andreas Rudman och Jonas Aureen. I och med deras ankomst börjar ett nytt skede i svenskarnas vid Delaware liv, verksamhet och strävanden att bevara sin nationella karaktär. Heliga Trefaldighetskyrkan i Wilmington och Gloria Dei i Philadelphia, blev anmärkningsvärdta andliga centra vid sekelskiftet 1699-1700. Andra kyrkor tillkommo. I dessa, samt i hemmen och skolhusen, som uppfördes senare, undervisades de unga. Fosterlandet hade, när förbindelserna slutligen avskuros 1782, sänt ett 40-tal präster till Delaware. Deras och de svenskfödda lärarnas arbete blev fruktbarande. Men någon möjlighet fanns ju icke att förhindra svenskarnas sammansättning med den talrikare engelsktalande befolkningen.

* See Elmquist: Swedish Grammar, §230, 3, Note 1.

Genom lagstiftning av den 7 februari 1795 förlorade Heliga Trefaldighetskyrkan sin svenska karaktär och blev engelsk, efter att ha varit svensk egendom i nära 100 år. På samma sätt gick det med de andra kyrkorna på båda sidor av Delaware-floden. Kort efter revolutionens utbrott torde svenskan ha upphört att användas officiellt, men bland folket fortlevde den utan tvivel sporadiskt. Det troliga är att svenska språket aldrig upphört att klinga vid Delaware sedan den dag i mars månad 1638 då de första kolonisterna landstego på klippan vid nuvarande Wilmington.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

<i>gå utför</i> , decline	<i>bönhöra</i> IIa, grant a	<i>möjlighet</i> , -en; -er,
<i>av allt</i> , from all	person's supplication	possibility
(appearances)	<i>begår d</i> . -t; -da, requested	<i>förhindra</i> I, prevent
<i>döma</i> IIa, judge	<i>dessutom</i> , besides, in	<i>sammansmältnings</i> , -en; -ar,
<i>raskt</i> , rapidly	addition	fusion
<i>spillr a</i> . -an; -or, wreckage	<i>präst man</i> , -nen; <i>prästmän</i> ,	<i>talrik</i> , -t; -a, numerous
<i>ödemark</i> , -en; -er, wilderness	clergyman	<i>engelsktalande</i> , English-
<i>gick det av allt att döma</i> ,	<i>skede</i> , -t; -n, phase	speaking
<i>raskt utför med spillrorna</i>	<i>verksamhet</i> , -en; -er, activity	<i>lagstiftning</i> , -en; -ar,
<i>av den lilla svenska kolonien</i>	<i>strävand e</i> , -et; -en, endeavor	legislation
<i>i ödemarken</i> , To judge from	<i>bevara</i> I, preserve	<i>februari</i> , February
all appearances the disrupted	<i>nationell</i> , -t; -a, national	<i>förlora</i> I, lose
little Swedish colony in the	<i>karaktär</i> , -en; -er, character	<i>efter att ha varit</i> ,
wilderness declined rapidly.	<i>Heliga Trefaldighetskyrkan</i> ,	after having been
<i>sätta</i> , satte, satt, put, place	The Church of the Holy Trinity	<i>egendom</i> , -en; -ar, property
— <i>tro till</i> , have	<i>anmärkningsvärd</i> , -t; -da,	<i>på samma sätt</i> , in the
faith in, believe	noteworthy	same manner
<i>historisk</i> , -t; -a, historical	<i>centrum</i> (def. <i>centret</i>);	<i>kort</i> , shortly
<i>käll a</i> , -an; -or, source	pl. <i>centra</i> , center	<i>revolution</i> , -en; -er,
<i>led</i> (see <i>lida</i>), suffered	<i>sekelskifte</i> , -t; -n,	outbreak
<i>lekamlig</i> , -t; -a, bodily	turn of the century	<i>upphöra</i> II, cease
<i>nöd</i> , -en, need	<i>tillkomma</i> , -kom; -kommit,	<i>använda</i> II, använde,
<i>det</i> (<i>folket</i>), it (the people)	come into existence	använt, use
<i>spis</i> , -en, food	<i>uppföra</i> IIa, erect, build	<i>officiellt</i> , officially
<i>pastor</i> , -n; -er, pastor	<i>undervisa</i> I, instruct	<i>fortleva</i> IIa, -levde,
<i>blin d</i> , -t; -da, blind	<i>de unga</i> (see <i>ung</i>), the	-levat, continue, live on
<i>oförmög en</i> , -et; -na,	children (the young)	<i>sporadiskt</i> , sporadically
incapable	<i>förbindels e</i> , -en; -er,	<i>trolig</i> , -t; -a, probable
<i>tiotal</i> , -et; -, decade	connection, relation	<i>klinga</i> I, ring, sound
<i>under ett — år</i> ,	<i>avskära</i> , <i>avskar</i> , <i>avskuro</i> ;	<i>sedan</i> , since
for about ten years	<i>avskurit</i> , cut off, sever	<i>klipp a</i> . -an; -or, cliff
<i>frånfälle</i> , -t; -n demise	<i>sända</i> IIa, <i>sände</i> , <i>sänt</i> , send	<i>månad</i> , -en; -er, month
<i>anropa</i> I, implore	<i>svenskfö dd</i> , -tt; -dda,	— mars —, in the
— <i>om</i> , — for	Swedish-born	month of March
<i>fosterland</i> , -et; -, native land	<i>fruktbärande</i> , fruitful	

D. QUESTIONS

§221. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. Ledo svenskarna lekamlig nöd?
2. Varför saknade de andlig spis?
3. Vad gjorde kolonisterna för att avhjälpa bristen?
4. Vad fingo de från Sverige?
5. Vad blev följdten av de tre nya prästmännens ankomst?
6. Vilka voro de andliga centra vid sekelskiftet 1699-1700?
7. Var undervisades de unga?
8. Hur många präster hade Sverige sänt år 1782? .
9. När förlorade Heliga Trefaldighetskyrkan sin svenska karaktär?
10. Upphörde svenskans alldelens efter revolutionen?
11. Vad är mest troligt beträffande svenska språkets historiska kontinuitet vid Delaware-stranden?

E. EXERCISES

I

§222. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. Efter -- (his) ankomst gick det rask- utför med spillror- av -- (the) svensk- koloni- (def. sing.) och --(it) förlorade -- (what pronoun?) i ödemark- (def. sing.)
2. Enligt -- (the) historisk- källor- led folk- (def. sing.) icke lekamlig nöd, ehuru det måste helt förlita (what pronoun?) på sig själv-.
3. Förbindelser- med fosterland- avskuros slutlig- 1782.
4. I allmänet visade --(what pronoun?) --(the) svenskfödd- lärarna- arbeta fruktbarande.
5. --(shortly) efter revolutionen- utbrott torde svenska- (def. sing.) ha upphört att användas mera officiell-.
6. Vi befunno --(what pronoun?) plötsligt framför Gloria Dei kyrk-.
7. --(the) trolig- är att svensk- språk- --(never) upphört att klinga vid Delaware.
8. De gjorde --(their) arbete rask- (comp.) än vi.
9. I kyrkor- (def. pl.) samt i hem- (def. pl.) och skolhus- (def. pl.) --(which) uppfördes --(later), undervisades de ung-.
10. Jag erinrade --(what pronoun?) då, att --(their) strävande- (indef. pl.) började --(comp. of blygsamt) än vår-.

II

§223. Conjugate the following verbs in Swedish in the present indic., past indic., present perfect and past perfect:

lose oneself, trust in oneself, appear, be (find oneself), remember.

F. COMPOSITION

§224. Translate into Swedish:

1. It appeared that the little Swedish colony in the wilderness quickly went down-hill.
2. He remembered that they suffered physically, but later he did not say a word about it.
3. Last Sunday he received the requested books.
4. The Swedish colony endured longer than the English one, but finally lost itself in the wilderness.
5. They did their very best to preserve the national character.
6. The longer* they worked, the better* they succeeded.
7. You were mistaken because later that church lost its Swedish character.
8. It (common gender) was no longer used officially.
9. He evidently was over-hasty, for he was quite wrong about it.
10. Finally, the relations were definitely severed.

LESSON XIV

A. GRAMMAR

Deponents. The Impersonal Verb. The Expletive "det".

§225. *Deponents.* The term *Deponent verb* is used of verbs, the passive of which has an active meaning. In Swedish it is convenient to distinguish between *Deponent forms* and *Deponent verbs*.

1. By Deponent form is meant the *s-passive* with active meaning of any verb with active and passive voice. Deponent forms are used absolutely, i.e., without an object expressed. Most of these *s-forms* are of the following type. Ex. *Han nyps*. He pinches (i.e. is in the habit of pinching). *Den där hästen sparkas*. That horse is in the habit of kicking (people). *Nässlan bränns*. The nettle stings (burns anyone that touches it). *Katten rivas*. The cat scratches. *Ni narras väl inte?* You aren't joking, I trust?

2. By Deponent verbs is meant verbs that possess only the passive voice. This *s-passive* always has an active meaning. Many of these verbs are transitive and take an object. Examples of such verbs are: *minnas*, to recall; *hoppas*, to hope; *andas*, to breathe; *åldras*, to age, grow old; *lyckas*, to succeed; *gnabbas*, to bicker; *brottas*, to wrestle. Ex. *Jag minns honom väl*. I remember him well. *Här kan man andas frisk luft*. Here one has (you have, anybody has) an opportunity of breathing fresh air. *Det vill jag hoppas*. I hope so.

Note 1. A number of deponent forms and a few deponent verbs are used in the plural with reciprocal force. Ex. *Hund och katt förlikas sällan*. Dogs and cats rarely get on well together. *Ofta slåss de*. They often fight.

* The correlatives *the - the*, used in English in sentences of this type, are rendered in Swedish by *ju (+ comparative) - dess*, *desto* or *ju (+ comparative)*. *Ju* introduces the subordinate clause; the adv. *dess*, etc., the main clause. The latter has inverted order.

Note 2. Passive and deponent present forms of verbs of the 2nd and 4th conjugations often differ in respect to the form of the ending. Ex. *Ängen släs*. The meadow is being mowed. *Pojkarna släss*. The boys are fighting. *Träden bites av*. The thread is to be bitten off. *Hunden bits*. The dog bites.

SYNOPSIS OF A DEONENT VERB

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Present Indicative</i>	
1. jag hoppas, I hope	vi hoppas, we hope
2. { du " thou hopest	{ I hoppens, ye hope
ni " you hope	{ ni hoppas, you hope
3. { han " he hopes	{ de hoppas, they hope
hon " she hopes	
den " it hopes	
det " it hopes	
<i>Past Indicative</i>	
jag hoppades, I hoped, etc.	vi hoppades, we hoped, etc.
<i>Future Indicative</i>	
jag skall (kommer att) hoppas, I shall hope, etc.	vi skola (komma att) hoppas, we shall hope, etc.
<i>Present Perfect</i>	
g har hoppats, I have hoped, etc.	vi ha(va) hoppats, we have hoped, etc.
<i>Past Perfect</i>	
g hade hoppats, I had hoped, etc.	vi hade hoppats, we had hoped, etc.
<i>Future Perfect</i>	
d skall(kommer att) ha(va) hoppats, I shall have hoped, etc.	vi skola (komma att) ha(va) hoppats, we shall have hoped, etc.
<i>Conditional I</i>	
jag skulle hoppas, I should hope, etc.	vi skulle hoppas we should hope, etc.
<i>Conditional II</i>	
jag skulle ha(va) hoppats, I should have hoped, etc.	vi skulle ha(va) hoppats we should have hoped, etc.
<i>Imperative</i>	
. { hoppas (du), hope (thou)	lät(om) oss hoppas, let us hope
hoppas (ni), hope (you)	{ hoppens (I), hope (ye) { hoppas (ni), hope (you)
<i>Infinitive</i>	
res. (att) hoppas, to hope	Pres. hoppande(s)*, hoping
rf. (att) ha(va) hoppats, to have hoped	Perf.*
ture (att) skola (komma att) hoppas, to be about to hope	Supine hoppats, hoped
<i>Participle</i>	

* Deponent verbs often have (in the literary language) a present participle ending in *-ande*. This form is used attributively. Ex. *en åldrande man*, an ageing man. When not attributive, it has the ending-*s*. Ex. *Minnandes sitt löfte, kom han...* Remembering his promise, he came...

- Occasionally the deponent verb may even have a past participle, e.g. *åldras*, to grow old; p.p. *en åldrad man*, an aged man.

§226.

LIST OF THE MOST COMMON DEONENT VERBS

<i>att andas</i> I (<i>ngt.</i>), to breathe	<i>att minnas</i> II (<i>ngn.</i>), to remember (recall)
" <i>avundas</i> I (<i>ngn., ngt.</i>), to envy	" <i>nalkas</i> I (<i>ngn.</i>), to approach (s.o.)
" <i>bitas, bets, betos, bitits</i> , to bite (as of animals)	" <i>retas</i> I (<i>med</i>), to tease (s.o.)
" <i>brottas</i> I, to wrestle	" <i>rivas, revs, revos, rivits</i> , to scratch (claw)
" <i>brås</i> (<i>på</i>) III, take after (s.o.) resemble	" <i>rådås</i> II (<i>för</i>), to dread (fear) s.th.
" <i>dagas</i> II, to dawn	" <i>skämmas</i> II (<i>för, över</i>), to be ashamed (of)
" <i>dväljas</i> II, to dwell	" <i>svettas</i> I, to sweat (perspire)
" <i>envisas</i> I, to persist (stubbornly) in	" <i>synas</i> II, to seem (appear)
" <i>fattas</i> , to lack	" <i>slåss</i> (<i>med</i>), <i>slogs, slogans, slagits</i> , to fight (with)
" <i>finnas, fanns, funnos, funnits</i> , to exist (to be at hand)	" <i>tyckas</i> II, to seem (methinks)
" <i>förträttas</i> I, to tire (weary of)	" <i>tåras</i> I, to fill with tears (as the eye)
" <i>gnabbas</i> I, to bicker	" <i>töras</i> II, to dare
" <i>harmas</i> I (<i>på</i> (<i>över</i>)), to feel indignant (against), at	" <i>vistas</i> I, to live (stay, reside)
" <i>hoppas</i> I (<i>ngt., på</i>), to hope (for)	" <i>umgås</i> (<i>med</i>), <i>-gicks, -gingos, -gätts</i> , to associate with (be friends with, be occupied with s.th.)
" <i>hämnas</i> I, to revenge	" <i>vredgas</i> I (<i>på</i>), to become wrathful, angry (at)
" <i>idas</i> II, to be too lazy to	" <i>vändas</i> I, to be in agony (writhe)
" <i>kivas</i> I (<i>om ngt., med ngn.</i>), to squabble (about)	" <i>vämjas</i> II (<i>med</i>), to be nauseated
" <i>kräkas</i> II, to vomit	" <i>väsnas</i> I, to make noise
" <i>latas</i> I, to be lazy (idle)	" <i>yvas</i> II (<i>över</i>), to boast (of, about; to be over-proud of)
" <i>lyckas</i> I (<i>med ngt.</i>), to succeed, (in s.th.)	" <i>äldras</i> , to become old, to age
" <i>lätsas</i> I (<i>ngt., att; som om</i>), to pretend	

§227. *The Impersonal Verb.* Some verbs, most of which designate natural phenomena, are used in the 3rd person only and have as a rule no other subject than the formal *det.* These verbs are designated *impersonal.*

§228. Classification of Impersonal Verbs.

1. Verbs that refer to natural phenomena:

det blixstrar, there is lightning
det haglar, it is hailing
det klarnar, it is clearing up
det snoär, it is snowing
det blåser, it is windy
det stormar, it is stormy

det ljusnar, it is growing light
det töär, it is thawing
det fryser, it is freezing
det åskar, it is thundering
det mulnar, it is becoming cloudy

Note. Not infrequently both the *real* and the *formal* subject occur in the same sentence. Ex. *Det faller regn (sno).* Rain (snow) is falling.

2. Other verbs refer to physical or mental states:

<i>det gläder mig.</i>	<i>det smärtar mig.</i>
I rejoice (I am so glad)	it grieves me
<i>det väcker i ryggen,</i> there is a pain in my back	<i>det gick omkring för honom,</i> his head was swimming

3. In a very large number of cases the formal subject represents the unnamed (unknown) subject (agent).

<i>det knackar,</i> there is a knock at the door	<i>det ringer,</i> the bells are tolling (ringing)
<i>det stampade och trampade,</i> there was stamping and tramping	<i>det rörde sig i buskarna,</i> something stirred in the bushes

4. In the case of many verbs, most intransitives included, the s-passive is used impersonally:

<i>det dansades hela natten,</i> there was dancing all night	<i>det springes och väsnas,</i> people are running about making noise
<i>det talas svenska, tyska och franska i familjen.</i> Swedish, German and French are spoken in the family.	

SYNOPSIS OF AN IMPERSONAL VERB

<i>Indicative</i>	<i>Subjunctive</i>
	<i>Present</i>
<i>det regnar,</i> it rains	<i>det regne, må regna,</i> it may rain
	<i>Past</i>
<i>det regnade,</i> it rained	(that) it rained The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.
	<i>Present Perfect</i>
<i>det har regnat,</i> it has rained	<i>det må (måtte) ha(va) regnat,</i> (that) it may have rained
	<i>Past Perfect</i>
<i>det hade regnat,</i> it had rained	(that) it had rained The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.
	<i>Future</i>
	<i>Future</i>
<i>det skall (kommer att) regna,</i> it will rain	<i>Conditional I</i>
<i>det skall (kommer att) ha(va) regnat,</i> it will have rained	<i>Conditional II</i>
	<i>Imperative</i>
	<i>lät det regna let it rain</i>

Infinitive

Pres. (att) regna, to rain	
Perf. (att) ha(va) regnat, to have rained	
Future (att) (komma att) regna, to be about to rain	

Participle

Pres. regnande, raining
Perf.
Supine regnat, rained

THE EXPLETIVE "DET" [dɛ:t] Cf. §62.

§229. Apart from the use of *det* as subject of impersonal verbs, it is also used as an expletive to anticipate the subject of the verb. In such cases *det* functions like English *there*. Contrary to French, German and English usage, the verb of the Swedish construction is always in the singular irrespective of the number of the logical subject. In other words, the verb agrees with the formal, and not with the real (logical) subject.

1. Ex. *Det var en gang en konung, som hade en fager dotter.* There was once upon a time a king who had a beautiful (fair) daughter. *Det bor många svenskar i staden Worcester.* There are many Swedes living in the city of Worcester. *Det syns ansikten bakom fönsterrutorna.* Faces appear (are visible) behind the window-panes.

Note also expressions like: *det finns*, there is, there are; *det gives*, there is, there are (cf. German *es gibt* and French *il y a*). *Det är* is more definite than *det finns*. Ex. *Det gives sanningar, som ej kunna jävas.* There are truths that cannot be challenged. *Det finns flera goda än onda människor i världen.* There are more good people in the world than wicked ones. *Det sprang några gossar genom trädgården.* Some boys ran through the garden. *Det gives en Gud.* There is a God. *Det är ett par herrar vid dörren.* There are a couple of gentlemen at the door.

2. Sometimes *det* is equal to an English pronoun: *it, that, he, she, they.* Ex. *Vad är det?* - *Det är en flygmaskin.* What is that? - It is an aeroplane. *Det är svårt för utländningen att uttala vissa ljud i svenska.* It is difficult for the foreigner to pronounce certain Swedish sounds. *Vem är den där mannen?* - *Det är en vän till mig.* Who is that man? - He is a friend of mine. *Vilka är de där herrarna?* - *Det är amerikaner.* Who are those gentlemen? - They are Americans.

3. Swedish *det* is equal to English *so*. Cf. German *es* and French *le*. Ex. *Jag är mycket trött.* - *Det är jag också.* I am very tired. - So am I. *Är professorn hemma?* - *Jag tror det.* Is the professor at home? - I think so. *Vem har sagt det?* - *Gosse sa det.* Who said that (*so*)? - The boy said that (*so*).

4. In many instances Swedish *det* has no English equivalent. Ex. *Har brevbäraren varit här ännu?* - *Ja, det har han inte.* Has the letter-carrier been here yet? - Yes, he has. (No, he has not). *Han tycker om att spela golf, men det gör inte jag.* He likes to play golf, but I don't. *Är detta möjligent herr Johansson?* - *Nej, det är det inte; han är borta.* Is it possibly Mr. Johansson? - No, it isn't; he is away from home. *Hurudant blir väderet i morgon, tror du?* - *Det vet jag inte.* What is the weather going to be like tomorrow? - That I do not know.

B. READING SELECTION

Gunnel Fatburshustru
 (Efter Verner von Heidenstam)

Vid den långa och svåra belägringen av Riga under svensk-ryska kriget i början av 1700-talet blev den svenska generalguvernören Erik Dahlberg nödsakad att skicka i väg alla de kvinnor, som bodde inom stadsmuren, då det inte var tillräckligt med proviant för både dem och soldaterna.

Den åttioåriga sierskan Gunnel Fatburshustru och hennes sonson, Jan trumpetaren, hade länge bott tillsammans i ett valv på Riga fästning, men nu hade Gunnel försvunnit och Jan bodde ensam i valvet. Det hände emellertid, att Jan ofta fann fållbänken båddad, då han kom hem på kvällen och en skål med möglad mat bredvid på stolen. Han förfärades då, ty han trodde att farmodern hade omkommit i snödrivorna och nu ångerfull över sin forna hårdhet gick igen utan ro. Men han blygdes att berätta något därom till sina kamrater.

Efter ett häftigt skjutande en dag återkommo spridda flockar av trötta och blödande, som nyss slagit fiendens anfall tillbaka. Efterst av dem alla gick en smal och orkeslös gubbe, som själv hade ett rött sabelhugg över bröstet, men som i sina armar mödosamt släpade framför sig en skjuten gosse. Det var Gunnel Fatburshustru och Jan trumpetaren.

Hon andades tungt och öppnade de stocknande ögonen. "Jag ville inte lämna pilten ensam i denna ondskans värld. Men eftersom jag pådrog karlakläder och natt och dag tjänade bland de andra på vallen, trodde jag, att jag utan orätt åtmannens bröd."

Soldaterna och officerarna sågo villrädig mot Erik Dahlberg, vilkens befallningar hon överträtt. Han stod lika inbunden och svårmodigt hård, och i hans hand darrade käppen och stötte mot stenläggningen.

Långsamt vände han sig mot bataljonen, och de tunna läpparna rörde sig. "Sänk fanornai!" sade han.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

<i>belägring</i> , -en; -ar, siege	<i>proviant</i> , -en; provisions	<i>hända</i> lla, happen
<i>Riga</i> , Riga	<i>både...och</i> , both...and	<i>emellertid</i> , however
<i>svensk-rysk</i> , -t; -a,	<i>soldat</i> , -en; -er, soldier	<i>fållbänk</i> , -en; -ar, folding bed
Swedish-Russian	<i>åttioårig</i> , -t; -a, eighty-	<i>bädda</i> d, -t; -de, made (of a bed)
<i>generalguvernör</i> , -en; -er,	<i>year-old</i>	<i>på kvällen</i> , in the evening
Governor General	<i>siersk a</i> , -an; -or, seeress	<i>skål</i> , -en; -ar, bowl
<i>nödsakad</i> , -t; -de, compelled	<i>son son</i> , -en; -söner, grandson	<i>möglad</i> , -t; -de, mouldy
<i>skicka</i> l, send	<i>trumpetare</i> , -en, trumpeter	<i>mat</i> , -en, food
~ i väg, send away	<i>valv</i> , -et; -, vault	<i>bredvid</i> , close by
<i>kvinna</i> , -an; -or, woman	<i>på Riga fästning</i> , in	<i>stol</i> , -en; -ar, chair
<i>stadsmur</i> , -en; -ar, city wall	the Riga fortress	<i>förfäras</i> I (dep.), be terrified
då, as, since, because	<i>försvinna</i> , försvann, försunno;	<i>farmoder</i> , -n; -mödrar,
<i>tillräcklig</i> , -t; -a, enough	försunnit, disappear	grandmother (paternal)

<i>omkomma, omkom, omkommit,</i>	<i>anfall, -et; -, attack</i>	<i>vall, -en; -ar, battlement</i>
perish	<i>efterst, last, hindmost</i>	<i>orätt, wrong</i>
<i>snödriv a, -an; -or, snowdrift</i>	<i>gick (see gå), walked</i>	<i>utan~ without</i>
<i>ångerfull, -t; -a, remorseful</i>	<i>smal, -t; -a, thin, lean</i>	<i>injustice (-by right)</i>
<i>forn, -t; -a, former</i>	<i>orkeslös, -t; -a, decrepit</i>	<i>ät (see äta), ate</i>
<i>härdhet, -en; -er, harsh-</i>	<i>gubb e, -en; -ar, old man</i>	<i>bröd, -et; -, bread</i>
<i>ness, severity</i>	<i>sabelhugg, -et; -, sabre-cut</i>	<i>officer, -(e)n; -are, officer</i>
<i>gå; gick, gingo; gått</i>	<i>bröst, -et; -, chest, breast</i>	<i>se; såg, ság; sett, look</i>
go, walk	<i>över~, across his ~</i>	<i>~ mot, look at</i>
<i>~igen, reappear</i>	<i>arm, -en; -ar, arm</i>	<i>villräiktig, irresolutely</i>
after death	<i>mödosamt, laboriously</i>	<i>vilkens (see vilken), whose</i>
<i>ro, -n, peace, rest</i>	<i>släpa I, drag</i>	<i>befallning, -en; -ar,</i>
<i>blygas IIa (dep.),</i>	<i>~ framför sig.</i>	<i>order, command</i>
feel ashamed	<i>~ before oneself</i>	<i>överträda IIa. -trädde,</i>
<i>berätta I, tell</i>	<i>skjut en, -et; -na,</i>	<i>trätt, disobey</i>
<i>därom, about it</i>	wounded, shot	<i>lika, just as</i>
<i>kamrat, -en; -er, comrade</i>	<i>hon, she</i>	<i>inbund en, -et; -na, reserved</i>
<i>efter, after</i>	<i>andas I (dep.), breathe</i>	<i>svärmodigt, gloomily</i>
<i>häftig, -t; -a, fierce</i>	<i>tungt, heavily</i>	<i>hård, -t; -a, severe</i>
<i>skjutande, -t, firing</i>	<i>slacknande, dulled</i>	<i>darra I, tremble</i>
<i>återkomma, -kom; -kommit,</i>	<i>vilja, ville, velat, want</i>	<i>stöta IIb, stötte, stött,</i>
return	<i>lämna I, leave</i>	<i>strike</i>
<i>spri dd, -tt; -dda, scattered</i>	<i>pilt, -en; -ar, lad</i>	<i>stenläggning, -en; -ar,</i>
<i>flock, -en; -ag, group</i>	<i>ondska, -n, evil, wickedness</i>	<i>stone pavement</i>
<i>blödande, bleeding</i>	<i>~s värld,</i>	<i>långsamt, slowly</i>
<i>som, who (which, that)</i>	<i>eftersom, since</i>	<i>vända (sig) IIa, turn</i>
<i>nyss, just</i>	<i>pådrag, -drog, -dragit,</i>	<i>bataljon, -en; -er, battalion</i>
<i>slå; slog, slogo; slagit,</i>	pull on, don	<i>tunn, tunt; -a, thin</i>
strike, beat	<i>karlakläder, men's clothing</i>	<i>läpp, -en; -ar, lip</i>
<i>~ tillbaka, repulse</i>	<i>natt, -en; nätt, night</i>	<i>sänka IIb, lower</i>
<i>fiend e, -en; -er, enemy</i>		<i>fan a, -an; -or, colors</i>

D. QUESTIONS

§230. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. När var det svensk-ryska kriget?
2. Vad blev generalguvernören nödsakad att göra?
3. Varför måste han göra detta?
4. vem var Gunnar Fatburs hustru?
5. vem var trumpetaren?
6. Vad fann Jan då han kom hem på kvällen?
7. Varför förfärades han?
8. Varför blygdes han?
9. Vilka hade slagit tillbaka fiendens anfall?
10. Vem kom efterst av dem alla?
11. Vad släpade gubben på?
12. Hur andades hon?
13. Vad saade hon till generalguvernören?
14. Varför sågo soldaterna och officerarna villräiktig mot Erik Dahlberg?
15. Vad saade generalguvernören?

E. EXERCISES

I

§231. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. Fiende- (def. sing.) --(past indic. of lyckas) därmed ty vid --(the) lång- och svår- belägring- av Riga mäste generalguvernören skicka i väg kvinnor- , som bodde inom stadsmur-
2. --(his) farmor var --(the) åttioårig- siersk- Gunnel Fatburshustru, --(who) --(past ind. of minnas) bara ondska.
3. Ofta fann Jan trumpetaren, att --(his) fällbänk --(was) bättad och han --(past ind. of hoppas) att farmoder- levde.
4. Skål- (indef. pl.) med möglad mat stodo på stol- (def. pl.).
5. Då trodde han att farmoder- omkommit i snödrivor- och gick igen men han --(past indic. of blygas) att berätta därom till --(his) kamrat- .
6. Spridd- flock- återkommo efter ett häftig- skjutande.
7. Hon --(past ind. of andas) tungt och släpade framför sig i sin- arm- en skjute- gosse.
8. Farmoder- --(past ind. of hoppas) skydda --(her) sonson --(and) tjänade därför dag och natt på vallar- .
9. Hon hade överträtt Erik Dahlberg- befallning- .
10. Generalguvernören stötte käpp- mot stenläggning- och de tunn- läpp- rörde sig: "Sank fanor- !" sade han.

II

§232. Conjugate the following verbs in Swedish in the present indicative, past indicative, present perfect and past perfect:

succeed, remember, hope, be ashamed, breathe

F. COMPOSITION

§233. Translate into Swedish:

1. The siege of Riga was long and severe during the Swedish-Russian war in the beginning of the 18th century.
2. The governor general was forced to send away the women.
3. Among them was the old seeress Gunnel Fatburshustru.
4. The decrepit woman had disappeared and Jan lived alone in the fortress.
5. When he came home in the evenings, he often found bowls with mouldy food on the chairs.
6. Then he was terrified, for he thought that his grandmother had perished in the snowdrifts.
7. One day, after a fierce battle (firing), small groups of tired and bleeding soldiers returned to the city.
8. Last of all walked a lean old man, laboriously supporting a wounded boy.
9. The soldiers looked perplexed at Erik Dahlberg, whose commands she had disobeyed.
10. The thin lips moved spasmodically: "Lower the colors!", he said.

LESSON XV

A. GRAMMAR

Auxiliary Verbs

§234. In Lesson VIII the student's attention was called to the formation and the use of the tenses of the indicative. In subsequent lessons (IX - XII) he has been referred to the model verbs of the weak and the strong conjugations. In the study of the form and function of the auxiliary verbs it is suggested that the individual paradigms of these verbs be consulted. See §374, ff.

As the auxiliary verbs present many irregularities, the following forms are given for ready reference.

<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Present Indicative</i>		<i>Past Indicative</i>		<i>Supine</i>
	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	
ha(va)*, have	har	ha(va)	hade [had'ə̄]	hade	haft
skola, shall	skall [ska]	skola	skulle	skulle	skolat
	må, may [mo:]	må			
	mätte, may [mot'ə̄]	mätte	mätte	mätte	
	mäste [mos'tə̄]	mäste	mäste	mäste	mäst
	must, be obliged				
	mände, may	mände	mände	mände	
kunna, can, be able	kan	kunna	kunde	kunde	kunnat
vilja, will, want	vill	vilja	ville	ville	velat
böra, ought	bör	böra	borde [bɔ:də̄]	borde	bort [bɔ:t̄]
	tör be likely to	töra	torde	torde	
töras, dare	törs	töras	tordes [tɔ:də̄s]	tordes	torts [tɔ:t̄s]
	läär is likely to;	läära is said to			
vara*, be	är	äro	var	voro	varit
varda, become	varder	varda	vart	vordo [vɔ:r'də̄]	pp. vorden*
bliva, become	bli(ve)r	bliva	blev	blevo	blivit
läata*, to let, allow, cause	läter	läata	läät	läto	lätit
få*, to get, be permitted	får	få	fick	fingo	fått

* Also independent verb.

* There is no supine form. See §386.

§235. Auxiliary verbs are of three kinds:

- a) *Temporal auxiliaries* by means of which compound tenses are formed: *ha(va)*, *skola*.
- b) *Modal auxiliaries* which serve to periphrase verbal forms (subjunctive, optative, imperative): *skola*, *må*, *mätte*, *mäste*, *mände*, *kunna*, *vilja*, *böra*, *tör*, *lära*.
- c) *Passive-forming auxiliaries* which serve to periphrase passive forms: *vara*, *varda*, *bli(va)*.

Note 1. Other verbs are used occasionally as modal auxiliaries. Ex. (*icke*) *göta* [jit'a:] not to care to do a thing, (*icke*) *idas*, to be too indolent to do something.

Note 2. The modal auxiliaries lack subjunctive forms and are partly defective in other respects. See paradigms §374, ff.

AUXILIARY VERBS

§236. *Ha(va)*. As has been indicated in Lessons VIII - XII, *ha(va)* together with the supine, forms the tenses of the perfect system. For the conjugation of *ha(va)* see §374.

Note. As an independent verb, *ha(va)* means to possess. Ex. *Jag har (äger) ett hus*. I have (possess) a house.

§237. *Skola* See §375. This verb originally signified duty or obligation. There is in Swedish nothing corresponding to the distinction made in English between *shall* and *will* in the different persons. *Jag (du, ni, han, hon, den, det) skall* render English *I shall*, *you (he, she, it) will*, etc.

1. *Skola* + the present infinitive (occasionally the perfect infinitive) is used to form the future and the future perfect tenses, but *skola* so used does not, as a rule, express pure futurity, but rather decision, determination, command or the like. *Jag skall resa i morgon* means in many instances: circumstances are such that I am called upon to leave tomorrow. Pure futurity would be expressed by *komma + att + the infinitive of the principal verb*. Ex. *Jag kommer att resa i morgon*. I shall leave tomorrow. *I morgon komma vi att ha bott här i staden i tio år*. Tomorrow we shall have lived in this city ten years. *Om några timmar skall jag ha läst boken från pärn till pärn*. In a few hours I shall have read the book from cover to cover. In such sentences the present perfect usually replaces the future perfect: *I morgon ha vi bott här...etc.* *Om några timmar har jag läst boken...etc.* By tomorrow we shall have lived in this city... etc. In a few hours I shall have read the book... etc.

2. Future of the past. Ex. *Han skulle avresa i förra veckan, men jag vet ej, om han gjorde det*. He was to leave last week, but I do not know whether he did or not. *Han skulle ha skrivit brevet före kl. 5 men gjorde det ej*. He was to have written the letter before 5 o'clock, but he did not do it.

The above use of the past indicative of *skola* in the future and future perfect of the past should be carefully noted, especially as the verb-forms as such are not to be distinguished from the periphrastic forms of the past and past perfect subjunctives i.e., conditionals I and II. See §287, ff.

3. *Skola* sometimes denotes compulsion or command. Ex. *Du skall icke stjäla!* Thou shalt not steal! *Du skall icke dräpa!* Thou shalt not kill! *Du skall vara rädd om din nästas goda namn och rykte!* Thou shalt be careful of thy neighbor's good name and reputation.

4. *Skola* is used in the English sense of *said to be*, cf. German use of *sollen* and French *dire (on dit que)*. Ex. *Han skall (lärt) vara mycket rik.* He is said to be (is supposed to be) very rich.

Note 1. *Skola* is freely used independently of an infinitive, particularly in the spoken language. Ex. *Vart ska du hän?* Where are you going? *Jag ska hem!* I am on my way home! *Jag ska resa till staden i morgon.* I am going in town tomorrow. *Fram ska jag!* I am bound to get there!

Note 2. The present perfect of *skola* (*har skolat*) is rarely used. The past perfect (*hade skolat*) is nearly always (written and spoken) replaced by *skulle ha(va)* + past participle of the principal verb. Ex. *Han skulle ha uträttat arbetet i går.* He should have done the work yesterday. Swedish and English thus agree in the formation of the past perfect.

For other uses of *skola* (subjunctive and conditional moods) see §§ 270, 274, 275; 287, ff

§238. *Må* and *mätte* are used to periphrase *e*-subjunctives. See §268ff.

1. *Må* is also employed to express concession. Ex. *Det må så vara.* It may (very) well be. *Han må vara vem (vad) han vill.* Let him be who (what) he likes. *Må* is often replaced by *får*, *kan*, *tör* and even *bör*.

Note. *Må*, may, must not be confused with *må* (*mådde*, *mått*) of the 3rd (weak) conjugation, meaning to feel. Ex. *Hur mår ni?* How are you?

2. *Mätte* (not *må*) may express supposition, likelihood. Ex. *Det mätte vara hemskt att se en avrättning.* An execution must be a ghastly sight. *Nu mätte han väl vara framme.* He must (should) be there by this time.

§239. *Måste*, see §378, refers to present, past and future time. Ex. *Nu måste jag sluta.* Now I must stop. *Karl kunde ej komma i går, emedan han måste vara i skolan.* Charles could not come yesterday because he was in school. *För att få se en skymt av honom hade hon måst vänta i flera timmar.* In order to catch a glimpse of him she would have been obliged to wait several hours.

§240. *Kunna*, see §380. This verb denotes:

1. Ability. Ex. *Jag kan inte finna min käpp.* I cannot find my cane. *Han kunde inte komma i går, men han kan komma i morgon.* He was not able (he could not) come yesterday, but he can (will be able to) come tomorrow. *Denna bok hade lätt kunnat göras fullständigare.* This book could easily have been made more complete.

2. Possibility. Ex. *Det kan nog hända.* That may (very well) be. *Jag kunde kanske göra det för er skull.* I could perhaps do it for your sake.

3. Permission. Ex. *Nu kan du gå hem.* Now you may go home.

4. Habitual action. Ex. *Han kunde sitta i timtal över sina böcker och göra anmärkningar i marginalen.* He would sit for hours over his books making marginal notes.

Habitual action (custom) is expressed more commonly in Swedish by verbs like *bruka* and *pläga* + the infinitive, or the present or past of the principal verb.

Note 1. *Kunna* is frequently used independently of an infinitive. Ex. *Han kan tyska, engelska och franska.* He knows German, English and French. *Kan ni er läxa?* Do you know your lesson?

Note 2. The past perfect of *kunna* is *hade kunnat*, but in most instances *kunde ha* is the preferred form. Ex. *Jag kunde ha gjort det (hade kunnat göra det).* I could have done it. Compare the use of the past perfect of *skola*, §237, Note 1.

§241. *Vilja*, see §381. As an auxiliary verb *vilja* corresponds to the English to want to, to wish to, to like to, but it is not used to express futurity. Cf. *skola*, §237, ff. It denotes:

Volition. Ex. *Jag vill sitta vid fönstret.* I want (desire) to sit by the window. *Hon vill bli lärarinna.* She wants to become a teacher. *Gör som du vill, käre vän!* Do as you (thou) wish (wishes), dear friend!

Note 1. *Vilja* is used freely apart from a complementary infinitive. The latter is, of course, elliptical. Ex. *Det vill jag.* I want (to do, to have, etc.,) that. *Vad vill ni honom?* What do you want of him? *Förkortningen d.v.s. betyder: det vill säga.* The abbreviation d.v.s. means: that is to say. *Katten vill ut.* The cat wants to get out.

Note 2. *Vilja* forms the present and past perfect regularly: *Jag har (hade) velat.* I have (had) wanted, wished, etc.

§242. *Böra*, see §382. *Böra* denotes moral obligation. It differs in meaning from the present of *skola* and the present (and) past of *måste*. Both *skola* and *måste* express compulsion from without: *Thou shalt! You must!* *Ni bör (ni borde)*, you ought, constitutes an appeal to the individual and his (her) better self, and carries the same message as *ni skulle*. Ex. *Ni skulle (borde) egentligen handla (skulle (borde) ha handlat) annorlunda.* You really should (ought to) act differently, or should have acted (ought to have acted) differently.

Besides expressing, strictly speaking, moral obligation or duty, *böra* also denotes propriety, expectation, supposition, etc. Ex. *Han borde egentligen få sitta kvar.* He really ought to be kept after school. *Skjutsen borde vara här vilket ögonblick som helst.* The conveyance ought to (should) be here any moment.

Note. The past perfect of *böra* is *hade bort* [had'ət bɔ:t] - vulgar English *had ought to*; cf. French *aurait dû* and German *hätte ... sollen*. In most instances the Swedish idiom prefers *borda ha(va) + infinitive*, and thus agrees with English usage: *ought + present or perfect infinitive*. Ex. *De borde ha underrättat oss om hans tillstånd (de hade bort underrätta oss...).* They ought to have informed us about his condition.

§243. *Vara*, see §385.

§244. *Varda*, see §386. This is a passive-forming auxiliary. See Lesson XII.

§245. Bliva §387. Passive-forming auxiliary and regular verb

§246. Other Verbs with Auxiliary Function.

1. *Läta* §388 (Cf. French *laisser* and German *lassen*), has the following meanings:

a) To permit (to let, to allow). Ex. *Jag lät honom hållas*. I let him go on. *Vi böra låta dem sova i ro*. We ought to allow (let) them sleep in peace.

b) To cause, allow. Ex. *Han har lätit bygga sig ett större hus*. He has had a larger house built for himself. *Jag har lätit Anna gå efter morgontidningen*. I have let Anna (made Anna) get (fetch) the morning paper.

c) *Läta* is used to periphrase the 1st person plural of the imperative. Ex. *Låt(om) oss aldrig glömma att vara tacksamma*. Let us never forget to be grateful.

Note. When not functioning as an auxiliary, *läta* means *to make a sound*.

2. *Få*, see §388, expresses:

a) Permission. Ex. *Får jag låna farbros båt?* Uncle, may I borrow your boat? *Ja, om du får lov av mamma att fara ut och ro*. Yes, if you are permitted by your mother to go out rowing. *Får jag be om saltet (sockret, en bit bröd, en kniv, en gaffel)?* May I ask (you) for (=Will you please pass me) the salt (the sugar, a piece of bread, a knife, a fork)?

b) Necessity, prohibition, etc. Ex. *Ni får inte arbeta efter kl. 10 e.m.* You must not work after 10 o'clock p.m. *Som ung fick han ofta svälta*. As a young boy (man) he often had to go without food. *Nu får du sluta för i dag*. Now you must (had better) stop working for today.

c) With the infinitive of the verbs *höra*, *se*, *veta*, it denotes the inception of the action of these verbs. Ex. *Jag fick veta det för en stund sedan*. I got to know it a little while ago. *Så snart som jag fick se honom, kände jag igen honom*. As soon as I caught sight of him, I recognized him.

The present tense of *få* is sometimes used with the infinitives *höra*, *se*, *veta*, with the force of a future. Ex. *Jag får nog höra vad det lider att han är död*. I shall probably get to know (learn) of his death before long. *Kommer han? - Ni får se*. Is he coming? - You will see.

Note. As an independent verb, *få* means *to receive*, *get*. The latter meaning attaches to *få* in many idiomatic expressions. Ex. *få tag på*, get hold on (of); *få något igenom*, to get something through; *få något gjort*, to get something done, etc.

3. *Komma* followed by an infinitive with *att* has the following meanings:

a) *Komma + infinitive* expresses futurity. Ex. *Han kommer att bli vald*. He will be elected.

b) The past tense of *komma* with *att* and infinitive renders English *happened to*. Ex. *Jag kom att ertappa tjuven på bar gärning*. I happened to catch the thief in the very act.

Note. Both *komma att* and *få att* are used in the construction known as accusative with infinitive. Ex. *Meddelandet kom mig att uppskjuta resan*. The communication made me (caused me to) postpone the journey. *Jag fick honom inte att yttra ett ord*. I could not get him to utter a sound (word).

B. READING SELECTION

Studentexamen

I dag är det studentexamen vid en svensk samskola. Vårsolen skiner på den blåa himmeln och flaggans blågula duk vajar friskt i de ljumma vårfältna. Här och där höres en lärka slå sin drill i skyn och i skog och mark nicka blåsippor och guldvivor kokett på sina små huvuden. Hela naturen tycks ha klätt sig dagen till ära i blått och gult, de svenska färgerna, ty det är ju svenska ungdomens stora dag: studentexamen!

Framför stora ingången på skolgården ha släkt och vänner samlats och man väntar nu i hopp och fruktan på resultatet. "Har Henrik gått igenom?" frågar sig en orolig pappa. "Har Brit klarat sig?" undrar en nervös mamma. Men ingen säger något högt. Man talar bara i viskningar.

* Tyst, omutlig och sträng förblir "Stora porten" i sitt slutna majestät. Men plötsligt öppnas en sidodörr och vaktmästarens soliga leende kommer till synes. En lättnadens succé genomfar alla ängsliga pappor och mammor, och systrar och bröder, och tanter och farbröder och skolkamrater. Man vet vad det betyder. "Muntan" har gått bra! De ha klarat sig!

Och så kommer det stora ögonblicket då porten slås upp och de nybakade studenterna komma ut på trappan med solsken i blicken och den vita mössan käckt på nacken. Sedan brakar det löst med hurrarop och omfamningar och kyssar medan man sjunger om och om igen den traditionella "Sjung om studentens lyckliga där!"

Och därpå bäras de nybakade hem i "guldstol" till tonerna av "Studentsången". Och pappa och mamma vanka efter och pappa pöser ut med bröstet och mamma kväver en snyftning och solen skiner så klart på det ljusbla fästet.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

<i>studentexam en</i> ; pl. -ina,	i skog och mark, in the woods and fields	vänta I, wait ~ på, ~ for
matriculation examination		
<i>samskola</i> , -an; -or,	nicka I, nod ~ på sina små huvuden, ~ their little heads	
co-educational school		
<i>varsol</i> , -en; (-ar),	blåsippa, -an; -or, hepatica	
(vernal) sun	guldviva, -an; -or, primrose	
<i>skina</i> , sken, skinit, shine	kokett, coquettishly	
<i>himmel</i> , -n; himlar, sky, heaven	huvud, -et; -en, head	
<i>blågul</i> , -t; -a, blue and yellow	tyckas IIb (dep.), seem	
<i>duk</i> , -en; -ar, cloth	kläda (sig) IIa, dress	
<i>friskt</i> , briskly	ungdom, -en.-ar, youth	
<i>ljum</i> , -t; -ma, mild	ingång, -en;-ar, entrance	
<i>vårfläkt</i> , -en; -ar.	stora ~, main ~	
spring breeze	skolgård, -en; -ar, school yard	
<i>höra</i> IIa, to hear	på ~, in the ~	
~en lärka slå sin drill,	släkt och vänner,	
~ a lark warbling	relatives and friends	
<i>sky</i> , -n; -ar, sky, cloud		

* "Stora porten" = The main entrance.

<i>viskning</i> , -en; -ar, whisper	<i>skolkamrat</i> , -en; -er, schoolmate	" <i>Sjung om Studentens lyckliga dar</i> ", "Sing of the Student's Happy Days"
<i>tyst</i> , -; <i>tysta</i> , silent		
<i>omutlig</i> , -t; -a, inexorable	" <i>muntan</i> ", the oral examination	<i>bära</i> , <i>bar</i> , <i>buro</i> , <i>burit</i> ,
<i>sträng</i> , -t; -a, stern	<i>gått</i> (see <i>gå</i>)	carry, bear
<i>förbli</i> (va), -blev; -blivit, remain	~ <i>bra</i> , be (was) a success	<i>guldstol</i> , -en; -ar,
" <i>Stora porten</i> ", Main entrance	<i>slös</i> (see <i>slå</i>)	"golden chair"(a manner
<i>i sitt slutna majestät</i> ,	<i>porten</i> ~ <i>upp</i> , the	of carrying a person on
in its forbidding majesty	gate is thrown open	interlocked hands)
<i>sidodörr</i> , -en; -ar, side door	<i>nybakad</i> , -t; -de, "freshly	<i>ton</i> , -en; -er, strain
<i>vaktmästar e</i> , - (e)n; -, caretaker, attendant	baked", "brand new"	<i>till</i> ~ <i>av</i> ,
<i>leende</i> , -t; -n, smile	<i>student</i> , -en; -er, graduate	to the strains of
<i>komma</i> , come	<i>solsken</i> , -et; -, sunshine	" <i>Studentsången</i> ",
~ <i>till synes</i> ,	<i>i blicken</i> , in their eyes.	"The Studentsong"
become visible	<i>käckt på nacken</i> , pertly	<i>vanka</i> I, stroll
<i>lättnad</i> , -en; -er, relief	on the back of the head	~ <i>efter</i> , lag behind
<i>suck</i> , -en; -ar, sigh	<i>braka</i> I, crash	<i>pösa</i> IIb, swell
<i>genomfar</i> , -for, -foro;	~ <i>lost</i> , break loose	~ <i>ut med bröstet</i> ,
-farit, pass through	<i>hurrarop</i> , -et; -, cheer, hurrah	puff out one's chest
<i>ängslig</i> , -t; -a, anxious	<i>omfamning</i> , -en; -ar, embrace	<i>kväva</i> IIa, suppress
<i>broder</i> , -n; <i>bröder</i> , brother	<i>kyss</i> , -en; -ar, kiss	<i>snyftning</i> , -en; -ar, sob
<i>tant</i> , -en; -er, aunt	<i>sjunga</i> , <i>sjöng</i> , <i>sjungit</i> , sing	<i>klar</i> , -t; -a, brightly
<i>farbroder</i> , -n; -bröder,	<i>om och om igen</i> .	<i>ljusblå</i> , -tt, -a, light-blue
uncle (paternal)	over and over again	<i>fäste</i> , -t, firmament
	<i>traditionell</i> , -t; -a,	pd ~ , in the heavens
	traditional	

D. QUESTIONS

§247. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. När är det studentexamen vid samskolan?
2. Hur vajar flaggan?
3. Vad gör lärkan?
4. Varför har naturen klätt sig i gult och blått?
5. Var ha släkt och vänner samlats?
6. Vilka äro oroliga?
7. Vad vänter man på?
8. Talar man högt?
9. Vad öppnades plötsligt och vad kom då till synes?
10. Hur har "muntan" gått?
11. När kommer det stora ögonblicket?
12. Vad har den "nybakade" studenten på nacken?
13. Vad sjunger man nu?
14. Hur bar man hem de "nybakade"?
15. Vad göra pappa och mamma?

E. EXERCISES

I

§248. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. Värsol- skin- på --(the) blå- himmel-, ehuru --(it rained) i går.

2. --(it is windy, and) --(the) svensk- flagga- vaj- friskt i --(the) ljum- vårfäktar- .
3. Blåsippor- --(are) blå- och guldvivor- äro gul- .
4. Det --(is) svensk- ungdomen- stor- dag:--(it concerns) studentexam- .
5. --(It) har samlats mycket folk framför stor- ingång- .
6. Alla ängslig- och nervös- papp- (indef. pl.) och mamm- (indef. pl.) veta vad hans solig- leende betyd- .
7. --(There is a ring) och då port- (def. sing.) släs upp komm- --(the) stor- ögonblick- (indef. sing.).
8. --(it was) --(the) nybakad- studenter- --(who) komm- ut på trapp- (def. sing.)
9. Till toner- av --(the) traditionell- Studentsång- bäras --(the) nybakad- hem.
10. Sol- (def. sing.) skin- klart på fäste- (def. sing.), --(which) är ljusblå- .

II

§249. Give the Swedish equivalents of the following expressions:
 There is a knock; it is freezing; there is a fire; there were many people;
 it concerns him.

F. COMPOSITION

§250. Translate into Swedish:

1. The hepaticas and primroses nod their little heads.
2. The blue and yellow flag flutters lustily in the mild spring breezes.
3. Today the sun shines brightly in the blue sky.
4. There are many anxious relatives and friends waiting for the "newly-baked" (students) in the great school-yard.
5. Then the attendant's sunny smile appears.
6. One knows what that means; the oral (examination) went well.
7. The happy students come out on the steps.
8. "How are you?" he asked her.
9. To the strains of the "Studentsong", they are carried home.
10. The sky is light blue, and it is freezing.

LESSON XVI

A. GRAMMAR

Imperative. Infinitive. Participle. Supine.

§251. *Imperative.** The second person singular imperative is identical in form with the stem of the verb. Ex. *älska* (the stem of the verbs of the 1st conjugation ends in *a*), *böj* (from *böja*), *köp* (from *köpa*), *tro* (the stem of the verbs of the 3rd conjugation ends in a vowel), *grip* (from *gripa*).

* For the forms of the imperative see *Paradigms of Model Verbs* §§366, ff., 374, ff.

The first person plural is formed by *låta* + the infinitive of the principal verb. Ex. *Låt* (or *låtom*) *oss* *älska*, *böja*, *köpa*, *tro*, *gräpa*. In the elevated style the older ending *-om* of the 1st person plural imperative, common to all verbs, except those ending in a stressed vowel (*tro*, *se*, *ske*, etc.), is used. Ex. *Tackom och lovom Herran!* (= *Herren*). Let us thank and praise the Lord! Likewise in poetry: *Tagom vi plats på bänken, prövom det nya mjöd!* (Karlfeldt). Let us sit down on the bench, let us sample the new mead!

The second person imperative is identical in form with the corresponding present indicative: *älsken*, *böjen*, *köpen*, *tron*, *gräpen*. Its use is confined to the higher style. Outside of this, the singular imperative is used also for the plural. Ex. *Tala tydligare!* Speak more clearly! *Snälla herrn, ge mig en slant!* Please give me a penny, sir! *Sitt stilla, pojkar!* Boys, sit still! *Vill ni vara så god* (*så snäll*, *så artig*) *och visa mig vägen till* ... ? Would you (will you) be so good (so kind, so courteous) as to show me the way (road) to... ?

Note 1. In passive form and with passive meaning the imperative occurs but rarely and then only in periphrastic form with *vara*. Ex. "Var mig hälsad, broder Lorents...!" (Karlfeldt). "Hail thee, brother Lawrence...!" Otherwise the periphrastic form involves *låta*. Ex. *Låt dig övertalas!* Allow yourself to be persuaded! For the *s*-forms of the imperative, see *Deponent verbs* §§ 225 and 367, Note 3.

Note 2. The subject of the imperative is generally not expressed, but *du*, *ni*, *I*, may occur. In such a case the pronoun follows the verb.

- a) To express contrast. The pronoun is then stressed. Ex. *Gå ni er väg, så går jag min!* You go your way, and I will go mine!
- b) To exhort and encourage in a friendly manner. The pronoun is unstressed. Ex. *Kör [χε:r] ni bara, det går nog bra!* You, just drive ahead (and) you will come out all right!

Note 3. Some verbs, e.g., *kunna*, *wilja* and a number of others lack the imperative form.

§252. *The Infinitive.* For the forms of the infinitive consult the several model verb paradigms, active and passive, §§ 366, ff.

§253. The infinitive is used sometimes with and sometimes without *att*, to.

a) Without *att* after the modal auxiliaries, and some other verbs. Ex. *bedja*, to ask (a favor); *behöva*, to need; *bruka*, to be in the habit of; *börja*, to begin; *plåga*, to be in the habit of; *synas*, to seem; *tyckas*, to seem; *tänka*, to think; *önska*, to wish, and others.

Ex. *Man bör göra vad rätt är.* One (we, you, they) ought to do what is right. *Det behöver envar betänka.* Everybody needs to consider that. *Han plågade besöka sina släktingar varje sommar.* He was in the habit of visiting (used to visit) his relatives every summer.

b) Without *att* in the construction called *Accusative with the Infinitive* after verbs of perception (seeing, hearing) and of saying. Ex. *Vi sågo dem gå till segels och försvinna bakom näset.* We saw them set sail and disappear behind the headland. *Han säger sig ha genomrest hela Förenta staterna.* He says that he has traversed the entire United States. *Jag har ofta hört henne sjunga.* I have often heard her sing.

Note. Unless it is a matter of immediate perception, a subordinate clause must be used.
 Ex. *jag har hört (av andra), att hon sjunger*, i.e., that she is in the habit of singing.

c) Without *att* in the construction called *Nominative with the Infinitive*.
 Ex. *Bon hördes ofta spela och sjunga till sent på kvällen*. She was often heard playing and singing until late in the evening.

d) Without *att* in many instances in contractions, particularly in exclamatory sentences when the infinitive functions as subject. Ex. *Fördöma brott men ej förbrytaren*. To condemn the crime but not the criminal.

§254. The infinitive is generally preceded by *att* in the following cases:

a) When functioning as subject. Ex. *Att gå i skogen är det roligaste han vet*. To walk in the woods is the greatest pastime (fun) he knows.

Note. In proverbs *att* is omitted. Ex. *Tiga är guld*. Silence is golden. *Bättre fly än illa fakta*. Discretion is the better part of valor.

b) When functioning as a complement of a noun, an adjective or a verb.
 Ex. *Hoppet att övervinna höll hans mod uppe*. The hope of conquering kept his courage up. *Boken står icke att finna*. The book is not to be found. *Ni är för gammal att företaga en sådan lång resa*. You are too old to undertake such a long journey. *Han lovade att tänka på saken*. He promised to consider the matter.

c) When it is governed by a preposition. Ex. *Han gick utan att ha läst brevet*. He went without having read the letter. *Genom att vara sparsam, blir man rik*. By saving you become rich. *Ingen tänkte på att signalera brandkåren*. Nobody thought of signalling (calling) the fire-brigade. *Jag gjorde det utan att tänka på följderna*. I did it without considering the consequences.

Note 1. It should be noted that the Swedish infinitive corresponds in many cases to the English gerund.

Note 2. When the subject of the infinitive is not the same as that of the principal verb, Swedish requires an *att*-clause. Ex. *Väktmästaren gick genom rummet utan att märka mig*. The caretaker passed through the room without noticing me. But: *Väktmästaren gick genom rummet utan att jag märkte honom (det)*. The caretaker passed through the room without my noticing him (it).

Note 3. When the infinitive expresses purpose it is preceded by *för att*, *till att...*
 Ex. *Krut användes till att spränga med*. Gunpowder is used for blasting.
Man går i skolan för att lära något. We go to school in order to learn something.

§255. *Present Participle*. The present participle of the 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugations ends in *-ande*. Ex. *älskande* I, *böjande* IIa, *köpande* IIb, *gripande* IV; that of the 3rd and of the irregular verbs of the 4th conjugation ends in *-ende*. Ex. *troende* III, *seende* irreg. See Model Verbs §§366,ff., and 374,ff.

§256. The present participle is indeclinable, but note the following exceptions: When used as a noun it has an *s* in the genitive. Ex. *En döndes*

sista ord. The last words of a dying person. Some deponent verbs and some verbs that are not deponents have a present participle ending in *s*. Ex. *Väl minnandes sitt löfte infann han sig...* Well remembering his promise, he came...

Note. For the comparison of the present participle when used as an adjective, see Lesson VI.

§257. The present participle is used:

1. As an adjective, attributively or predicatively. Ex. *Ett gråtande barn*, a crying child; *en forskande blick*, a searching look; *en lysande seger*, a brilliant victory. *Kölden var bitande*. The cold was biting (piercing).
2. As an adverb. Ex. *Hon talar svenska flytande*. She speaks Swedish fluently. *Det var bränande hett*. It was burning hot.
3. As a modifier of both subject and verb. Ex. *Hon gick tiggande kring landet*. She went about the country begging. *Jag föll av vagnen och blev liggande i diket, tills folk kom och hjälpte mig*. I fell off the wagon and remained lying (lay) in the ditch until people came and helped me.

Note 1. Swedish does not employ the present participle as does English in the formation of progressive verb forms such as, *he is (was, will be) running*, etc. Continued action is expressed in Swedish by *hålla på* or *hålla på med*, to be engaged in, occupied with, together with *att + infinitive* of a durative verb. Ex. *Han håller på (höll på) att måla en tavla*. He is (was) engaged in painting a picture.

The progressive idea is also expressed by placing one durative verb before another. Ex. *Han äter och äter och blir aldrig mätt*. He keeps on eating (and eating) and is never satisfied. *Jag satt och skrev, när du var här sist*. I was writing when you were here the last time. *Du får inte ligga och sova hela dagen*. You must not sleep (lie around sleeping) all day.

Note 2. When used with verbs of transition, or, as they are also designated, terminative verbs, *hålla på* means to be near, to come close to; the preposition *med* is, as a rule, not used. Ex. *Han höll på att förtvivla*. He came near despairing. *Gossen höll på att drunkna*. The boy came near (was in danger of) drowning. *Jag höll på att tappa klockan*. I came near dropping my watch.

§258. Past Participle and Supine. The past participle of the verbs may be found as follows:

a) In the case of the weak verb the common gender form of the past participle is found by dropping the *-e* of the past indicative. The neuter is formed by changing the *-d(-dd)* of the common gender to *-t(-tt)*. The common gender-ending *-t* is not changed in the neuter.

Infinitive	Past Indic.	Past Participle		
		Singular		Plural
		Common	Neuter	
älska I	älskade	(är, blir)	älskad	älskat (äro, bli(va))
böja IIa	böjde	(är, blir)	böjd	böjt
köpa IIb	köpte	(är, blir)	köpt	köpta
tro[trō:]	trodde	(är, blir)	trodd	trott

b) The Strong Verb.

Infinitive	Past Indic.	Past Participle		
		Singular	Plural	All Genders
		Common	Neuter	
gripa IV	grep	(är, blir) gripen	gripet (äro, bli(va)), gripna	

Note. See also Lesson IX, 1st conjugation; Lesson X, 2nd conjugation; Lesson XI, 3rd conjugation; Lesson XII, 4th conjugation; Lesson XIII, Reflexive and Compound Verbs; Lesson XIV, Deponent and Impersonal Verbs, and Lesson XV, Auxiliary Verbs.

§259. *Past Participle.* The past participle is declined and used as an adjective (attribute, appositive predicate modifier). The past participles of transitive verbs (duration as well as transition), have a passive meaning. Ex. *En älskad lärare* (= *en lärare, som älskas*), a beloved teacher; *en krossad vas* (= *en vas, som har krossats*), a crushed vase.

The past participle of intransitive verbs of transition has an active meaning. Ex. *En bortsprungne hund* (= *en hund, som har sprungit bort*), a run-away dog (a dog that has escaped).

Intransitive verbs of duration (*ligga*, to lie - to be in a lying position; *sitta*, to sit; *sova*, to sleep; *få*, to be permitted, etc.), have no past participle except in the case of some compounds. Ex. *Förlegad*, faded (old fashioned, shop-worn).

§260. Examples of the Use of the Participle and the Supine.

Participle	Supine
Kvällsvarden är serverad. The evening meal is served.	Värdinnan har serverat kvällsvarden. The hostess has served the evening meal.
Skadan är snart gjord men (den är) sent botad. The damage is easily done but (it is) repaired with difficulty.	Stormen har gjort stor skada, men vi ha inte ännu hunnit reparera den. The storm has done great damage, but we have not yet had time to repair it.
Automobilen har blivit stulen. The automobile has been stolen.	Nägon har stulit automobilen. Someone has stolen the automobile.
Hösten är kommen. Fall (autumn) has come.	Hösten har kommit. Fall (autumn) has come.
Fågelungarna äro utflugna ur boet. The young birds have left (flown out of) the nest.	Fågelungarna ha flugit ut ur boet. The young birds have left (flown out of) the nest.
Vi köra över de frusna sjöarna. We drive across the frozen lakes.	Sjöarna ha frusit. The lakes have frozen (over).
Både dörrar och fönster ha blivit öppnade. Both doors and windows have been opened.	Han har öppnat både dörrar och fönster. He has opened both doors and windows.

Note 1. When used as a substantive the past participle has an *-s* in the genitive (possessive case). Ex. *Den älskades namn*. The name of the loved one.

Note 2. All participles, both present and past, are compared by means of the adverbs *mer(a)*, *mest*. See Lesson VI.

§261. *Supine.*

The supine is the neuter singular of the past participle. See Lessons VIII and IX. It is invariable and is used exclusively with the auxiliary *hava*. Ex. *jag (du, ni, han, hon, den, det) har älskat, vi ha(va), I haven, de ha(va) älskat (böjt, köpt, trott, gripit)*.

Note that the neuter singular of the past participle of the regular strong verb ends in *-et*. Ex. *Budet blev gripet*. The messenger was seized. The supine ends in *-it*. Ex. *Vi ha gripit spionen*. We have seized the spy.

B. READING SELECTION

Om Sveriges undervisningsväsen

Svenska folkets uppfostran ordnas och kontrolleras i huvudsak av landets regering. Med undantag av några få skolor (militära och praktiska) lyder systemet under ecklesiastikministern. Frivilliga folkskolor funnos redan på 1700-talet. År 1842 införde staten skoltvång. Intet annat land torde ha bättre folkbildningsanstalter än Sverige. Under de senare åren ha folkskolorna utbildat sig till bottenskolor med rätt omväxlande läsplanner. Vilken begåvad yngling som helst kan nu för tiden fortsätta sina studier vid högre skolor enbart på den uppfostran han fått i folkskolan före det femtonde levnadsåret.

Den högre undervisningen bedrives vid rikets högre allmänna läroverk, vid gymnasier och lyceer. Dessa skolor motsvara till en viss gräns amerikanska *high schools* samt de två första åren vid ett amerikanskt *college*. Avgångsexamen (studentexamen, mogenhetsexamen) vid dessa skolor berättigar till inträde vid landets universitet (Uppsala, Lund) och högskolor (Stockholm, Göteborg). En svensk högskola har universitets rang och värdighet och måste under inga omständigheter förväxlas med amerikanska *high schools* eller *colleges*. Det finns inga s.k. *undergraduates* vid svenska universitet och högskolor. Här bedrivs professionella studier vid någon av de fyra fakulteterna (teologi, juridik, medicin, filosofi).

Uppsala universitet grundlades 1477. Såsom anstalt för högre studiers bedrivande och utövande av verkligt forskningsarbete intager det en framskjuten ställning bland systerinstitutioner i världen. Detsamma gäller om Lund samt Stockholms och Göteborgs högskolor. Det forskningsarbete, som uträttats vid dessa lärosäten, har möjliggjorts dels av institutionernas oberoende – de underhållas ju av staten – och dels av de rent vetenskapliga ideal som ligga till grund för deras verksamhet.

Här utbildas nationens fackelbärare och ledande andar på alla områden; här samlas ungdom ur alla klasser från torparsonen till prinsen av blodet; och härifrån utgå årligen män och kvinnor att ställa sig i nationens tjänst som uppfostrare av det yngre släktet. Den blivande lärarens utbildning vid dessa institutioner är grundlig, och kraven, som ställas på kandidaten, många och svåra att uppfylla. I allmänhet framstår den svenska läraren såsom en lycklig sammansittning av vetenskapsman och pedagogiskt skolad uppfostrare av det unga Sverige.

C. VOCABULARY TO READING SELECTION

<i>undervisningsväsen</i> , -det;	<i>allmän</i> , -t; -na, public	obtain, be current
-, educational system	<i>läroverk</i> , -et; -, higher	~ om, be true of, apply to
<i>uppföstran</i> (indecl.), education	secondary school	<i>lärosäte</i> , -t; -n, seat
<i>ordna</i> I, regulate	<i>gymnasium</i> (college)	of learning
<i>kontrollera</i> I, control	<i>lyceum</i> , -et; -er, lyceum	<i>möjliggöra</i> , -gjorde,
<i>huvudsak</i> , -en; -er,	<i>motsvara</i> I, correspond to	-gjort, make possible
essential matter	<i>gräns</i> , -en; -er, boundary	<i>dels</i> -- <i>dels</i> , partly -- partly
i ~ . principally	<i>till en viss</i> ~	<i>oberoende</i> , -t; independence
<i>undantag</i> , -et; -, exception	to a certain extent	<i>underhålla</i> , -höll, -hållit,
<i>några</i> (see <i>ndgon</i>), some	<i>avgångsexamen</i> , -; -ina,	support
~ <i>få</i> , a few	final (leaving) examination	<i>ren</i> , -t; -a, pure
<i>militär</i> , -t; -a, military	<i>mogemhetsexamen</i> , -; -ina,	<i>ideal</i> , -et; -er, ideal
<i>praktisk</i> , -t; -a, practical	same as <i>avgångsexamen</i>	<i>ligga till</i> grund för,
<i>lyda</i> IIa, be under the	<i>berättiga</i> I, give a right to	be the basis of
jurisdiction of	~ till inträde vid	<i>fackelbärar</i> , -en; -,
<i>system</i> , -et; -, system	qualify for entrance to	torch-bearer
<i>ecklesiastikminist er</i> ,	<i>universitet</i> , -et; -, university	<i>ledande</i> , leading
-ern; -rar, minister of public	<i>högskola</i> , -an; -or,	<i>and e</i> , -en; -ar, spirit
worship and education	university (lacking one or	<i>område</i> , -t; -n, field, sphere
<i>frivillig</i> , -t; -a, voluntary	more of the four faculties)	på alla ~ , in every ~
<i>skoltvång</i> , -et; -,	<i>rang</i> , -en, rank	<i>klass</i> , -en; -er, class
compulsory education	<i>värdighet</i> , -en, dignity	<i>torpar son</i> , -en; -söner
<i>torde</i> (see <i>tör</i>)	<i>omständighet</i> , -en; -er,	crofter's son
~ <i>ha</i> , is likely to have	circumstance	<i>prins av blodet</i> , prince
<i>folkbildningsanstalt</i> , -en;	<i>förväxla</i> I, confuse	of the blood, prince royal
-er, institution for	<i>s.k.- så kalla de</i> , so-called	<i>utgå</i> ; -gick, -gingo;
public education	<i>professionell</i> , -t; -a,	-gått, go out (graduate)
<i>under de senare åren</i> ,	professional	~ årligen, ~ yearly
in recent years	<i>fyra</i> , four	<i>ställa</i> IIa, put, place
<i>utbilda</i> I, form, develop	<i>fakultet</i> , -en; -er, faculty	~ sig i, place one-
~ <i>sig till</i> , develop into	<i>teologi</i> , -en, theology	self at the disposal of
<i>bottenskola</i> , -an; -or,	<i>juridik</i> , -en, jurisprudence	<i>tjänst</i> , -en; -er, service
common (graded) school	<i>medicin</i> , -en; -er, medicine	<i>uppföstrar e</i> , -en; -, educator
<i>rätt</i> , quite	<i>filosofi</i> , -en; -er, philosophy	<i>blivande</i> , future
<i>läsplan</i> , -en; -er.	<i>grundlägga</i> , -lade; -lagt,	<i>utbildning</i> , -en; -ar, training
curriculum, pl.curricula	found	<i>grundlig</i> , -t; -a, thorough
<i>begåva d</i> , -t; -de, gifted	<i>anstalt</i> , -en; -er, institution	<i>krav</i> , -et; -, requirement
<i>yngling</i> , -en; -ar, youth	<i>bedrivande</i> , -t, pursuit	<i>ställa</i> IIa, put, place
<i>vilken som helst</i> ,	<i>utövande</i> , -t; pursuit, exercise	~ på, ~ upon
anyone (at all)	<i>verklig</i> , -t; -a, real	<i>kandidat</i> , -en; -er,
<i>vilken begåvad yngling</i>	<i>forskningsarbete</i> , -t; -n,	candidate (for a degree)
<i>som helst</i> , any talent-	research work	<i>uppfylla</i> IIa, fulfill
ed youth at all	<i>intaga</i> , -toga; -tagit,	<i>framstå</i> , -stod; -stätt,
<i>studier</i> (see <i>studium</i>),	occupy, hold	stand forth
study, studies	<i>framskjut en</i> , -et; -na.	<i>sammansättning</i> , -en; -ar,
<i>enbart</i> , exclusively	prominent	combination
<i>före</i> , before	<i>ställning</i> , -en; -ar, position	<i>vetenskaps man</i> , -nen;
<i>femtonde</i> , fifteenth	<i>systerinstitution</i> , -en;	-män, scientist
<i>levnadsår</i> , -et; -, year of life	-er, sister institution	<i>pedagogisk</i> , -t; -a, pedagogical
<i>bedriva</i> , -drev; -drivit, pursue	<i>gälla</i> IIa, be valid,	<i>skola d</i> , -t; -de,
<i>rike</i> , -t; -n, realm, kingdom		schooled, trained

D. QUESTIONS

§262. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. Hur ordnas och kontrolleras svenska folkets uppfostran?
2. Vilka skolor lyda icke under ecklesiastikministern?
3. Hur tidigt funnos frivilliga folkskolor i Sverige?
4. När infördes skoltvång?
5. Var bedrives den högre undervisningen?
6. Vad motsvara dessa skolor i Amerika?
7. Vad är en svensk högskola?
8. Vad slags studier bedrivs vid svenska universitet och högskolor?
9. När grundlades Uppsala universitet?
10. Vad är dess ställning bland systerinstitutioner i världen?
11. Hur underhållas svenska universitet och högskolor?
12. Vilka utbildas vid universiteten och högskolorna?
13. Hurudan är utbildningen vid dessa lärosäten?
14. Hur framstår den svenska läraren?

E. EXERCISES

I

§263. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. --(by) --(whom) kontrolleras i huvudsak landet- regering?
2. --(pres. indic. of kunna) ni säga mig --(what kind of) folkskol- (indef. pl.) --(that) funnos redan på 1700-talet?
3. Han --(is supposed to) ha --(supine of taga) studentexamen vid Östermalms läroverk.
4. Han --(construct with få) ej veta --(who) (som) hade tagit studentexamen.
5. Man måste ej förväxla --(a) svensk högskola med --(a) amerikansk.
6. Han (is going to) bedriva sina studie- (indef. pl.) vid en av --(the) fyra fakulteter- i Uppsala.
7. --(that) universitet --(is supposed to) ha --(supine of grundläggas) mycket tidigt.
8. --(which of) dessa institutioner ligger i Stockholm?
9. --(his) läsplan --(ought to) omfatta undervisning i tyska och engelska.
10. --in (på) --(what) sätt framstår --(the) svensk- lärare- såsom uppfostrare av --(the) ung- Sverige?

II

§264. Illustrate by short Swedish sentences all uses of the following verbs: *must, shall, will, may, ought, can, get, let*.

F. COMPOSITION

§265. Translate into Swedish:

1. Who controls the educational system of Sweden?

2. Compulsory education was introduced in 1842.
3. One must not confuse Swedish *högskolor* with American *high schools*.
4. We ought to tell them that we did not see who had done it (n.).
5. He will complete his education before the age of 15.
6. Which curriculum did they have to follow?
7. One of those men arrived today, but he was not permitted to stay.
8. Among other seats of learning, Uppsala occupies a prominent position as an institution for the pursuit of higher studies.
9. What form of study can the student pursue at the universities?
10. What happy combination distinguishes the Swedish educator?

LESSON XVII

A. GRAMMAR

The Subjunctive. Definition. Forms and Use of the Subjunctive.

§266. The subjunctive designates a mood or form of verb expressing contingency, condition, hypothesis, a wish, an exhortation, etc.

§267. In so far as form is concerned, the subjunctive is either an *e*-subjunctive or a periphrastic subjunctive. The use of the *e*-subjunctive is limited in modern Swedish.

The present *e*-subjunctive is found by replacing the *-a* of the infinitive by *-e*. The *e*-ending

	Weak	Strong	Irreg.
Infinitive:	älska I böja IIa köpa IIb tro III gripa IV		
Pres. Subj.	jag älske, etc. böje, etc. köpe, etc. ---*)		---*)
	vi " " " ---*)		---*)
	I älsken böjen köpen *)	gripen	*)
	de älske böje köpe ---*)	gripe	---*)

*Note. Verbs, the infinitives of which end in a stressed vowel (third weak conjugation and irregular strong verbs), do not form the present *e*-subjunctive. Exceptions are few:
Ex. *Ske din vilja!* Thy will be done! *Gånge denna kalken från mig!* Let this cup pass from me! *Det stände honom fritt ...* He shall be at liberty to ... *Gud ske lov!* God be praised!

§268. In place of the present *e*-subjunctive the periphrastic subjunctive, formed by means of the auxiliaries *må* or *mätte* + the infinitive of the principal verb, may be used:

jag, etc.	<i>må</i> (or <i>mätte</i>),	älska,	böja,	köpa,	tro,	gripa,	se
vi	" "	" "	" "	" "	" "	" "	"
I	<i>mån</i> (<i>mätten</i>)	" "	" "	" "	" "	" "	"
de	<i>må</i> (<i>mätte</i>)	" "	" "	" "	" "	" "	"

See also *Paradigms of Model Verbs*, §§ 366, ff. and 374, ff.

§269. The past *e*-subjunctive of the 1st, 2nd and 3rd conjugations is identical in form with the past indicative. The past subjunctive of the 4th (strong) conjugation is formed by replacing the *e*-ending of the plural of the past indicative by *e*.

<i>Weak</i>			<i>Strong and Irregular</i>		
I	II	III	<i>Past Indicative</i>		<i>Past Subjunctive</i>
Past <i>e</i> -subjunctive forms are identical with past indicative forms.	jag grep (såg), etc. vi grepo (sågo) I grepen (sågen) ni grepo (sågo) de grepo (sågo)		jag grepe (såge), etc. vi grepe (såge) I grepen (sågen) ni grepe (såge) de grepe (såge)		

§270. In place of the past *e*-subjunctive, the past periphrastic subjunctive, formed by *skulle* (should, would) + the present infinitive of the principal verb, may be used.

jag, etc.	skulle	älska,	böja,	köpa,	tro,	gripa,	se
vi	"	"	"	"	"	"	"
I	skullen	"	"	"	"	"	"
de	skulle	"	"	"	"	"	"

Note 1. For the periphrastic present perfect subjunctive, formed by *må* or *mätte* + the perfect infinitive, which regularly replaces the present perfect *e*-subjunctive, see *Paradigms of Model Verbs*, § 366, ff.

Note 2. For the past perfect *e*-subjunctive the forms of which are identical with those of the past indicative, and the past perfect periphrastic subjunctive, formed by *skulle* + the perfect infinitive, see *Paradigms of Model Verbs*, § 366, ff.

§271. *Use of the Subjunctive.* The present subjunctive is used:

a) To express a wish that can be realized. Either the *e*-subjunctive or the periphrastic subjunctive may be used. Ex. *O, om han ändå komme!* Would that he might come! *Leve konungen!* Long live the king! *Mätte han hinna fram i tid!* I hope that he may get there in time.

Note. As there is no present perfect *e*-subjunctive, a wish that may have been realized is expressed by the periphrastic subjunctive. Ex. *Mätte det ha gätt dem väl!* I hope that all has gone well with them!

b) Wishes that cannot be realized, or that are not likely to be realized, are expressed by the past subjunctive if they refer to the present; by the past perfect subjunctive if they refer to the past. They are frequently introduced by *om*, if: *ack om*, would that; *o, att*, would that. If there be no such introductory expression, the verb heads the clause. Ex. *Ack, vore min fader i livet!* Oh, that my father were alive! *O, den som hade vingar, som fånglarna ha...!* Oh, if we only had wings like the birds...! *Hade jag bara kunnat göra vad jag ville den gången...!* Had I only been able to do what I wanted at that time!

Note. Wishes that are introduced by *o, att* and *ack, om* and the past or past perfect subjunctive, represent sentence contractions. Ex. *O, att det snart vore sommar!* (*=önskar, att det snart vore sommar*). Would that (I wish that) summer might soon be here!

§272. The hortatory subjunctive expresses an exhortation, a command, a request, a proposal, etc., just like the imperative, the lacking forms of which it supplies. The hortatory subjunctive is used in the present. It is frequently periphrased by the auxiliaries *må*, *skall*, (*kan*), (*torde*). Ex. *Envar försvara (må försvara) sin rätt!* Let each one (everybody) defend his rights! *Du skall icke stjäla!* Thou shalt not steal! *Ni torde vara så god att med det försäga återlämna böckerna.* You will kindly return the books as soon as possible.

§273. The concessive subjunctive expresses concession. Ex. *Det koste (må kosta) huru mycket som helst!* Cost what it may!

§274. Modified assertion is expressed by the imperfect or the past perfect. It is often periphrased by *skulle*. Ex. *Jag såge gärna (skulle gärna se)*, att *du komme*. I should like very much if you were to come (I should look with favor upon your coming).

§275. The subjunctive of purpose occurs in clauses introduced by the conjunctions *på det att*, *för att*, *så att*, in order that, so that. Cf. German *auf dass*, *damit*. After a past tense the subjunctive of *skola* is frequently used. Ex. *Han skyndade sig, så att hon inte skulle behöva vänta på honom.* He hurried in order that she would not have to wait for him. Also *må* (*mätte*) + infinitive may be used. Ex. *Bed till Gud, att han må (mätte) beskydda oss.* Pray God that He may protect us.

Note 1. The compound subjunctive (sometimes the indicative) of *få* and *kunna* are often used in purpose clauses where permission or ability (possibility) is implied. Ex. *Han bad barnen vara tysta så att modern skulle få sova.* He asked the children to be quiet in order that the mother might have a chance to sleep. *Han läste svenska flitigt, så att han skulle kunna göra sig förstådd.* He studied Swedish diligently in order that he might be able to make himself understood.

Note 2. Certain usages of the subjunctive are designated "potential subjunctive". Ex. *Det kunde nog vara sant.* It might be true. *Kanhända vore det (skulle det vara) så gott att börja.* Perhaps it might be just as well to begin. It is true that the subjunctive often expresses possibility and that there is a potential subjunctive, but it is also a fact that most of the so-called potential subjunctives are nothing but parts of conditional sentences, i.e., either an *if*-clause or a conclusion.

For the subjunctive in hypothetical sentences, see Lesson XVIII.

B. READING SELECTION

NOTE. BEGINNING WITH THIS LESSON THE STUDENT IS REFERRED TO THE GENERAL VOCABULARY.

Spårvagnssamtal
(efter Dan Bergman)

Jag sätter värde på bestämda mattider, alldenstund de äro bra för magen, min lilla favorit redan från yngre år och, jag fruktar, min blivande tyrann på äldre. Klockan kvarten över fyra brukade jag således stå vid hållplatsen och vänta på Östermalsspårvagnen.

Häromdagen träffade jag notarien Bergström där inne. Notarien Bergström är en mycket hygglig karl. Han och jag äro bröder sedan ganska långt tillbaka, men vi känna varandra inte alls och ha inga gemensamma intressen eller sympatier.

Följaktligen blev vår konversation allt tunnare och tunnare och efter det vi diskuterat vädret och vår gemensamma vän Pettersson, så avstannade den helt och hället. Det värsta var att vi båda bodde på Östermalm och slutade värt arbete för dagen vid samma tid. Vecka efter vecka möttes vi sálunda i spårvagnen och situationen blev allt pinligare som tiden led. Vi hade helt enkelt ingenting mer att tala om, omtna eller förtala!

Men en dag kom jag på den idén att åka hem en kvart tidigare. Notarien Bergström hade kommit på samma idé. Vi träffades i spårvagnen. Nästa dag åkte jag hem en halvtimme senare. Vi träffades i spårvagnen. Men då klev jag fram till notarien Bergström och slog honom på axeln och sade:

"Häدانefter åker jag alltid hem precis klockan fyra! Och du?"

"På slaget halv fem!"

Det var det enda sättet.

C. QUESTIONS

§276. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Vad sätter författaren värde på? | tala om? |
| 2. Var brukade han stå och vänta? | 10. Var möttes de alltid? |
| 3. Vem träffade han häromdagen? | 11. Vad för en idé kom författaren på? |
| 4. Känna de varandra? | 12. Hade notarien Bergström samma idé? |
| 5. Hur blev deras konversation? | 13. När åkte författaren hem nästa dag? |
| 6. Vad diskuterade de? | 14. Vad sade han då till notarien? |
| 7. Var bodde de? | 15. Vad sade notarien? |
| 8. Varför blev situationen allt pinligare? | |
| 9. Varför hade de ingenting att | |

D. EXERCISES

I

§277. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. --(he) sätter värde på bestämd- mattid- (indef. pl.)
2. --(his) favorit från --(younger) år och hans blivand- tyrann på --(elder, older) är.

3. Om han bara --(past subj. of vara) vid hållplats- (def. sing.)!
4. --(we) voro --(quite friendly; had dropped titles) sedan ganska långt tillbaka.
5. Han verkade som om --(we) inte --(had) några gemensam- vän- eller sympat- .
6. Följaktligen blevo vår- konversation- allt tunn- och pinlig- .
7. Vi diskuterade (our) gemensamm- vän- Petterson och Karlberg.
8. -- (I hope) han inte kommer --(past indic. of tänka) jag tyst för mig själv.
9. --(my) idé att åka hem en kvart --(earlier) --(would) ha --(been) utmärkt, om han inte --(had) fått --(it) också.
10. Om han --(past subj. of komma) så --(past subj. of bliva) situation- (def. sing.) bara pinlig- (comp.).

II

- §278. 1. Give the present and past subj. of the following verbs:
be, have, become, come, get.
2. Illustrate the Swedish use of *skulle*, *mätte*, *må*, I hope.

E. COMPOSITION

- §279. Translate into Swedish:

1. The notary used to wait at the car-stop, and while doing so he acted as if he had been afraid to meet someone.
2. He would appreciate regular mealtimes, too.
3. They might have been friends for a long time, had they only had mutual acquaintances to talk about.
4. His friend Petterson was older than he.
5. Oh, that they had nothing further to discuss! she said.
6. One day the idea occurred to me to go home a quarter of an hour earlier.
7. But even notaries have ideas; we met in the street car again.
8. The following day I would have gone home half an hour later, but my friend Bergström would surely have been there.
9. He told me that he would step up to him and tap him on the shoulder.
10. After this I always go home precisely at four o'clock, and he at four-thirty.

LESSON XVIII

A. GRAMMAR

Conditional Sentences

- §280. Conditional sentences are of two kinds: *Real (simple)* and *Contrary to fact*. All complete conditional sentences consist of two parts: The *Protasis* or *if-clause*, and the *Apodosis* or *conclusion*.

§281. *Present Real Conditions.* Real (simple) conditional sentences refer to present, past and present perfect time. The indicative mood is used in all of them. Ex. *Om(- närelst) jag har en bok, så läser jag.* If (whenever) I have a book, I read.

Note. In Swedish the sentence may also be written equally well: *Har jag en bok, så läser jag.* This word order is used whenever the conjunction is dropped. Or, again, the conclusion - the principal clause - may be placed at the beginning: *Jag läser, närelst jag har en bok.* The principal clause then has normal word order. In the subordinate clause the word order remains unchanged.

§282. *Past Real Conditions.* Ex. *Om (närelst) jag hade en bok, så läste jag.* If (whenever) I had a book, I read.

Caution. Inversion after the dropping of *om (närelst)*, e.g., *hade jag en bok, så läste jag* should not be attempted in past real conditions. Such a change would result in ambiguity.

§283. *Perfect Real Conditions.* Ex. *Om (närelst) jag (har) haft en bok, så har jag läst.* If (whenever) I have had a book, I have read, or: *Jag har läst, närelst jag (har) haft en bok.*

Note. The statement about mood in *Real (simple) Conditional Sentences* must be borne in mind. The reason for the use of the indicative is that the assumption in each of these conditional sentences *neither expresses nor implies anything contrary to fact.* Sentences of the above kind are, in reality, nothing but declarative sentences cast in a conditional mold. To test such sentences, change *om (if)* into *närelst (whenever).* If that can be done without destroying the sense of the thought, it is conclusive proof that we are concerned with real (simple) conditional sentences on the three time-levels indicated.

§284. *Whenever (närelst)* may be expanded to advantage in sentences involving past or present perfect tenses. Moreover, the elliptical element may be supplied. Ex. Whenever (in my life) I had (or have had) a book (Ellipsis: and that has happened many times), I read (or I have read) it. *Närelst (i mitt liv) jag hade (or har haft) en bok* (Ellipsis: och det har hänt många gånger), *så läste jag (or har jag läst).*

§285. When a real condition refers to the future it is called a *Future More Vivid Condition.* In a future more vivid condition the *present indicative is used in the if(om)-clause, and the future indicative in the conclusion.* Cf. French and German future more vivid conditions which, as a rule, employ the present indicative in the *if-clause.* Ex. *Om han kommer, så skall jag (kommer jag att) följa med.* If he comes I shall go along. Inversions are in order.

Ex. *Kommer han, så skall jag följa med* (så kommer jag att följa med); *jag skall följa med* (kommer att följa med). *om han kommer.*

§286. *Contrary to Fact Conditions.* These conditional sentences relate to present or past time. They express an assumption that does not tally with reality.

§287.

A. Present Contrary to Fact

Om jag hade en bok, så läste jag. (Past Subjunctive)
 " " " " , så skulle jag läsa. (Conditional I)
 If I had a book, I should read. (Conditional I)

Inversions (Swedish):

Hade jag en bok, så läste jag. (Past Subjunctive)
 " " " " , så skulle jag läsa. (Conditional I)
 or, Jag läste, { om jag hade en bok (Past Subjunctive)
 Jag skulle läsa, (Conditional I)

Note. The if(om)-clause immediately informs the reader (listener) that the speaker (writer) does not possess the book. If we recast the sentence so that it reads: *If I had a book now (but I have not), I should read.* Om jag hade en bok nu (men det har jag inte), så skulle jag läsa, we have an even more positive feeling that the book is lacking. English is limited in its ability to make use of inversions. Cf. Swedish: *Komme han, så ginge jag med*, where English: *Came he, I went*, would be unintelligible.

§288. Rules for Tenses and Moods. In a present contrary to fact conditional sentence, the past (imperfect) subjunctive is used in the if-(om)-clause. In the conclusion Swedish has either the past (imperfect) subjunctive or its substitute, conditional I.

§289. Whenever a present contrary to fact condition can be rendered in English: *were I to have (be), or, if I were to have (be), or, should I (by hook or by crook) have (be, find, contrive), etc.,* that is, whenever it is possible to transfer a strictly present contrary to fact thought from the present moment (now) into the future, with or without the aid of a temporal adverb, or phrase, e.g., *a few seconds, an hour, this evening, tomorrow, etc.*, we have a future less vivid condition. As no change is made in the tense and mood of the present contrary to fact sentence, it is, as we see, merely a matter of interpretation. Ex. If I were to receive, (or should I by chance receive, or, were I to receive) the money latest by Saturday, I should be glad to help you out. Swedish: Om jag finge penningarna tillbaka, (or, skulle jag händelsevis få penningarna tillbaka, or, finge jag penningarna tillbaka) senast om lördag. så skulle jag med glädje hjälpa er.

§290.

B. Past Contrary to Fact

Om jag hade haft en bok, { så hade jag läst
 If I had had a book, { så skulle jag ha läst
 I should have read

Inversions (Swedish):

Hade jag haft en bok, { så hade jag läst
 or, Jag hade läst, { så skulle jag ha läst
 Jag skulle ha läst, { om jag (hade) haft en bok

Note. The tests suggested, §283, Note, are applicable here both as regards the use of an adverb and the reconstruction of an elliptical element. But while the adverb employed in the case of present contrary to fact constructions refers to present time, it must refer to the past in past contrary to fact sentences. Ex. *Om jag hade haft boken (ett ögonblick sedan, i mörke, i eftermiddag, förra veckan, i fjol), så skulle jag o.s.v...* If I had had the book (a moment ago, this morning, this afternoon, last week, last year), I should have, etc...

§291. *Rules for Tenses and Moods.* In a past contrary to fact conditional sentence, the past perfect (*pluperfect*) subjunctive is used in the if(*om*)-clause. In the conclusion Swedish has either the past perfect (*pluperfect*) subjunctive or its substitute, conditional II.

Note. Some conditional sentences demand close analysis. They have the appearance of contrary to fact conditions. The supplying of the ellipsis usually suffices to show that they are real (simple) conditions. Ex. *Om han kände till hela sammanhanget* (ellipsis: *och jag medger gärna att så var fallet*), *varför gjorde han då så många frågor?* If he knew everything about it (and I really grant that he did) why then did he ask so many questions?

§292. *Elliptical Conditional Sentences.* Either one of the clauses of a conditional sentence (contrary to fact, future more and less vivid) may stand alone. Ex. *Ja, om han bara hade vetat det!* (ellipsis: *så hade han inte gått dit*). Well, if he had only known that! (he would not have gone there).

Note. Many of the so-called optative subjunctives in sentences expressing a wish, an exhortation, etc., are nothing but elliptical conditional sentences. The missing clause is, as a rule, easily reconstructed. Ex. *O, om han blott hade stannat här!* (ellipsis: *så hade vi lätt kunnat förebygga olyckan*). Oh, if he only had remained here! (then we could easily have prevented the accident).

The foregoing statement does not apply to present optative subjunctives. Ex. *Leve konungen!* Long live the king! *Han ville i frid!* May he rest in peace! *Gud välsigne dig!* God bless you (thee)! Such sentences are virtually subordinate clauses depending on a governing verb not expressed. Ex. *Jag önskar, att konungen mätte få leva länge.* Cf. French: *Que le roi vive!* (=Je veux que le roi vive!)

§293. The if-clause of a conditional sentence may be introduced by some other term than the subordinating conjunction if. Ex. *Utan e(de)rt bistånd, herr Karlsson (-om ni icke hade bistått mig, herr Karlsson), hade jag troligen icke (skulle jag troligen icke ha) lyckats i mitt företag.* But for your support, Mr. Karlsson (-if you had not supported me, Mr. Karlsson), I should probably not have succeeded in my undertaking.

Note 1. Closely related to contrary to fact conditional sentences are such hypothetical comparisons as the following introduced by som (om): Ex. *Han beter sig, som om han vore (som vore han) herre i huset.* He acts as if (as though) he were the master of the house. *Han bar sig åt, som om han hade varit (som hade han varit) från förståendet.* He behaved as if (as though) he had been out of his right mind.

Note 2. Hypothetical sentences showing incongruence in the use of tenses are designated mixed conditional sentences. Ex. *Om striden mellan Monitor och Merrimac aldrig (hade) ägt rum, så kunde vi i närvarande stund icke diskutera den betydelsefulla händelsen.* If the battle between the Monitor and Merrimac never had taken place,

we could not discuss the important occurrence at the present time. Observe that the *if*-clause has the past (pluperfect) subjunctive referring to past time, and the conclusion the past (imperfect) subjunctive referring to present time.

B. READING SELECTION

*Striden mellan Monitor och Merrimac, Hampton Roads, den 9 mars 1862.**

Det var söndag. Merrimac, sydstaternas hopp och nordstaternas skräck, ångar vid åttatiden på morgonen med klarerade däck ifrån sin ankarplats, beredd att göra rent hus, och den skulle börja med att fullständigt förstöra ångfregatten Minnesota. Plötsligt väcktes de i omgivningen, som kunnat sova, av kanondunder. Så var sorgespelet i full gång och försynen hade icke hörsammatt unionisternas böner. Merrimac gav Minnesota en morgonhälsning på en miles avstånd och skadade unionskeppets bog.

Detta skott var en signal för Monitor, dvärjen, leksaken, som djärvdes lyfta ankare och ånga sin fruktansvärde fiende till mötes. Merrimacs befälhavare, kapten Buchanan, märkte den underlige, lille fienden och beslöt att expediera honom, innan han gjorde kål på Minnesota, vilken satt fast och kunde vänta på sitt öde.

Merrimac inledde kampen med en kula från en av sina niotums Dahlgrenskanoner. Monitor svarade med ett skott från den ena av sina två elvatums Dahlgrenare. Ett annat från Merrimac blev en träff. Det råkade Monitors kanontorn, som dock endast märktes utan att skadas. Det endast vreds omkring, och dess andra kanon sjöng sin hemskå sång. Så höllo båda skeppen på i flera timmar med att beskjuta varandra utan något vidare resultat, ty bågge tycktes vara osårbara. Under stridens gång steg nordstatsmännens hopp betydligt. Svenskamerikanens beräkningar hade slagit ut rätt, och hans verk hade hejdat vidundrets framfart.

Vid middagstiden tröttnade Monitors befälhavare, den tappre löjtnant Worden, som, ehuru han fått sitt ena öga skadat av en järnskärva från en av Merrimacs splittrade kulor, ännu förde befälet, och beslöt att göra slag i saken. Monitor styrdes rakt på Merrimac i hopp att med sin ramm kunna såra och sänka sin motståndare. Manövern observerades av Merrimacs befälhavare, som vek undan, så att Monitors försök misslyckades. Därpå blev det Merrimacs tur att upprepa manövern. Slagskeppet lyckades verkligen träffa Monitor, men mera till egen än till motståndarens skada, ty den vassa överkanten på Monitors pansarbälte krossade järnbeklädningen på Merrimacs stäv och trängde ett gott stycke in i trävirket. Endast ett ringa märke i Monitors pansar visade var stöten träffat.

Plötsligt drog sig Merrimac ur striden och lämnade Monitor som reddens behärskare. Den stora transportflottan var räddad. I elfte timmen hade försynen verkligen genom sitt redskap, vår snillrike landsman John Ericsson, räddat situationen och slagit det första verkliga slaget för Unionens bestånd.

Monitors märken efter det långa enviget voro obetydliga. Visserligen hade den märken efter tjugotvå kulor, varav två träffat styrhuset, nio tornet,

* (Ur "Nordstjernan", Mars 1937).

åtta sidopansaret och tre däcket. De enda som gjort skada voro de, som träffat styrhuset. En av de grova järnbalkar, som styrhuset var byggt av, bräcktes och intrrycktes en och en halv tum.

Den andra kulan gjorde vida större skada. Den träffade ett av kikhålen, varigenom fartygschefen inifrån iakttog fiendens rörelser och just det, som löjtnant Worden för tillfället hade ögat till. Skärvor av den splittrade kulen inträngde genom kikhålet och som nämnt, sårade den tappre befälhavaren, så att han föll, för tillfället dövad och blind, enögd för livet.

C. QUESTIONS

§294. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. Vad var Merrimac? | 11. Vad beslöt Monitors befälhavare |
| 2. Vad var den beredd att göra? | att göra? |
| 3. Vilka väcktes av kanondunder? | 12. Varför misslyckades Monitors |
| 4. Vad var så i full gång? | manöver? |
| 5. Vad djärvdes Monitor nu att göra? | 13. Vad trängde in i Merrimacs stäv? |
| 6. Vad beslöt Merrimacs befälhavare
då? | 14. Vad gjorde då Merrimac? |
| 7. Hur började kampen? | 15. Vem hade räddat situationen? |
| 8. Vad svarade Monitor med? | 16. Vilka kulor hade gjort skada? |
| 9. Varför vreds Monitors kanontorn
omkring? | 17. Vad bräcktes? |
| 10. Hur länge höllo båda skeppen på
att beskjuta varandra? | 18. Hur iakttog löjtnant Worden
fiendens rörelser? |
| | 19. Varför föll den tappre befäl-
havaren? |

D. EXERCISES

I

§295. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. Merrimac med --(p.p. of klarera) däck var --(past part. of bereda) att göra rent hus.
2. I --(my) omgivning väcktes man av ett --(pres. p. of däna) kanondund-(def. sing.).
3. --(he) märkte --(the) underlig- fiende- som väntade på --(his) öde.
4. Hans försök --(at sinking) --(his) motståndare misslyckades.
5. --(this) var --(his) signal för att ånga --(his) fruktansvärd- fiende till mötes.
6. "--(imper. of sänka) skepp- (def. sing.)!" kommanderade befälhavaren.
7. Ehuru han fått --(his) ena öga skada- av --(a) järnskärva beslöt befälhavare- att sänka --(his) motståndare.
8. --(your, formal) skepp är icke så stor- som --(ours).

9. --(it, c.) särade --(your, familiar) motståndare men icke --(mine).
 10. --(her) manöver lyckades men mera till --(her) egen än till motståndaren-skada.

II

§296. Give the present participle, past participle and imperative of the following verbs: wait, sink, be, have, clear.

E. COMPOSITION

§297. Translate into Swedish:

1. Their terror is our hope, so have no fear!
2. In his neighborhood they were awakened by the roar of our cannons.
3. The peculiar little enemy was waiting to be attacked.
4. He did not pay any heed to my request.
5. This was his signal to steam towards his formidable enemy.
6. His achievement had checked the ravaging of the enemy.
7. After having steamed out of the harbor, it fired a broadside.
8. Their damage was greater than ours.
9. It damaged my ship, but not theirs.
10. Your (formal) maneuver met with success but more to your own disadvantage than to his.

LESSON XIX

A. GRAMMAR

*The Adverb. Comparison of Adverbs. Pronominal Adverbs.
 Position of Adverbs in the Sentence. Notes on the use of certain Adverbs.*

§298. *The Adverb.* In Swedish, as in other languages, we distinguish between primitive and derived adverbs. Primitive adverbs are such words as *ja*, yes; *nej*, no; *här*, here; *så*, so (thus); *nu*, now, etc.

Derived adverbs are, as a rule, formed by conversion from the corresponding adjective. By conversion is meant that the neuter singular of the adjective assumes, without change of form, the function of an adverb. Ex. *Gossen arbetar flitigt*. The boy works industriously. Other adverbs are formed by suffixes. Such are:

- a) *-vis* as in *alnvis*, by the ell, *försöksvis*, tentatively (by way of trial).
- b) *-en* added to an adjective with the suffix *-lig*, e.g., *daglig*.
 Adverb: *dagligen*, daily, *skriffligen*, in writing.
- c) *-(e)lligen*, e.g., *grymmeligen*, cruelly, *nyligen*, newly.
- d) *-s* (the genitive *-sl*), e.g., *nordanfjälls*, to the north of the fells (mountains).

- e) -tals. Ex. *timtals*, for hours (at a time).
- f) -städes, e.g., *ingenstädes*, nowhere, *annorstädes*, elsewhere.
- g) -stans, e.g., *ingenstans*, nowhere.
- h) -ledes, e.g., *annorledes*, otherwise.
- i) -lunda, e.g., *annorlunda*, otherwise.
- j) -vart, e.g., *ostvart*, eastward(s), etc., and in a few terms like: *Jag kommer ingen vart*. I get nowhere. *Man kommer inte någon vart med honom*. You don't get anywhere with him.
- k) -ande (in colloquial speech), is joined to a few nouns, originally second component part of compounds, e.g., *kritande vit*, white as chalk (chalky white); *beckande mörk*, pitch-dark, and others.

§299. With reference to their meaning, adverbs are divided into the following groups:

- a) *Local adverbs*. Ex. *här*, here; *där*, there; *hit*, here (hither); *dit*, there (thither); *in*, in (He came in); *inne*, in, within (He is in, i.e., in the house, etc.); *ut*, out (go out); *ute*, out, outside (He is out, i.e., he is not in, at home).
- b) *Temporal adverbs*. Ex. *nu*, now; *då*, then (at that time); *fordom*, of old; *framdeles*, in the future; *länge*, long (for a long time); *redan*, already; *strax*, straightway; *snart*, soon, etc.
- c) *Modal adverbs*. Ex. *så*, so, thus; *gärna*, gladly (yearningly); *hastigt*, hastily; *illa*, badly; *väl*, well, etc.
- d) *Adverbs of affirmation, negation, and probability*. Ex. *ja*, *jo*, yes; *förvisso*. See §304; *ej*, *icke*, *inte*, *ingalunda*, *nej*, no; *möjlig*, possibly; *tro-ligen*, probably; *knappast*, scarcely (probably not).
- e) *Adverbs of various other shades of meaning*:
 - 1. *Quantity and Degree*. Ex. *lika*, alike, equally, just as; *synnerlig*, especially.
 - 2. *Addition and exclusion, means, cause, etc.* Ex. *även*, even (too); *dessutom*, besides; *också*, also (too); *blott*, only; *endast*, only; *härmed*, hereby; *därför*, therefore.

§300. *Comparison of Adverbs*. Adverbs, the form of which is that of the neuter singular of the adjective, are compared like the adjective:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>snabbt</i> , swiftly	<i>snabbare</i> , more swiftly	<i>snabbast</i> , most swiftly
<i>långt</i> , far (of distance)	<i>längre</i> , farther	<i>längst</i> , farthest

§301. Other adverbs capable of comparison. Some of them are irregular:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>bra</i> (<i>väl</i>), well	<i>bättre</i> , better	<i>bäst</i> , best
<i>fram(me)</i> , forward	<i>främre</i> , more forward	<i>främst</i> , foremost
<i>illa</i> , badly	<i>värre</i> , worse	<i>värst</i> , worst

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>längt, far</i> (space)	<i>längre, farther</i>	<i>längst, farthest</i>
<i>länge, long</i> (time)	<i>längre, longer</i>	<i>längst, longest</i>
<i>ofta, often</i>	<i>oftare, oftener</i> (more often)	<i>oftast, oftenest</i> (most often)
<i>fort, fast</i>	<i>fortare, faster</i>	<i>fortast, fastest</i>
<i>gärna, willingly</i>	<i>hellre, rather</i>	<i>helst, preferably</i>
<i>däligt, badly</i>	<i>sämre, worse</i>	<i>sämt, worst</i>
<i>nära, near</i>	<i>närmare, nearer</i>	<i>närmast, nearest</i>
<i>sent, late</i>	<i>senare, later</i>	<i>senast, latest</i>

Note 1. The comparative and the superlative forms of the adverb are invariable. Ex. (*Karl läser tydligt*), *Erik läser tydligare, men Gustav läser tydligast*. (Charles reads clearly), Eric reads more clearly, but Gustave reads most clearly.

An exception to the above rule is to be noted in expressions of the following type involving the superlative. Ex. *Han körde det fortaste, han kunde*. He drove as fast as he possibly could. *Hon gick det tystaste, hon kunde*. She walked as silently (quietly) as she possibly could.

Note 2. Present participles are frequently used as adverbs. Ex. *Resan har gått överraskande fort*. The journey has been surprisingly swift.

§302. *Pronominal Adverbs.* Several adverbs have a pronominal meaning. They are, as a rule, formed from pronominal stems:

1. *Demonstrative Adverbs:* *här, here; där there; hit, hither; dit, thither; då, sedan, then; så, so, etc.* Many of them are compounds: *därför, therefore; därmed with that; därigenom, by that; härmed, herewith; härigenom, by this* (means).

2. *Relative Adverbs:* *där, where; var, varest (där), where; vart, varthän (dit), whither, where. Compounds: varav, whereof, of which; varom, of which; vari, wherein; varuti, in which; varifrån, from where, whence, etc.*

3. *Interrogative Adverbs:* *var? varest? where? vart? varthän?* where from? whence? *varmad?* wherewith? with what? *när? when?* *hur(u)? how?* *varför? why?* *vartill? whereto?* *varigenom? by what means?* etc.

4. *Indefinite Adverbs:* *annorlunda, otherwise; ingenstädes, nowhere; någonstädes, somewhere; hur som helst, anyhow; när som helst, at any time; var som helst, anywhere; vart som helst, to any place (anywhere) etc.*

5. *Indefinite Relative Adverbs:* Interrogatives, when used as indefinite relative adverbs, are frequently reinforced by the addition of *än* and *helst*. Ex. *Ni kan fråga vem som helst, det vet alla människor*. You may ask anybody, everybody knows it. *Vart han än vände sig, såg han ingen utväg*. In whichever direction he turned, he saw no way out. *Hur det än går, försöker jag*. However it may turn out, I will try.

§303. *Position of Adverbs.* The position of the negative adverbs *ej, icke, inte, not; aldrig, never, and ingalunda, on no account, is generally as follows:*

1. In principal clauses they are placed:

a) After the finite form of the verb. Ex. *Han arbetar inte (ej,*

icke, aldrig, ingalunda om söndagarna. He does not (never does, on any account) work (on) Sundays.

A noun object is placed after the negative. Ex. *Läraren hörde icke lärjungen.* The teacher did not hear the pupil.

An unstressed pronoun object is placed between the verb and the negative. Ex. *Han hörde honom (henne, den, dem) icke.* He did not hear him (her, it, them).

b) If the verb is in a compound tense, the negative is placed between the auxiliary verb and the supine or past participle. Ex. *Mannen har icke arbetat på tre månader.* The man has not been working for three months. *Hon var nyligen hemkommen, när vi träffades.* She had returned shortly before we met.

2. In subordinate clauses the negative is placed:

a) Before the simple verb. Ex. *Jag anhåller, att mannen icke får företräde.* I demand that the man be not given preference.

b) Before the auxiliary in compound tenses. Ex. *Han påstod, att systern aldrig varit (-hade varit) där.* He maintained that the (-his) sister never had been there.

Note also the position of the negative in constructions of the following type involving the use of the indefinite pronoun *ingenting*, nothing, or a substantive modified by the adjective *ingen*, no. Ex. *Han sade sig ingenting ha hört.* He said that he had heard nothing (hadn't heard anything).

Att inga vänner ha är en stor olycka. To have no friends is a great misfortune.

c) Some adverbs denoting indefinite time and some others have been designated *movable adverbs* because, like the negative adverbs, they occupy different positions in different clauses. Such are: *väl*, I suppose; *nog*, possibly; *tyvärr*, unfortunately; *alltid*, always; *jämt*, all the time; *någonsin*, ever.

Examples

1. *Han är väl hungrig.* He is presumably hungry.
2. *Hon reser snart till gamla landet.*
She will soon make a trip to the old country.
3. *Vi har jämt (alltid) främmande i huset.*
We always have visitors in the house.
4. *Han säger, att han nog blivit missförstådd.*
He says that he has possibly been misunderstood.
5. *Det går ett rykte, att hon redan (har) rest till Europa.*
It is rumored that she has already departed for Europe.
6. *Det gläder oss, att vi alltid haft goda vänner.*
We rejoice(in the thought)that we have always had good friends.

Note. In English an adverb is frequently placed between the subject and the verb. This is not permissible in Swedish in a principal clause. Ex. *Vi tvätta oss alltid om händerna innan vi äta.* We always wash our hands before eating. In a subordinate clause the adverb precedes the verb. Ex. *Han sade, att de alltid tvätta sig om händerna...* He said that they always wash their hands... etc.

NOTES ON THE USE OF CERTAIN ADVERBS

§304. *ja, jo.* The adverb *ja*, yes, is used affirmatively. Ex. *Får jag lov att bjuda på ett glas limonad? - Ja tack!* May I offer you a glass of lemonade? - Yes, thank you.

Jo, yes, is used in answering a negative question or in contradicting (politely), or correcting a negative statement. Ex. *Hon får väl inte följa med? - Jo visst får hon det!* She won't be permitted to go along, I suppose? - Why certainly she will! *Ni har aldrig varit i London, förstår jag.* - *Jo, det har jag nog och mer än en gång också!* You have never been in London, I take it? - I beg your pardon, I certainly have, and more than once at that.

Jo also corresponds to English *well*, *oh*, *why*, in expressions of the following type: *Vad skall det här föreställa?* - *Jo, det är modellen till en kanot.* What is this supposed to be? - Why (well), it is the model of a canoe.

§305. *Gärna (hellre, helst).* Ex. *Jag dricker gärna vatten.* (Cf. German *gern*, yearningly). I like water. *Jag dricker hellre mjölk.* (Cf. Germ. *lieber*, English *liefer*). I would rather drink milk (-I prefer milk). *Jag dricker helst kaffe.* I like coffee best.

Note. *ju... desto* in comparisons is the equivalent of English *the...the* in sentences of the following type: *Kom bara, ju förr desto bättre.* Be sure to come, the sooner the better.

§306. *Eller hur?* Cf. German *nicht wahr?* and French *n'est ce pas?* Ex. *Ni är väl färdig snart, eller hur?* You will be ready shortly, will you not? *Ni talar ju svenska, eller hur?* You speak Swedish, don't you?

Heller, icke (inte) heller, nor, neither. Ex. *Ni tycks inte finna er här. - Inte heller gör(a) vi det.* You seem not to be content here. - Neither (nor) are we. *Jag tror inte, att han kommer att göra ett andra försök. - Det tror inte jag heller (or, Inte jag heller).* I don't think that he will make a second attempt. - I don't think so either (neither do I, nor (do) I).

§307. Note the rendering in English of the following Swedish adverbs:

Nog. Ex. *Han blir nog glad, när han får ert brev.* I dare say he will be delighted when he gets your letter.

Väl. Ex. *Ni har väl hört, att han (har) varit sjuk.* I suppose (take it) that you have heard about his sickness.

Bäst. Ex. *Det vore bäst, om han inte komme.* It would be best if he did not come.

Kanske. Ex. *Ni tycker kanske inte så mycket om att vara sysslös.* You may not be so fond of being unoccupied.

Händelsevis. Ex. *Om ni händelsevis skulle komma in till staden under veckan, så var god och ring.* If you should happen to come into town during the week, kindly give me a ring.

Sannolikt. Ex. *Han kommer sannolikt att tillbringa julen i fäderneslandet.* He is likely to pass the Christmas holidays in his native land.

Säkert. Ex. *Ni kommer säkert att ångra det.* You are sure to regret it.

Förstads. Ex. *Det där locket kommer att brytas upp förstads!* That lid will be forced open, of course.

Redan. Ex. *Han lär inträffa här redan i eftermiddag.* He is expected to arrive here this very afternoon.

Redan. Ex. *Detta tilldrog sig redan i början på tjugotalet.* This happened as early as the beginning of the twenties. *Redan som barn skrev han poesi.* Even as a child he wrote poetry.

Nämligen. Ex. *Han var nämligen vid den tiden utan medel.* He was at that time without means (you see).

Visserligen. Ex. *Löftet är visserligen intet att lita på, men ...* The promise is truly nothing to rely upon, but...

Kvar. Ex. *Är det något kvar av det hårla brödet?* Is there anything left of the hard bread? *På alperna ligger snön kvar året om.* In the alps the snow remains the whole year.

Förr, formerly, previously. The idiomatic use of this adverb should be carefully noted. Cf. German *erst* which, like Swedish *först*, is rendered in English *not until* or *only*. Ex. *Posten ankommer först (= inte förrän) kl. 8:00 f.m.* The mail does not arrive until 8 a.m. *Först när sammanstötningen var oundviklig, upptäckte föraren sitt misstag.* Only when (not until) the collision was unavoidable, did the driver discover his mistake.

Ännu. This adverb expresses: a) duration of time and corresponds to English *still*, or b) time before which, English *yet*. Ex. *Kan ni ännu höra hans stämma där ute?* Can you still hear his voice out there? *Han har ännu inte yttrat ett ljud.* He has not yet uttered a sound.

Än, when preceded by a pronoun (*vad, vem, hur(u)*), corresponds to English *whatever, whoever, however*. Ex. *Vad de än må lägga honom till last, skola de dock erkänna hans goda vilja.* Whatever they may charge against him, they must nevertheless recognize his good will. *Låt honom komma in, vem han än må vara!* Let him come in, whoever he may be! *Hur tråget han än arbetade, uppnådde han dock aldrig sitt mål.* However assiduously he toiled, he never reached his goal.

Aldrig så. Ex. *Jag gjorde det icke, om ni ock gäve mig aldrig så mycket.* I should refuse to do it were you to give me (or, even if you were to give me, or, if you gave me) ever so much.

§308. Adverbs ending in *-a* and *-e* denote *place where*. The simple adverb denotes *place to which*. Ex. *Mannen kom hem i går.* He is now at home. In the same manner are used: *ut*, out; *ute*, outside; *in* (*i*), in; *inne*, within; *upp*, up; *uppe*, up; *bort*, away; *borta*, away (from home); *ner* (*ned*), down; *nere*, down (below); *fram*, forward; *framme*, at the goal (arrived).

§309. Adverbial phrases involving the preposition *till* and *i*:

a) In medieval Swedish the preposition *till* governed the genitive case. Many such phrases are in active use in modern Swedish. Ex. *Gå till*

bords, to take one's place at table; *sitta till bords*, to be seated at table; *gå till sängs*, to go to bed; *gå till fots*, to go on foot; *gå till sjöss*, to go to sea; *gå någon till handa* (gen. pl.), to aid (assist) someone; *till hands*, at hand.

b) Some adverbial genitives (ending in -s) are preceded by the preposition *i*. Ex. *i söndags*, last Sunday (and so in the case of all the days of the week); *i våras*, last spring (and so for the remaining seasons: *i somras*, *i höstas*, *i vintras*); *i morgon*, this morning; *i förmiddags*, this afternoon; *i eftermiddags*, this afternoon; *i julas*, last Christmas. Cf. §318, 2 and 3.

§310. A large number of adverbs are pronominal adverbs, i.e., demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite adverbs, §302. It should be noted, however, that in Swedish demonstrative adverbs may also function as relative adverbs. Ex. *Jag har för avsikt att stanna där jag är* (= *på den plats*, *där jag är*). The corresponding English construction is: I mean to stay where I am. Cf. also: *De övernattade nära den plats*, *där monumentet nu reser sig*. They spent the night near (the place) where the monument now rises.

§311. Compound adverbs, formed by combining such adverbs as *här*, *där*, *var* and a preposition are common in Swedish. Generally speaking they correspond to a preposition + pronoun. Ex. *Tag stolen på vilken han satt* = *Tag stolen, som han satt på*. Take the chair on which he sat. The latter is the more common in spoken, the former in written Swedish.

It must be borne in mind that the compound adverbs under discussion are not used in referring to persons. Ex. *Jag har inte hört något därörom*. I have not heard anything about that (it). The reference is here to some event or other. *Om honom (henne, dem) ha vi hört bara gott*. We have heard nothing but good (reports) about him (her, them).

B. READING SELECTION

John Ericsson

Det anspråklösa hemmet vid Långbanshyttan, där uppfinnaren föddes den 31 juli 1803, var en torvtäckt tvåväningsbyggnad. I familjen gick en tradition att någon vänlig tomtे några år tidigare skulle ha sagt "att i den stugan som Sophia Ericsson emottog såsom arv efter fadern, skulle födas en gosse, vilkens namn skulle bli känt i hela världen", och denna profetia lär ha gjort ett djupt intrryck på den känsliga och något mystiskt anlagda modern. I denna stuga uppväxte de tre barnen, dottern Karolina och sönerna Nils och John.

John visade tidigt stor begåvning. Han var aldrig sysslolös. Efter att ha varit verksam i hela sju år vid Göta kanal-bygget, fick han för sig, att han skulle bli soldat. Greve von Platen, som ledde arbetet, sökte över-

tala ynglingen att utbilda sig till ingenjör, men förgäves. Då blev von Platen otälig och bad honom ge sig i väg. Det gjorde han också. Kort därför kom han in vid Jämtlands fältjägarkår, där han utnämndes till fänrik. Under sin tjänsttid vid kåren blev han allas gunstling från chefen till den simple soldaten. Särskilt utmärkte han sig såsom kartograf. Han uppmärksammades först av dåvarande kronprins Oscar, senare av konung Carl XIV Johan. Den senare utnämnde den unge fänriken till löjtnant.

Men det var uppfinnaregåvan som kom honom att längta bort. År 1823 hade han lyckats bygga en varmluftsmaskin. Maskinens betydelse förstod man emellertid icke i Sverige. Konung Carl Johan rådde honom då att exploatera den i utlandet. Det var nog bra, men sådant kostar pengar, och just detta fattades för den unge uppfinnaren.

En dag frågade en av kamraterna vid kåren honom, "Hur mycket behöver du, vän John, för att starta med din eldmaskin?"

"Jag skulle kunna ge mig i väg om fjorton dagar, om jag ägde 1,000. riksdaler", svarade Ericsson..

"Drag en växel på mig, John lille", sade vännen.

Han fick permission, och fjorton dagar senare lämnade tjugotreåringen sitt fosterland, som han aldrig mera skulle återse. Han landsteg i England den 18 maj 1826. Men han gjorde ingen lycka där. Tretton år senare (1839) packade han sina kappsäckar och styrde kosan mot U.S.A., det hägrande framtidsländet. Där blev han medborgare och hjälpte till att rädda Unionen. Där fick han också gå till ro efter väl förrättat värv 1889. År 1890 återfördes han till fosterjorden ombord på U. S. Baltimore. Under salut från svenska batterier fördes den döde i land i Stockholm och därifrån med extratåg till den värmländska hembygden.

C. QUESTIONS

§312. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. När och var föddes John Ericsson?
2. Vad skulle tomten ha sagt?
3. På vem gjorde denna profetia ett djupt intryck?
4. Hur många barn voro de?
5. Vad fick John för sig efter Götakanalbygget?
6. Vad försökte man övertala honom att göra?
7. Vart begav han sig därför?
8. Hur utmärkte sig John vid fältjägarkåren?
9. Vad blev han utnämnd till?
10. Vad kom honom att längta bort?
11. Varför rådde man John att fara till utlandet?
12. Vad svarade John på sin väns fråga?
13. Vart styrde han kosan?
14. Vad hjälpte han till med i U.S.A.?
15. Hur fördes den döde i land i Stockholm?

D. EXERCISES

I

§313. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. Om --(a) gosse --(past of skola) föda- i --(this) stuga så kom- han att bli mycket --(past part. of känna) i hel- värld- .
2. --(the) sympatisk- anlagd- moder- blev --(singularly) djupt gripen.
3. Han ville --(superl. of gärna) bli soldat.
4. Hade det varit --(comp. of bra) om de gjort det --(first)?
5. --(early) --(past ind. of visa) han stor begävning.
6. Båd- vi --(them), så fing- de nog komma.
7. Ack om han vor- här igen!
8. Gåv- de sig blott i väg!
9. Fing- vi permission, så återsåg- vi det snart.
10. --(I) --(past ind. of skola) ha gjort det, om jag hade --(supine of kunna).

II

§314. Give the comparison of the following adverbs: *bra*, *gärna*, *mycket*, *mystiskt*, *tidigt*.

E. COMPOSITION

§315. Translate into Swedish:

1. Should a boy be born here, they thought, he would become a very famous man.
2. Were she without parents, she would have to move.
3. If they had succeeded better in persuading us, we would have stayed there.
4. With their money it would be possible to do it more quickly.
5. They acted today as if they were everybody's favorites.
6. They would surely be permitted to come if we should ask them.
7. Had they fully understood its importance, they would have given him the money.
8. We would rather return the machine to you.
9. If she would only go!
10. That I most certainly would do if I could!

LESSON XX

A. GRAMMAR

*List of Prepositions and Prepositional Expressions
of Common Occurrence. Government of Prepositions.
Position of Prepositions. Notes on the Use of certain Prepositions.*

§316. LIST OF PREPOSITIONS AND PREPOSITIONAL EXPRESSIONS

<i>angående</i> , concerning	<i>innan</i> , before	<i>rörande</i> , concerning
<i>av</i> , of, off	<i>innanför</i> , within	<i>sedan</i> , since
<i>bakom</i> , behind	<i>inom</i> , in, within	<i>till</i> , to, as, for
<i>beträffande</i> , concerning	<i>inpå</i> , close to, into	<i>till följd av</i> , as a consequence of
<i>bland</i> , <i>ibland</i> , among	<i>jämte</i> , by, beside	<i>trots</i> , in spite of, despite
<i>bortom</i> , beyond	<i>kring</i> , <i>omkring</i> , around	<i>undan</i> , from, away from
<i>bredvid</i> , by the side of	<i>about</i>	<i>undantagandes</i> , excepting
<i>efter</i> , after, behind	<i> längs</i> , <i> längs utmed</i> ,	<i>under</i> , under, during
<i>enligt</i> , according to	<i>along</i>	<i>uppför</i> , up (stairs, a grade, etc.)
<i>framför</i> , <i>inför</i> , in front	<i>med</i> , with, by means of	<i>ur</i> , <i>ut ur</i> , out of
of (in the presence of)	<i>med anledning av</i> , on account of	<i>utan</i> , without
<i>från</i> , from	<i>med avseende på</i> , with reference to	<i>utanför</i> , outside of
<i>för</i> , for	<i>med hänsyn till</i> , in regard to	<i>utefter</i> , along (a river, etc.)
<i>för-skull</i> , for the sake of	<i>medelst</i> , by means of	<i>utför</i> , down (a grade, etc.)
<i>för -- sedan</i> , (long) ago	<i>mellan</i> , <i>emellan</i> , between	<i>utmed</i> , along (a road, etc.)
<i>förbi</i> , by, past	<i>mot</i> , <i>emot</i> , against	<i>utom</i> , outside, besides, except
<i>före</i> , ahead of, before	<i>towards</i>	<i>vid</i> , <i>invid</i> , by, close to, at
<i>genom</i> , <i>i genom</i> , through, by	<i>nedanför</i> , below	<i>vidkommande</i> , concerning
<i>hitom</i> , on this side	<i>nedför</i> , down	<i>å</i> (see <i>på</i>), <i>å båle bränna</i> , to be burned at the stake
<i>hos</i> , with, by, in, at the	<i>nära</i> , near	<i>ät -- till</i> , towards
house of (Cf. Germ. <i>bei</i> and French <i>chez</i>)	<i>oaktat</i> , in spite of	<i>ända till</i> , as far as
<i>i</i> , in, <i>inuti</i> , in, into, within	<i>om</i> , <i>omkring</i> , round about, on, during	<i>över</i> , above, across
<i>i följd av</i> , in consequence of	<i>ovan</i> , <i>ovanför</i> , above	
<i>i kraft av</i> , by virtue of	<i>ovanpå</i> , on top of	
<i>i stället för</i> , instead of	<i>på</i> , <i>å</i> , on, upon	
<i>i trots av</i> , in spite of		

GOVERNMENT OF PREPOSITIONS AND POSITION OF PREPOSITIONS

§317. Prepositions are mostly placed before substantives (and words functioning as such). Together with them, they form modifiers of other words. Prepositions may be placed before almost any part of speech as well as before whole sentences.

§318. The Swedish prepositions govern oblique cases of the pronouns and the corresponding cases of the nouns, i.e., the genitive (possessive), the dative (indirect object) and the accusative (direct object).

Note 1. The genitive s-forms are used in the combination *för -- skull*. Ex. *för hennes skull*, for her sake; *för trevnadens skull*, for the sake of comfort; *för deras skull*, for their sake; *för min mors (fars, brors, etc.) skull*, for my mother's (father's, brother's, etc.) sake.

Note 2. Adverbial s-forms of the substantive preceded by prepositions are used:

- a) After *till*. Ex. *till dess*, till then; *till fjälls*, to the mountains; *till lands*, to land; *till skogs*, to the woods; *till synes*, seemingly; *till äventyrs*, by chance; *till vardags*, for everyday purposes.
- The use of the adverbial s-form after other prepositions is rare: *från havs*, from the ocean; *mot sols*, against the sun; *utåt havs*, out toward the ocean.
- b) After the preposition *i* in the names of the days of the week and the word *middag*, mid-day. Ex. *i tisdags*, last Tuesday; *i middags*, at noon. These expressions refer to past time.

Note 3. An adverbial s-form of the substantive is used after the preposition *i* when reference is made to the nearest past season or festival: *i våras*, last spring; *i somras*, last summer, etc.; *i julas*, last Christmas; *i påskas*, last Easter, etc.

Note 4. Some prepositional expressions are made up of a preposition + an archaic case form. Ex. *Man ur huse*, (to turn out) to a man; *i Herranom*, in the Lord; *i allo*, in all respects; *för visso*, for a certainty; *i godo*, amicably; *att komma någon till godo*, to benefit someone; *halla till godo med något*, to put up (be satisfied) with something; *i förstone*, at first, in the beginning; *gå någon till handa*, to aid (assist) someone; *giva till spillo*, to leave (give over) to destruction; *till salu*, for sale.

§319. As a rule the prepositions are placed before the governed word and its preceding attributes. Ex. *Fursten satt själv vid styret i sin vackra lustjakt*. The prince sat personally at the helm of his beautiful pleasure yacht. *Värden gick emot oss med av glädje strålande ögon*. The host approached us with (his) eyes beaming with joy.

§320. The prepositions *mellan*, between; *emot*, against; *förutan*, without; *igenom*, throughout; *nedför*, down; *omkring*, around; *uppför*, up; *utefter*, along; *utför*, down, and a few others may also stand after the word governed. Ex. *Han är, oss emellan sagt, otillförlitlig*. He is, between ourselves, unreliable. *Jag gör det, honom förutan, enär han så ofta gjort mig emot*. I am doing it without him, because he has so often opposed me. *Hon var olycklig hela livet igenom*. She was unhappy throughout her whole life. *Fattig och arm gick hon landet omkring*. Poor and miserable, she walked about the country. *Vi slantade hela stranden utefter*. We trolled along the entire shore.

§321. When the word governed by a preposition begins the sentence, the preposition is placed at the end. Ex. *Barnen tar jag vård om*. I shall take care of the children.

Note. The above rule always applies to the relative pronoun *som*. Ex. *Boken, som jag läser i*. The book in which I read (I read in). *Idealen, som vi kämpa för*. The ideals for which we fight (we fight for). *Han lyckas i allt, vad han försöker sig på*. He succeeds in everything at which he tries his hand (he tries his hand at).

The relative pronoun *vilken* (*vilket*, *vilka*) is usually preceded by its governing preposition, but the latter may also be relegated to the end of the sentence as in the case of *som*. Ex. *Det arbete, med vilket ni sysselsätter er.* (or, *vilket ni sysselsätter er med*, *är mödosamt*). The work with which you are occupied (or, which you are occupied with) is laborious.

The use of the relative *vilken* preceded by a preposition is characteristic of the literary style and is practically banished from the spoken language.

§322. The prepositions are usually repeated when the governed terms are to be emphasized, or when they are connected by more than one word, or when they belong to different predicates. Ex. *Med liv och med lust arbetar den, som tror sig ha en mission.* He who believes that he has a mission works with heart and soul. Otherwise the preposition is not repeated: *Med arbetsamhet, flit och ihärdighet kommer man långt.* Through industry, diligence and perseverance you get far.

Note 1. Much freedom obtains in some cases. Thus we say: *Han bevektes varken med hot eller med böner*, or, *med varken hot eller böner*, or, mostly in colloquial speech, *varken med hot eller böner*. He was prevailed upon neither by threats nor by supplications.

Note 2. Just as a preposition is capable of governing several coordinated terms, two (or more) prepositions may jointly govern one and the same word. Ex. *i och för denna angelägenhet*, in (and for) this urgency; *i och med detta steg*, in that he took this step; lit. *in and with this step*.

§323. A preposition often governs:

a) an infinitive. Ex. *Ni får välja mellan att sitta stilla och att bli utvisad.* You may choose between remaining quiet and being ordered out (of the room).

b) Less often the term governed is an adverb: *Han skall stanna här för alltid.* He is to remain here permanently.

c) a prepositional expression. Ex. *Jag kommer att arbeta här till om måndag.* I shall be working here until Monday.

d) A preposition frequently governs an entire clause: *Han satt och grubblade över hur han skulle kunna komma ur sin svåra belägenhet.* He sat there worrying over how he might be able to extricate himself from his difficult position. *Sörj ni blott för att vi få stå, ej springa* (Runeberg). You just see to it that we have a chance to stand (up and fight), not run.

ILLUSTRATIONS OF THE USE OF SOME PREPOSITIONS

§324. Av.

a) In titles: *Konungen av Sverige.* The King of Sweden.

b) Material: *Pennan är av guld.* The pen is of gold

c) Agency: *Han älskas av alla.* He is loved by all.

d) Cause: *Hon grät av glädje.* She wept for joy. *Mannen dog av hunger.* The man died of hunger; *att döma av hans sätt,* to judge by his manner; *att darra av fruktan,* to tremble with fear; *att vara stel av kold,* to be stiff with cold; *ett rum fullt av folk,* a room crowded with people; *av hat (kärlek, medlidande),* out of hate (love, compassion).

e) Quality, origin, source, characteristic: *En man av ära,* a man of honor; *han är av ädel börd,* he is of noble extraction. *Jag har fått boken av en vän.* I have received the book from a friend. *Han är munter av sig.* He is a cheerful man.

f) Partitive sense: *Önskar ni ett glas av detta vin?* Do you wish a glass of this wine? *Detta är den snabbaste av alla löparna.* This one is the speediest of all the runners.

§325. Efter.

a) Time or sequence: *Efter arbetet är det skönt att vila.* After work it is delightful to rest. *Vem är det som tassar efter mig?* Who is it that is pitapatting behind me? *Efter mig kommer en annan.* After me another will come.

b) After verbs of asking, looking, sending, striving, etc.: *Att skicka efter någon,* to send for someone; *att leta efter något,* to be hunting (looking) for something; *att fråga efter någon (något),* to inquire for someone (something); *att sträva efter något,* to strive for something; *att döma efter något,* to judge by something; *att rätta sig efter någon (något),* to be governed by someone (something).

c) *Efter (enligt) vad jag hört,* according to what I have heard.

§326. För.

a) *Att sörja för någon (något),* to provide for someone (something); *att tala om något för någon,* to relate something to someone; *att ingen förståelse ha för något,* to lack appreciation (understanding) of something.

b) *Var så god och ge mig för en krona konfekt.* Kindly give me a crown's worth of candy. *Hur mycket har ni betalt för racketen [rak:ətən]?* How much have you paid for the racket?

c) *Med döden för ögonen,* with death staring one in the face; *faran står för dörren,* danger is at hand (at the door); *att spänna hästen för kärran,* to hitch the horse to the cart.

d) *Det är nog för i dag (för en vecka, etc.).* It is enough for today (for a week etc.).

e) *Att översätta ord för ord,* to translate word for word; *att bli bättre (sämre) dag för dag,* to grow better (worse) day by day.

f) *för -- sedan:* *för en vecka sedan,* a week ago; *för länge sedan,* long ago.

g) After verbs denoting flight, concealment, caution, fear, etc.: *Att fly för fienden,* to flee before (in the presence of) the enemy. (Cf. Germ. *vor einem fliehen*); *att gömma sig för någon,* to hide (oneself) from someone; *att varna någon för något,* to warn (caution) someone against something or someone; *att akta sig för någon (något),* to be on one's guard against someone (something); *att vara rädd för någon (något),* to be afraid of someone (something); *att skrämma*

någon till något, to frighten someone into doing something; *att skrämma bort (upp)*, to frighten (scare) away (up); *att icke låta skrämma sig (or, låta sig skrämmas) av någon (något)*, not to (allow oneself to) be frightened by anybody (anything); *att skrämma någon med hotelse*r, to frighten somebody with threats; *för sig själv*, by oneself; *icke för mitt liv*, not for my life; *han är stor för sin ålder*, he is tall for his age; *det är lätt (svårt, nyttigt, skadligt) för någon*, it is easy (difficult, beneficial, injurious) to (for) someone. The alternate construction is dative without preposition: *det är mig (dig, honom, oss, dem) lätt, svårt, etc.* *Död för världen*, dead to the world; *taga av sig hatten för någon*, to take off one's hat for someone; *att köpa (sälja) för*, to buy (sell) for; *att förskräckas för*, to shudder at; *att ha(va) förtroende för*, to have confidence in; *att ha(va) intresse för (vara intresserad för)*, to have interest in (be interested in); *att rygga tillbaka för någon (något)*, to shrink from someone (something), etc.

§327. *Genom*. Ex. *Han läter hälsa genom sin bror*. He sends greetings through his brother. *Genom sitt dåliga uppförande förlorade han vårt förtroende*. On account of (because of) his bad conduct he lost our confidence.

§328. *Hos*. Ex. *Hos skomakaren (skräddaren, läkaren)*, at the shoemaker's, the tailor's, the doctor's (house); *på middagen hos X*, at the dinner-party at X's; *det finns hos honom något visst obeskrivligt*, there is something about him of a certain, indescribable nature; *detta ställe finnes hos Emerson*, this passage is found in Emerson; *att vara i tjänst hos någon*, to be in the employ of someone.

§329. I.

a) Place (literal): *Att vara i ett rum*, to be in a room; *att gå in i ett rum (en trädgård, en butik)*, to walk into (enter) a room (a garden, a shop).

Note the difference in meaning of the two expressions: *att gå in i kyrkan (i skolan)*, to go into the church (the school), and, *att gå i kyrkan (i skolan)*, to attend church (school), be of school age. Cf. parallel constructions in French and German.

b) Place (figuratively): *Att råka i svårigheter*, to get into difficulties; *att leva i fattigdom (i tron; på hoppet)*, to live in poverty (in faith; in hope).

c) Time (past): *I höstas* (and so in the case of other seasons), last fall; *i söndags* (and so in the case of the other days of the week), last Sunday; *i går (förgår)*, yesterday (day before yesterday); *i dag*, today; *i hundratals år*, for hundreds of years; *en gång i veckan (månaden)*, once a week (a month).

d) Change, transition: *Grädde förvandlas i smör och ost*, cream is changed into butter and cheese; *något går i bitar*, something goes to pieces.

§330. *Med.*, with various shades of meaning:

a) *Att skriva med penna*, to write with a pen. *Vi resa med tåg (ångbåt, bil)*. We travel by train (steamer, auto). *Att slåss med någon*, to fight with someone; *att gifta sig med någon*, to get married (to marry); *i jämförelse med*, quite equal to; *att skicka något med posten*, to send something by mail.

b) In a number of set phrases. Ex. *besläktad med*, related to; *att tala med*, to talk with, to speak to.

§331. *Mot, emot*

a) Direction: *Att marschera mot fienden*, to march against the enemy; *att vara vänlig (god) mot någon*, to be friendly (kind) towards someone; *mot kvällen (aftonen, morgonen)*, towards evening (morning); *att gå emot någon*, to go to meet someone.

b) Exchange, comparison: *Att byta ut något mot något*, to exchange something for something; *att vinna med tio poäng mot fem*, to win ten points to five.

c) Opposition: *Att arbeta emot (mot) någon (något)*, to work against someone (something).

d) Remedy, preventative: *Mediciner äro medel mot olika sjukdomar*. Medicines are remedies for various diseases.

§332. *Om*, about, around, in, for, of, etc.

a) With various shades of meaning. Ex. *att skriva (tala) om något (någon)*, to write (talk) about something (someone). *Vad handlar uppsatsen om?* What does the article deal with (treat of)? *Han visste intet om saken*. He knew nothing about the matter.

b) Time (pending and within which): *Han skall vara här om tio minuter*. He is due here in ten minutes. *Om ett par dagar (en månad, ett år)*, in a couple of days (a month, a year). *Om onsdag ha vi redan rest*. We shall be gone (by) next Wednesday. *Men vi återvända om två veckor*. But we shall return in two weeks.

c) Time (indefinite): *Om dagen (natten, sommaren, vintern, våren, hösten)*, in the daytime (at night, in summer, winter, spring, fall).

d) With verbs of asking, contending, etc.: *Att bedja (be) om något*, to ask a favor. Ex. *Får jag be om ett glas vatten?* May I ask for a glass of water? *Tiggaren bad mannen om en slant*. The beggar asked the man for a penny. *Att fråga*, to ask for information, to inquire. See *efter*. §325, b). *Att spela om pengar*, to gamble (play for money); *att tävla om ett pris*, to compete for a prize; *att anhålla om något*, to request something.

e) In many idiomatic expressions: *Att vara våt om fötterna*, to have wet feet; *att vara kall om (frysa om) händer (fötter, ansikte, ben, armar, etc.)*, to have cold hands (feet, face, legs, arms, etc.); *att tvätta sig om händerna (fötterna, halsen)*, to wash one's hands (feet, neck). But *att tvätta sig i ansiktet*, to wash one's face.

§333. *På*, on, upon, at, in, for, to.

a) Place in which: *Nyckeln ligger på bordet*. The key lies on the table. *Det är mycket folk på gatan (torget)*. There are many people on the street (in the market place). *Det är en fläck på rocken*. There is a spot on the coat. *Mannen är på landet*. The man is in the country. *På marken*, on the ground; *på sjön*, on the lake; *på hotellet*, at the hotel; *att gå på (till) torget*, to go to (the) market; *att gå på posten*, to go to the post-office; *att gå på teatern*, to go to the theatre; *att gå på (en) konsert*, to go to a concert. It is to be noted that the preposition *till*, if used in the above examples, would not mean attendance at the theatre or the concert which is implied by the preposition *på*.

b) Direction toward an object: *Hon riktade ögonen på mig*. She directed her glance at me. *Att syfta på något (någon)*, to allude to (aim at) something (someone).

c) Time during which: *Han har rest till Sverige på ett år*. He has gone to Sweden for a year.

d) Time (indefinite): *På morgonen (kvällen)*, in the morning (evening); *på hösten*, in the fall.

e) With certain verbs: *Att svara på en fråga*, to answer a question; *att höra på* [höra po:], to listen (attentively) to someone (something); *att ge akt på något (någon)*, to pay attention to, watch something (someone); *att hoppas på något*, to hope for something; *att lita på någon (något)*, to rely on someone (something); *att räkna på någon (något)*, to count on someone (something); *att vänta på någon (något)*, to wait for someone (something), (Cf. Germ. *auf* with acc.); *att tänka på någon (något)*, to think of (= have one's mind on) someone (something). This last verbal phrase must not be confounded with English *think of* when used to invite an expression of opinion. Ex. *What do you think of him (of this book, etc.)?* Swedish uses *om* in such cases. Ex. *Vad tänker (tror) folket om honom?* Cf. German and French which make the same distinctions: *denken an + acc.* and *denken von* with the dative, and French *penser à* and *penser de*, respectively.

f) With certain adjectives: *Att vara (blå) ond på någon*, to be (become) angry with someone; *att vara mätt (trött, avundsjuk, uppmärksam, ledsen, etc.) på något*, to be sated with (sick of, tired of, envious of, attentive to, etc.) something.

g) In a number of idiomatic expressions: *på svenska*, in Swedish (and so in the case of other languages); *soppa på oxkött*, beef soup; *att leva på tio dollar i veckan*, to live on ten dollars a week.

§334. *Till*, to, in for, of, etc.

a) Motion to a place: *Att gå till arbetet (svarta tavlan, posten, stationen)*, to go to one's occupation (to the blackboard, the post-office, the station); *att gå till botten*, to sink (go down) to the bottom; *att föra en dam till bordet*, to take a lady in to table; *att föra handen till mössan*, to raise one's hand to the cap.

b) Purpose, appointment, transportation, etc.: *Nyckeln är till att lisa upp med*, the key is for unlocking; *att väljas till något*, to be elected to, or chosen for something; *att bli utnämnd till professor*, to be appointed

professor; *att krönas till konung*, to be crowned king; *att bli till sten*, to turn into stone; *att taga någon till (sin) hustru*, to take a wife.

c) Specification, reference: *God till karaktären*, of good character; *snickare (smed, etc.) till yrket*, joiner (blacksmith, etc.) by trade; *läkare till profession(en)*, physician by profession. *Han är son till en jordbrukare*. He is the son of a farmer.

d) In many idiomatic expressions: *Att gratulera till födelsedagen*, to congratulate (someone) on his (her) birthday. *Vi hade tjäder till middag*. We had wood-grouse for dinner. *Dricker ni kaffe till maten?* Do you take coffee with your dinner? *Ja, men inte socker till kaffet*. Yes, but not sugar with my coffee. *Vad tror ni, att ni får till julklapp i år?* What do you think you will get for a Christmas present this year? *Läxan sträcker sig från sidan tio till med (t.o.m.) sidan femton*. The lesson extends from page ten to page fifteen inclusive.

§335. *Under*, under, beneath, during, amid:

a) Place, direction: *Att vara under tak*, to be under a roof; *under inga omständigheter*, under no circumstances.

b) Time: *under konungens regering*, during the king's rule; *under årens lopp*, in the course of (the) years.

c) Rank, age, value: *Lärjungen står under mästaren*. The apprentice is below the master. *Arbetet är under all kritik*. The work is beneath all criticism (=not worth considering). *Ynglingen är under tjugo år*. The youth is under twenty years of age.

d) Manner: *Under högljutt skratt och skämt*, in the midst of loud laughter and jokes. *Med knäppast hörbar röst samt under tårar berättade hon sin saga*. With scarcely audible voice and with tears in her eyes she related her story.

§336. *Vid*, at, by, on, etc.

a) Place: *Vid skrivbordet*, at the writing-desk; *vid Trenton*, at Trenton; *att fästa sig vid något*, to become attached to something.

b) Time: *Vid höstdagjämningen*, at the autumnal equinox; *vid trehundraårsfesten*, at the Tercentenary celebration; *vid tidens utgång*, at the expiration of the time.

c) Condition: *Att vara vid gott mod (god hälsa)*, to be in good spirits (good health); *vid stark hetta*, at great heat; *han är vid flottan*, he is in the navy.

d) With many verbs: *Att stå (sitta) vid roret*, to stand (sit) at the helm; *vi stanna vid nästa station*, we stop at the next station; *att bo vid en gata (ett torg)*, to live on a street, at a square (market place); *att ta någon vid handen*, to take someone by the hand; *att sitta ned vid pianot*, to sit down at the piano; *att röra vid något*, to touch something.

§337. *Åt*, to toward(s)

a) Direction: *Åt* is often used in connection with *till*. Ex. *Åt skogen*

(sjön, floden) till, in the direction of the woods (the lake, the river). *Han kastade ett ben åt hunden och ärter åt duvorna.* He threw a bone to the dog and peas to the pigeons.

b) Often before an indirect object: *Jag gav boken åt er, icke åt er syster.* I gave the book to you, not to your sister.

c) Cause: *Det är så man kunde gråta åt det.* It is enough to make one weep. *Att skratta åt någon,* to laugh at someone.

§338. *Å*, on (mostly in a figurative sense) is used in a few standing phrases: *å ena (å andra) sidan*, on the one hand (on the other hand); *en växel å hundra kronor*, a draft in the amount of 100 crowns.

Note. In a literal sense *på* must be used: *Jag såg honom på gatan.* I saw him on the street.

§339. *Över*, over (via), above, across, beyond, about.

a) Literal as well as figurative sense: *Molnen hänger lågt över bergen.* The clouds are hanging low over the mountains. *Över tjugo år.* over (more than) twenty (thirty, forty) years. *Mästaren står över lärlingen.* The master ranks above the apprentice

b) With many verbs such as: *att glädja sig över något*, to rejoice at (in) something; *att klaga över något*, to complain about something; *att gråta över*, to weep over; *att höja sig över något*, to rise above something; *att regera (råda) över*, to rule over; *att utgjuta sig över något*, to express oneself freely about something; *att yttra sig över*, to express oneself about, etc.

c) Direction: Over (via), across. Ex. *En bro leder över floden.* A bridge leads across the river. *Jag reste över (via) New York.* I journeyed by way of New York. Figuratively: *Att förvåna sig över*, to be astonished at. *Tingsten kostar över en krona.* The thing costs over (more than) a crown.

d) Duration: *Han stannar över natten.* He stays over night.

e) With adjectives: *glad över*, glad of; *ond över något*, angry at something, (but *ond på någon*, angry with someone); *ledsen över något*, sorry about (because of) something, (but *ledsen på någon*, angry (impatient) with someone).

B. READING SELECTION

Den nya stranden (Efter Fredrika Bremer)

Följande dagen bar färden söderut mot New York. Den var en veriktig fest: varmt väder, lugn sjö, med vind och om aftonen havet fullt av fosforiska sken och stjärnor och himlen full av stjärnor också, blickande fram ur poetiska moln. Jag var uppe på däck till helt sent och betraktade ljusexplosionerna som

vår fart kallade upp ur djupet längs med fartygets köl. Vi foro likasom i ett element av klart silver i vilket de grannaste konstellationer av gyllene stjärnor upphörligt sprungo fram.

Dagen därför var det mulet; himmel och hav varo grå, vägorna blyfärgade. Men när vi kommo i den stora, sköna hamnen vid New York, vilken omslöt oss lik en öppen famn, bröt solen genom molnen stark och varm och allt lyste vitt omkring. Det var en härlig mottagning av den nya världen; därtill var i luften något så underligt livfullt, sprittande ungt, att det frapperade mig. Det var däri något av den första ungdomens liv - så där som man känner vid femton eller sexton år. Jag drack den luften som man kunde dricka nektar, under det jag från däcket skådade ut på den nya stranden till vilken vi hastigt nalkades. Den var låg; en skog av master skymde ännu New York, men man såg dock dess torn och rökmoln, och till höger och vänster i hamnen lågo, med gröna kullar och klungor av vackra villor och hus, de stora öarna Long Island och (till vänster) Staten Island, vilken syntes mig högre och skogigare än den övriga kusten. Hamnen är magnifik och vår ankomst var festligt vacker, tack vare sol och vindar.

C. QUESTIONS

§340. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. Vart bar färdens följande dag? | 6. Vad var i luften? |
| 2. Hur var den? | 7. Vad såg författarinnan från däcket? |
| 3. Vem var uppe på däck? | 8. Hurudan var den nya stranden? |
| 4. Hur var väderet dagen därför? | 9. Vad såg hon trots en skog av master? |
| 5. Vad hände när de kommo i den stora hamnen vid New York? | 10. Hur var deras ankomst? |

D. EXERCISES

I

§341. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. --(in) afton- bar färd- (def. sing.) söderut --(towards) New York.
2. Hon var --(up) --(on) däck --(until) hel- sent.
3. När de --(past ind. of komma) --(into) --(the) stor- hamn- --(of) New York bröt sol- --(through) moln- (def. pl.).
4. Det var, som om --(the) grannast- konstellation- (indef. pl.) --(of) gyllene stjär- sprung- fram.
5. --(from) däck- (def. sing.) skådade de --(out) --(over) --(the) ny- strand-.
6. Hade han inte kommit --(would) de ha farit.
7. --(with) --(that) fartyg- --(it would be) möjligt.
8. Det syntes mig som om jag --(past subj. of se) något av --(the) först- ungdomen- liv.

9. --(to) höger och --(to) vänster --(past subj. of ligga) --(the) stor-
öar- Long Island och Staten Island.
10. --(Oh, that) de aldrig (past subj. of hava) gjort det!

II

§342. Illustrate by short Swedish sentences the various meanings (in English) of each of the following prepositions:

i, mot, upp, på, till, ut, med, av, från, genom.

E. COMPOSITION

§343. Translate into Swedish:

1. In the evening the sky was studded with stars.
2. We could see the many explosions of light coming from out of the deep.
3. If it only would be a pleasant day!
4. Oh, that they were here again with us!
5. We would go up on deck if the sea were calm.
6. Had they not come he would have gone.
7. With their money it would have been possible.
8. They treated us as if we were dependent on them.
9. The sun broke through the clouds at that moment.
10. In that case she would go to New York.

LESSON XXI

A. GRAMMAR

*Coordinating Conjunctions. Subordinating Conjunctions.
Notes on some Conjunctions.*

§344. There are two kinds of conjunctions: Coordinating and subordinating. Conjunctions used to connect independent sentences, or parts of sentences are called *coordinating conjunctions*; those introducing subordinate clauses *subordinating*. The most common coordinating and subordinating conjunctions, including *adverbial conjunctions*, are given below:

§345. A. COORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

1. *Copulative.* They express addition or expansion:
och, and; *samt* and; *ävensom*, as well as; *både - och*, both - and; *såväl - som*, as well - as; *icke blott - utan även* (*också*), not only - but also; *varken - eller*, neither - nor.

2. *Adverbial Conjunctions:*
även, even, also; *ock*, also; *jämvälv*, likewise, besides; *dels - dels*, partly - partly; *än - än*, now - now; *ej heller*, nor, neither.

Ex. *Våren är kommen, och flyttfåglarna ha återkommit.*

Spring has come, and the migratory birds have returned.

Varken den rike eller den fattige är frikallad från ansvar.

Neither the rich nor the poor is exempt from responsibility.

Blomman i fråga är icke blott vacker utan även (också) välluktande.

The flower in question is not only beautiful, but also fragrant.

Nedlen hade dels förkommitt, dels bortgivits.

The means had partly been lost, partly given away.

3. *Disjunctive.* These conjunctions designate mutual exclusion:
antingen - eller, either - or; *eller*, or; *vare sig - eller*, whether - or; *evad - eller*, whether - or.

Ex. *Ni eller jag måste utföra arbetet.*

You or I must do the work.

Man måste nödvändigt vara antingen det ena eller det andra.

One must of necessity be either one thing or the other.

Evad det är mycket eller litet...

Whether it is (be) much or little...

Han gick utan att ta vare sig överrock eller paraply.

He went without taking along either overcoat or umbrella.

Note. *eller* is often used in an explanatory manner:

Han sprang eller snarare susade förbi. He ran or rather whizzed by.

4. *Adversative.* They designate contrast or limitation:
icke - utan, not - but (rather); *men*, but.

Adverbial conjunctions:

dock, ändock, ändå, likväl, emellertid, etc., yet, still, however, etc.

Ex. *Elefanten är icke grym utan godmodig.*

The elephant is not cruel but (rather) good-natured.

Han är ute för tillfället men kommer snart hem.

He is out for the time being but will soon return.

Note. The use of Swedish *utan* is to be compared with that of German *sondern*. Both conjunctions are used after a preceding negative proposition and introduce a contrast which excludes or contradicts what goes before. See the preceding example and compare: *Han är inte hemma utan i staden.* He is not at home but (rather) in the city. But, if the second proposition is not exclusive, *men* is used. Ex. *Han är visserligen icke vänligt stämd mot arbetarrörelsen, men han lägger inga hinder i dess väg.* He is, to be sure, not friendly towards the labor movement, but he places no obstacles in its way.

5. *Conclusive Adverbial Conjunctions* designating conclusion and inference:
alltså, thus, hence (not to be confused with English *also*); *således*, thus, hence;
därför, therefore; *följaktligen*, consequently, etc.

Ex. *Valfisken är ett däggdjur, alltså icke en fisk.*

The whale is a mammal, hence not a fish.

Dessa trianglar äro kongruenta, följkärtligen äro de lika stora.

These triangles are congruent, consequently they are of equal size.

6. *Explanative:*

ty, for; *för*, for. In the spoken language *ty* is replaced by *för*.

Ex. *Valfisken är icke en fisk, ty (för) den är ett däggdjur.*

The whale is not a fish, for it (he) is a mammal.

Det är vår populäraste fridag, nämligen den fjärde juli.

It is our most popular holiday, that is, the Fourth of July.

Note. The numerous adverbial conjunctions of which a few have been given in the foregoing paragraph, reveal their adverb-nature by causing inverted word order whenever they occur at the head of the sentence (clause) and refer to it as a whole. Those of the general connectives, connecting clauses, require the normal word order. Exceptions to this rule are: *antingen-eller*, *varken-eller*, and *ej heller* which require the inverted word order when connecting clauses. *Icke blott-utan även* may take either word order. Cf. Vickner: *Swedish Grammar*, (1927), §372.

§346.

B. SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS.

They introduce clauses and are divided into the following classes:

1. The general subordinating: att, that.

Ex. *Jag hoppas (tror, önskar) att han snart återvänder.*

I hope (believe, wish) that he may soon return.

Note. The conjunction *att*, together with a determinate expression or a preposition, forms several subordinating conjunctions, e.g., *därigenom att* (cf. Germ. *dadurch dass*), *i det att*, while, etc. They are often referred to as *descriptive conjunctions*.

2. Temporal Conjunctions:

då, när, when; medan, under det att, while; tills, till dess, until; så snart (som), as soon as; så ofta (som), as often as; förrän, before, until.

Ex. *Då han hade läst igenom boken, lade han den på bordet.*

When he had finished reading the book, he laid it on the table.

Jag har icke (inte) sett honom sedan han kom hem.

I have not seen him since he came home.

I det (att) han gick utför trappan, halkade han och föll.

While going down stairs (in that he descended, etc.) he slipped and fell.

Vänta här, till dess jag kommer.

Wait here until I return.

Kom och hälsa på oss, så snart (som) ni får tid.

Drop in and see us as soon as you have time.

Inte förrän i går visste jag det.

I did not know it until yesterday.

Så länge man har hälsan, är man rik. Health is wealth.

3. Comparative Conjunctions:

som, as; såsom, like, as; lika - som, (just) as; som (om), as if; ju - desto (dess, ju), the - the; än, than; allt efter som, according as, etc.

Ex. *Som man bätter, får man ligga (prov.).*

As you have made your bed, so must you lie.

Ni har varit här lika länge som jag.

You have been here just as long as I.

Hon är lika tilldragande som begåvad.

She is just as attractive as gifted.

Aluminium är billigare än koppar. Aluminum is cheaper than copper.
Ju fjärmare, ju närmare. The farther away, the nearer.
Ju äldre han blir, dess (desto) lättare går han.
The older he grows, the lighter his step.

4. *Consecutive Conjunctions:* (så, sådan) - att, så att, that, so that.

Ex. *Tala högre, så att jag kan höra, vad ni säger.*
Speak louder so that I may be able to hear what you are saying.
Vesuvius kastade lavaen så långt, att Pompeii och Herculaneum blev fullständigt begravnna.
Vesuvius threw the lava so far that Pompeii and Herculaneum were completely buried.
Det gick med en sådan fart, att man inte kunde se någonting.
It went with such speed (the speed was so great) that one (you) could not see anything.

5. *Final Conjunctions.* They express purpose:

för att, på det att, in order that; så att, so that, in order that; att, that.

Ex. *Smeden doppar det rödheta stålet i olja för att härdta det.*
The blacksmith plunges (dips) the red-hot steel into oil in order to harden it.

Du skall hedra din fader och din moder på det dig må väl gå...
Thou shalt honor thy father and thy mother in order that it may go well with thee...

Hon lagade i ordning maten på kvällen för att folket skulle komma i väg tidigt på morgonen.
She prepared the food in the evening in order that the people might be able to get away early in the morning.

6. Causal Conjunctions. They express cause:

alldenstund, inasmuch as; *då*, *emedan*, *enär*, since, because; *efter* (=eftersom), since, because; *som*, since, because; *helst som*, especially as; *därför att*, because; *icke därför att*, not because.

Ex. Då (emedan, enär, eftersom) ni har så bråttom, kan saken vila tills vidare.
 Since you are so occupied, the matter may rest for the present.

Enär nödiga medel fattades, kunde han icke närvara vid de Olympiska spelén.
 As the necessary means were lacking, he could not attend the Olympic games.

Svenskarna uppreste sig mot Kristian II, därför att han var en tyrann.
 The Swedes rose up against Christian II, because he was a tyrant.

7. Conditional Conjunctions. They express condition:

om, i fall, därest, if, in case; såvida (för så vitt, så vitt), provided (that); blott (-om blott, bara), if - only; varom icke, if not.

Ex. Om det bara inte blåste så hårt, så kunde vi fara ut och segla ett slag.
If only it did not blow so hard we could go out sailing a while.
(Ni har ju ingen mössa! Tag den här.) Varom inte får ni gå barhuvad.
(You have no cap! Take this one.) Otherwise (if you don't take it)
you have to go bareheaded.

8. Concessive Conjunctions. They express concession:

ehuru, oaktat, änskönt, fastän, although, though; om än, om ock, om också, även om, even if, though.

Ex. *Det är varmt, fastän säsongen är långt framskriden.*
It is warm although the season is far advanced.

Aven om jag finge ett tillfälle att gå till lufts, så stannade jag troligen på jorden.
Even if I were to have an opportunity to go up in an airplane, I'd probably stay on the ground.

9. *Interrogative Conjunctions:* They express indirect questions: *om, huruvida, whether, if.*

Ex. *Jag vet icke, (om) huruvida han kommer.*
I do not know whether he is coming (or not).
Han frågade, om jag ville följa med. He asked if I wanted to go along.

NOTES ON SOME CONJUNCTIONS

§347. It is common knowledge that many of the particles have more than one function. For instance *som* is a relative pronoun, but it also functions as a comparative conjunction, see §346,3. and a causal conjunction, §346,6.

Just som is temporal: *Just som han ville fatta tag i repet, brast det.* Just as he reached out for the rope, it snapped.

Då is often an adverb. Ex. *(Klockan slog åtta).* Då gingo vi hem. (The clock struck eight). Then we went home. Note the word order.

Då is frequently a temporal conjunction, §346,2; it may also be a casual conjunction, §346,6; in many instances it may be either casual or temporal at the same time: *Då generalen såg, att fienden var överlägsen... drog han sig tillbaka.* When (as, since, or because) the general saw that the enemy was superior... he retreated.

Om is a preposition with various shades of meaning. It often functions as an adverb: *om och om igen*, over and over again. It frequently introduces an indirect question: *Har ni hört, om han kommit?* Have you heard if he has come? and takes the part of a conditional conjunction: *Om (ifall) jag hade tid, skulle jag ta tillfället i akt.* If I had the time I would take advantage of the opportunity.

Sedan may function as an adverb: *Sedan kom hustrun också.* Then the wife came also. Note the word order.

Sedan is also a preposition, (cf. Germ. *seit*): *Sedan några år bor jag i Philadelphia.* For some years past I have lived (been living) in Philadelphia. It also functions as a temporal conjunction, (cf. Germ. *nachdem*): *Sedan nationalsången avsjungits, besteg talaren plattformen.* After the national anthem had been sung, the speaker mounted the platform.

När is an interrogative adverb in direct as well as indirect questions: *När frågade han efter mig?* When did he ask for me? - *Jag vet inte, när han frågade efter er.* I don't know when he asked for you.

Finally, *när* functions as a temporal conjunction: *När han slutligen försökte träffa mig, hade jag redan lämnat orten.* When he finally tried to reach me, I had already left the locality.

§348. Conjunctions sometimes function as substantives. Ex. *Efter många om och men fick problemet en tillfredsställande lösning.* After many ifs and buts the problem was satisfactorily solved.

B. READING SELECTION

Yankee
 (Efter Fredrika Bremer)

Jag får lov att säga vad en yankee är eller vad han synes mig vara, och med yankee menas egentligen en av Nya Englands infödingar, representanten av go-ahead Amerika, det unga världserövrande Amerika. Han är en ung man (lika mycket om han är gammal) som bryter sig sin egen väg fram i världen i full förlitän på egen kraft, studsar för ingenting, ryggar för ingenting, finner ingen-ting omöjligt, tror allting, hoppas allting, försöker allting, går igenom allting och kommer ur allting - alltid densamme. Faller han så stiger han strax upp igen och säger: "No matter!" Misslyokas han så säger han: "Try again!" och "Go ahead!" Och så begynner han om igen eller företar något annat och stannar ej förrän något lyckats. Nej, han stannar icke då. Han stannar aldrig. Hans verk och vilja är att alltid verka, bygga, begynna ånyo eller med nya verk, alltid utvecklande, utvidgande sig eller sitt land. Och någon har sagt med sanning att "alla himmellens tjusningar skulle ej kunna hälla en amerikan på ett ställe om han visste att där fanns ett annat ställe längre västerut." Då måste han dit att odla och att bygga. Det är vikingasinnet om igen, men icke det hedniska utan det kristnade, som icke erövrar för att förstöra utan för att förädla. Och han gör det icke med bråk och suckan utan muntert och godmodigt. Han kunde sjunga Yankee Doodle även under sina motgångar, ty går det ej på ett sätt så går det på ett annat. Han är hemma på jorden och kan lämpa alla ting till sin tjänst. Han har, ännu innan han överstigit medelåldern, varit skollärare, åkerbrukare, lagkarl, krigsman, skriftställare, statsman, försökt sig i alla yrken, blivit hemma i alla och därtill rest halva eller hela jorden omkring. Varhelst på jorden han kommer och i vilka omständigheter bärer* han med sig ett dubbelt medvetande som gör honom stark och lugn: det att han är en man, som kan förlita sig på sig själv, och att han är medborgare av ett stort folk, ämnat att bliva det största på jorden.

C. QUESTIONS

§349. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. Vad menas med Yankee?
2. Hur bryter han sig sin egen väg i världen?
3. Finner han någonting omöjligt?
4. Vad säger han om han misslyckas?
5. Stannar han när han lyckats?
6. Vad är hans verk och vilja?
7. Vad har man sagt om honom med sanning?
8. Är hans vikingasinne det hedniska eller det kristnade?
9. I vilket hänseende är hans vikingasinne kristnat?
10. På vad sätt erövrar han?
11. Varför kan han sjunga Yankee Doodle även under sina motgångar?
12. Hur lämpar han alla ting?

*bär

13. Vad har han varit innan han överstigit medelåldern?
14. Vad bär han med sig varhelst han är?
15. Vad förlitar han sig på?

D. EXERCISES

I

§350. Supply the proper endings and fill in the missing words. (Give the translation in English first):

1. Med Yankee mena- egentlig- representant- av --(the) ung- världs- erövrand- Amerika, --(a) --(native) från Nya England.
2. I full förlitan på --(his) --(own) kraft bryt- han --(refl. pron.) --(his) väg fram i värld-
3. Han finn- --(that) ingenting är omöjlig- , han hoppa- allting, försök- allting, och komm- ur allting alltid --(the same).
4. Amerikan- (def. pl.) säg- om --(they) misslycka- : Try again! och stann- ej förrän någo- har --(supine of lyckas).
5. --(their) verk och vilja är att alltid utveckla --(refl. pron.) eller --(their) land.
6. --(if) --(there) funnes --(a) anna- ställe --(farther) västerut så kunde all- himmelen- tjusning- ej hålla --(him) tillbaka.
7. --(this) Yankee syn- --(me) vara en man, --(who) kunde sjunga Yankee Doodle även under --(his) motgång- (indef. pl.).
8. Innan han --(has) --(supine of överstiga) medelålder- har han --(supine of försöka) --(refl. pron.) i all- yrke- och blivit hemma i all- .
9. Vi bur- med --(refl. pron.) under all- omständighet- --(a) dubbel- med- vetande, --(that) --(past indic. of göra) --(us) stark- och lugn- .
10. --(you, polite) kan förlita --(reflex. pron.) på er själv --(for) --(you) är medborgare av --(a) stor- land!

II

§351. Give short Swedish sentences illustrating the use of the following conjunctions: men, eller, och, att, ty, om.

E. COMPOSITION

§352. Translate into Swedish:

1. It seems to me that by a *Yankee* is really meant a native of New England.
2. Young or old, he makes his own way in the world. He recoils at nothing and tries everything.
3. They began all over again after they had failed and simply said: Try again!
4. But he does not stop until he has succeeded - and he does not stop even then.
5. You (familiar) must ever try to be active and build anew, always developing yourself!

6. We knew that there was another place farther west, and we went there.
7. She hoped that they would come, but she hoped in vain.
8. Even before reaching middle age he had tried his hand at many trades and occupations, and traveled half-way around the earth.
9. Wherever he goes he carries self-assurance with him which makes him strong and calm.
10. They are men who can depend on themselves and who know that they are citizens of a great nation.

LESSON XXII

A. GRAMMAR

Interjections

§353. Interjections have been defined as incomplete sentences. According to their meaning they may be divided into the following classes:

a) Those which represent outbursts of emotion and thus, functionally, approach the exclamatory sentence. Ex. *aj!* *oj!* *ouch!* *puh!* *whew!* (pain, discomfort); *håhåjaja!* *ack!* *alas!* *vel* *woe!* (melancholy, sadness, sorrow); *fy!* *shame!* *usch!* *faugh!* (disgust); *bah!* *asch!* *bah!* *pshaw!* *pooh!* (contempt); *ah!* *oh!* *kors!* well, I never! *himmel!* Oh, heavens! (surprise); *hejsan!* *heigh-ho!* *hurrah!* *hurrah!* (joy); *brav!* *bravo!* (approval, encouragement).

b) Those that are of an onomatopoeic nature:

1. Auditory. Ex. *vov vov!* barking; *krax, krax!* croaking (of the crow); *dudeli dudeli dej;* *pling, plong,* clink-clank (instrumental tones); *tam, tam, tam* (sound of a drum); *piff, paff, puff,* (reports of fire-arms); *ticktack,* (the sound of the pendulum).

2. Other sense impressions. Ex. *Vips!* (och han tog ledningen). *Zip!* (and he was off and in the lead); *Hirr, det blixtrar...!* There is a flash! (of lightning, of guns, etc.); *tripp, trapp, trull,* tit-tat-toe, three in a row (difference in size).

c) Some interjections express acts of the will. Their sense is hortatory. Such are: *hysch!* *hush!* *kiss!* *kiss!* *puss,* *puss!* *ptrol!* *whoal!* (signal for a horse to come to a halt); *hejt!* *hey!* *hallå!* hello! etc.

§354. Some of the most Common Swedish Interjections:

<i>ack!</i> , <i>alas!</i> <i>oh!</i>	<i>fy då!</i> <i>shame!</i>	<i>hallå!</i> <i>Hello!</i>
<i>adjö!</i> <i>goodbye!</i>	<i>för all del!</i> <i>by all means!</i>	<i>hejt!</i> <i>hey!</i>
<i>aj!</i> (<i>oj!</i>) <i>ouch!</i>	<i>för ingen del!</i> <i>by no means!</i>	<i>hjälp!</i> <i>help!</i>
<i>ah!</i> <i>ah!</i>	<i>farväl!</i> <i>farewell!</i>	<i>hurrah!</i> <i>hurrah!</i>
<i>bevars!</i> <i>Oh, dear me!</i>	<i>Gud ske lov!</i> <i>God be praised!</i>	<i>hysch!</i> <i>hush!</i>
<i>bravo!</i> <i>bravo!</i>	<i>ha! ha!</i>	<i>ja så!*</i>

This interjection expresses almost any emotion and is of very frequent occurrence. It may under different circumstances be rendered: *So!* *Oh, is that so!* *The idea!* *Well, you don't say so!*

<i>kras!</i> smash!	<i>plask!</i> splash!	<i>vips!</i> pop!
<i>kratsch!</i> crash!	<i>ptro!</i> whoa!	<i>vyss!</i> [<i>vyss:</i> or <i>vyf:</i>] hushaby!
<i>klatsch!</i> crack!	<i>se upp</i> (<i>opp!</i>)! watch!	<i>välan!</i> [<i>velan:</i>] well!
<i>kusch!</i> lie down! (dog)	your step!	<i>välkommen!</i> welcome!
<i>nej!</i> (men) *	<i>tyst!</i> hush, silence!	<i>å!</i> oh!
<i>paff!</i> <i>pang!</i> bang!	<i>usch!</i> whew!	<i>å ja!</i> Oh, yes!
<i>pladask!</i> splash!	<i>vel</i> woe!	<i>å nej!</i> Oh, no!

B. READING SELECTION

Emerson för sista gången
(Efter Fredrika Bremer)

Om aftonen såg jag Emerson hos Elizabeth Hoar. Han var vänlig och ljus, lik sig då han är i sitt mest älskvärda lynne. Jag ville resa morgonen därpå. Han motsatte sig det bestämt. "O nej, nej, det får ni iöke tänka på" sade han; "jag har föresatt mig att föra er till en av våra vaokra små skogs-sjöar i grannskapet, och sedan -måste ni se min moder och mottaga hennes välsignelse!"

Emersons vänlighet och dessa ord kunde jag ej motstå. Dagen därpå avhämtade han mig i kabriolett, den* han själv körde, och förde mig genom de täckaste skogsvägar till en sjö som låg i skogens famn som en klar oval spegel omfattad av en dunkelgrön ram. Stället såg ut som en helgedom för vänliga naturgudomligheters möte. Jag såg på den lilla scenen, men jag såg även på Emerson, som där han stod tankfullt leende vid stranden av den stilla sjön syntes mig dess människoblivna genius. Outplånligt är denna tavla fästad i min själ.

Vi talade mycket under vägen, ty med Emerson blir jag alltid livad till samtal på ett lugnt och behagligt vis. Vad jag minns av samtalet denna gång är förnämligast att jag frågade Emerson om han ej ansåg Ny-Englandsstater-nas bildning avslutad och om man ej i dessa kunde se en typ av det färdiga amerikanska samhället.

"By no means", svarade han. "Här äro i denna tid en mängd germanismer och andra idéer från Europa och även från Asien som nu först begynna intränga i tankelivet och som skola frambringa nya utvecklingar."

Emerson anser tydlichen Amerika ämnat att framställa i en högre metamorfos de idéer, som under historiens lopp blivit förebildade i andra världsdeler.

"Här är en källa berömd för sitt goda vatten!" sade Emerson, i det han stannade nära några höga träd vid landsvägen. "Får jag giva er ett glas?" Jag tackade samtyckande och han steg av, band tömmarna om ett träd och kom snart åter med ett glas kristallklart vatten ur brunnen.

Ett glas vatten! Hur mycket kan ej ligga i denna gäval! Jag har tyst, inom mig själv, kämpat med Emerson allt sedan jag första gången lärde känna honom, jag har frågat mig vari låg denna andes makt över mig då jag i så mycket måste ogilla hans tänkande, då han i så mycket var mig otillfredsställande; varuti låg hans hemliga tjusningskraft, den förfriskande, stärkande verkan, som

* *Nej,* no. Besides its ordinary function as a negative adverb, it is used in many idiomatic expressions, especially such as involve surprise. Ex. *Kan ni tänka er, mor, att Karlsson har blivit häktad!* - *Nej, men vad hör jag!* Can you imagine, mother, Karlsson has been jailed! - You don't say so! *Nej, nu är det nog!* Come, that's enough now! *Nej men se!* År en sådan herre ute och går! Well, well, behold! Is such a gentleman out and about!

* som

jag alltid erfar i hans umgänge och av hans skrifter. Efter denna styrkedryck av hans hand förstod jag det. Det är just detta rena kristallklara källvatten i hans personlighet, i hans skrifter, som förfriskar mig.

Jag har kämpat emot Emerson inom mig och utom mig i samtal med andra, hans blinda beundrare. Men länge härefter och när jag kommer fjärran härifrån, i mitt eget land, och när jag blir gammal och grå, ja alltid, alltid skola stunder komma då jag skall längta till Waldo Emerson för att av hans hand få - denna dryck friskt vatten.

Emerson lämnar jag med en odelad känsla av tacksamhet för vad han varit mig. Jag kan få se andra måhända skönare, fullkomligare gestalter, men - aldrig skall jag se hans like mer!

C. QUESTIONS

(*Imperatives, Infinitives, Participles*)

§355. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. Var såg Fredrika Bremer Emerson? | 13. Vad åsikt hade Emerson om Nya-
Englandsstaternas utveckling? |
| 2. Hurudan var han? | 14. Vad sade han då de stannade i
närheten av några höga träd? |
| 3. När ville hon resa? | 15. Vad tackade Fredrika Bremer för? |
| 4. Vad sade Emerson däröm? | 16. Ogillade hon alltid Emersons
tänkande? |
| 5. Vad kunde hon ej motstå? | 17. Vad förstod hon efter denna
styrkedryck? |
| 6. Hur avhämtade Emerson henne? | 18. Vad fann hon i hans personlighet? |
| 7. Vart förde han henne? | 19. Vad kommer hon alltid att längta
efter? |
| 8. Vad såg Fredrika Bremer på? | 20. Varför lämnar hon Emerson med en
odelad känsla av tacksamhet? |
| 9. Hur syntes henne Emerson? | |
| 10. Talade de mycket under vägen? | |
| 11. Vad minns hon förnämligast av
detta samtal? | |
| 12. Vad svarade Emerson på hennes
fråga? | |

D. EXERCISES

§356. Supply the proper endings and the missing words. (Give the translation in Swedish first):

1. --(you, polite) --(pres. indic. of få) icke tänka därpå! --(past indic. of säga) han.
2. --(imperf. of mottaga) --(her) välsignelse- !
3. Sjö- (def. sing.) läg som --(a) klar spegel --(past part. of omfatta) av --(a) dunkelgrön ram.
4. --(this) tavla är outplänlig- --(past part. of fästa) i --(my) själ.
5. Jag kan ej tänka på Emerson --(without) att se honom som --(the) stilla sjön- mänskobliv- genius.
6. Amerika anse- han --(past part. of ämna) att frambringa ny- ide-
7. Jag taoka- (past indic.) --(pres. part. of samtycka) och han steg av.
8. Det var så --(much) jag måste ogilla i - (his) - (pres. part. of tänka),

- då han i --(much) var --(me) --(pres. part. of *otillfredsställa*).
 9. Varuti låg --(his) hemlig- tjuskraft --(the) --(pres. part. of *förfriskal*), --(pres. part. of *stärka*) verkan --(which) jag erfor i --(his) umgänge.
 10. --- -- (after having) kämpat emot --(him) kunde jag ej längre ogilla hans --(pres. part. of *tänka*).

E. COMPOSITION

§357. Translate into Swedish:

1. "Do not go!" he said, "for I have decided to take you to a beautiful forest lake."
2. This lake lies in the forest like an oval mirror encircled by a dark green frame.
3. These ideas can be used in producing new developments.
4. They considered America destined to advance these new ideas.
5. "Give me a glass of water, please!" I said.
6. We approved of his thinking, for much of what he said was refreshing.
7. In what lay his secret power to charm and its invigorating effect?
8. This spring is famous for its good water.
9. "Come!" she said, "let us go on a visit!"
10. "We shall long for it, without getting it."

LESSON XXIII

A. GRAMMAR

Word Order. Definition of Word Order. Use of Normal Word Order.
Use of Inverted Word Order. Position of Verbals. Prepositive Attributive.

§358. *Definition of Word Order.* There are two kinds of word order in Swedish, the *normal* and the *inverted*. The characteristic of normal word order is that the subject, with modifiers, if any, begins the sentence (clause) and is followed immediately by the finite form of the verb - in the case of a compound form of the verb, the auxiliary. Ex. *Jag skriver (har alltid skrivit) med bläck och penna.* I am writing (have always written) with pen and ink.

Inverted word order means that something else than the subject begins the sentence. Ex. *Nu skriver jag (alltid har jag skrivit) med bläck och penna.* "Spring med detsamma!" ropade någon. "Run right away!" someone called out.

Note. The inverting element may be a single adverb, an adverbial phrase, a subordinate clause, or a sentence.

§359. *Normal word order is used:*

a) In principal clauses beginning with the subject. Ex. *Han läser.* He reads. *Ni har missförstått mig.* You have misunderstood me. *Vem predikade i kyrkan i söndags?* Who preached in the church last Sunday?

Note. In business letters it is usual in the case of two coordinated, declarative sentences, connected by *och*, and, to resort to inverted word order in the second sentence. Ex. *Vi ha mottagit Edert ärade (brev) av den 10:e dennes och skynda vi att meddela, att...* We have received your favor (letter) of the 10th inst. and hasten to inform you that... Such inversion should be avoided.

b) In exclamatory sentences which are introduced by *vad*, *what*, *hur*, *how*, and *så*, *so*. Ex. *Vad det är vackert här uppe!* How beautiful it is up here! *Hur (or så) vackert det är!* How beautiful it is!

c) In subordinate sentences after all conjunctions. Ex. *Han säger (sade)*, *att han gärna skulle komma, om han finge lov.* He says (said) that he would gladly come if he were permitted.

§360. *Inverted word order is used:*

a) In principal clauses.

1. In direct questions the subject of which is not preceded by an interrogative pronoun. Ex. *Följer ni med?* Are you coming along? *Har hon inte gått ännu?* Has she not gone yet?

2. When the sentence begins with the object, a predicate term, an adverb or adverbial phrase. Ex. *Lång är konsten, kort är livet.* Art is long, life (is) short. *Det förstår jag.* That I understand. *Nu måste jag avsluta mitt arbete.* Now I must bring my work to a close.

3. When a subordinate clause precedes. Ex. *Efter att ha intagit sin aftonmåltid, gick han ut.* After having eaten his supper he went out. *Om han kommer, stannar jag hemma.* If he comes, I shall remain at home.

4. After a direct quotation. Ex. *"Hur går det nu för tiden?" frågade hon.* "How are things going nowadays?" she asked. *"Inte så illa," svarade han.* "Not so badly," he answered.

5. In optative clauses. Ex. *Leve konungen!* Long live the king!

6. In exclamatory sentences when introduced by *hur*, *how*, and containing a negation. Ex. *Hur lätt gå icke lycka och glas i kras!* How fragile fortune, and how brittle glass!

b) In subordinate clauses.

1. In the subordinate clause of a conditional sentence whenever the conjunction (*om*, if) is left out. Ex. *Ätnjöte mannen mitt förtroende, så skulle jag behandla honom annorlunda.* If the man enjoyed my confidence, I should treat him differently.

2. An *att*-clause may have inverted word order if an adverbial phrase or a clause, subordinate to the *att*-clause, is inserted after *att*. Ex. *Jag hoppas, att om er bror kommer, kommer även ni.* I hope that if your brother comes, you (will) come too. This order is said to be used more often than the normal order which would be: *Jag hoppas, att om er bror kommer, ni även kommer.*

Note 1. The attention of the student is called to the fact that principal clauses in Swedish, as in German, have, according to strict rules, either the normal or

the inverted word order, whereas subordinate clauses can as a rule have only the normal. Compare: *Han har redan fullbordat arbetet*, and, *Han sade, att han redan (hade) fullbordat arbetet*. He has already completed the work, and, He said that he already had completed the work.

Note 2. The transposed word order, i.e., the finite verb at the end of the subordinate clause: ...som *på mångfaldigt sätt emot Dig brutit haver*. ...who in many ways have offended Thee,.. is no longer alive in the language, unless it be in lofty prose and in poetry.

§361. *Position of Verbs.* The verbals (participles, supine, infinitives) normally follow the auxiliary verb, unless separated from it by movable adverbs (negative and otherwise), objects limited by *ingen* and the pronoun *ingen*-*ting*. Ex. *Jag har träffat honom många gånger*. I have met him several times. *Hon ville gärna höra honom sjunga sången*. She wanted very much to hear him sing the song. For the position in the sentence of negative particles and other movable adverbs, see §303.

§362. *Prepositive Attributive (Omfattningsattributiv).* It is the general rule in Swedish that modifiers shall be placed as closely as possible either before or after the term modified.* This has led to the incorporation of phrases between the prepositive articles, indef. or def., and the attributive adjective.

1. Ex. *En | under alla förhållanden | pålitlig man*. Lit.: A | under all circumstances | dependable man. English: A man, dependable under all circumstances.

2. Ex. *Han målade den | efter min mening | bästa tavlan*. Lit.: He painted the | according to my opinion | best picture. English: He painted the best picture according to my opinion.

3. The modifiers are massed between *att*, *to*, and the infinitive. Ex. *Vanan att | uti läsning av god litteratur | söka vila och vederkvickelse*. Lit.: The habit (practice) to | in good literature | seek rest and recreation. English: The habit (practice) of seeking rest and recreation in the reading of good literature.

This construction is very common in standard Swedish prose, but is, of course, banished from the spoken language. It is characteristic of modern Swedish and is due to German influence. It is of comparatively rare occurrence in English, for when the English adjective is qualified by a phrase, it is usually placed after its noun. Ex. *A young lady, proud of her beauty, stepped into the room*. *A young | of her beauty | proud lady, etc.*, would not, of course, be English. Swedish is capable of both constructions:

a) *En ung dam, stolt över sin skönhet, steg in i rummet*. (Appositional predicate).

b) Indef. art. *En ung | över sin skönhet | stolt dam steg in i rummet*. (Prepositive attributive).

c) Def. art. *Den unga | över sin skönhet | stolta damen steg in i rummet*. (Prepositive attributive).

Note. The prepositive attributive may often be expanded into a relative clause. So in English: *A by no means unimportant factor - A factor, by no means unimportant - A factor, which is (was) by no means unimportant...*

* Beckman, Nat.: *Svensk Språklära*. Stockholm, Bonnier 1923. §221 ff.

B. READING SELECTION

Sista synen
(Efter Fredrika Bremer)

Det är förbi. Jag har lämnat dem för alltid, det stora landet, de kära, dyrbara vänerna. Morgenen då jag skulle avresa - det var en underlig morgon. Jag var nästan förtvivlad över mängden av små åligganden som jag ännu hade att avgöra och av ihängande huvudvärk, men på en gång vek den och allting ljusnade; uppe på mitt rum satt den goda Marcus och förseglade mina biljetter allt eftersom jag skrev dem och mot tog mina uppdrag och sade emellanåt lugnt och lugnande: "Plenty of time! We are in good time!" Och det föreföll mig nästan underbart hur timmarna och tiden sträckte sig, allt redde sig, allt blev ljust och lätt. I god tid var jag färdig, allt var färdigt.

Ombord på *The Atlantic* befann jag mig på en gång i en riktig virvel av gamla bekanta och nya bekanta, herrar som skakade hand med mig och gävo mig avhandlingar som de skrivit, fruar som skänkte mig vackra gåvor, bekanta som introducerade bekanta, kära vänner från norr, från söder, som här velat överraska mig och säga mig lev väl, och vart jag vände huvudet kysstes jag av någon. Ack, jag måste vara glad när klockan ringde vänerna ifrån bord och jag fick gömma mig i min hytt.

Det var vid middagstiden som vi avreste. Mot aftonen gick jag uppe på däck för att ännu en gång kasta en blick på den stora nya världen. Där låg den vid den västra horisonten, dunkelgrön på de blå vattnen, i en stor halvcirkel lik en öppen famn, en lugn, inbjudande hamn. Moln med persikomjuka färgskiftningsar ifrån mörkaste violet till klaraste guld och mildaste rosenrött lågo i pittoreska massor över den; regnskurar och solstrålar göto sig över den, befruktande; solen befriade sig ur molnen och strålade allt klarare allt som den sänkte sig djupare mot himmelsranden, där det stora landet låg. Så var den sista syn jag såg därav; så skall jag alltid se det i min själs djup.

Nu ser jag det ej mer med mina ögon utan blott himmel och hav. Jag genomlever åter en paus emellan tvenne livstider och tvenne världar. Men mitt hjärta är fullt. Och frågar man mig vad den nya världens folk har framför den gamla så svarar jag, med intrycket av vad jag i Amerika sett och genomlevat friskt i min själ: ett varmare hjärtslag, ett mera energiskt, ungdomsstarkt liv.

C. QUESTIONS

§363. Answer with complete sentences in Swedish:

1. Vad har författarinnan lämnat för alltid?
2. Hurudan var morgenen då hon skulle resa?
3. Vad var hon förtvivlad över?
4. Vem satt uppe på hennes rum?
5. Vad sade Marcus emellanåt?
6. När var författarinnan färdig?
7. Vad befann hon sig i ombord på *The Atlantic*?

8. Varför var hon glad när klockan ringde?
9. När avreste de?
10. Varför gick hon upp på däck mot aftonen?
11. Hur såg den stora nya världen ut från däcket?
12. Vad göt sig över den?
13. Hur skall hon alltid se den nya världen i sin själs djup?
14. Vad genomlever författarinnan igen?
15. Vad anser hon att den nya världen har framför den gamla?

D. EXERCISES

(*Indefinite pronoun*)

§364. Supply the proper endings and missing words. (Give the English translation first):

1. --(someone) sade, att hon lämnat --(them) för alltid.
2. --(no one) var --(more) förtvivlad över --(this) än jag.
3. Han såg --(no one) --(else) på däck.
4. --(each one) av min- vän- kommo till båt- (def. sing.) för att säga farväl.
5. --(many) av --(these) avhandling- hade de skrivit själva, sade hon.
6. Jag var färdig i god tid, --(all, everything) var färdig- .
7. --(wherever) hon vände huvud- kysstes hon av --(someone).
8. --(some) gingo upp på däck men --(few) sågo det.
9. --(each) moln var --(a) --(single) hav av persikomjuk- färgskiftning- (ind. pl.).
10. --(most of them) ansågo att Amerika hade --(a) varmare hjärtslag och --(a) --(more) energisk- , ungdomsstark- liv.

E. COMPOSITION

§365. Translate into Swedish:

1. No one was more desperate over this than he.
2. They saw no others on deck.
3. Each one of her friends came to bid us farewell.
4. They have written many of these essays.
5. All had come on time. All was ready.
6. Wherever she turned her head, she was kissed by someone.
7. Some were up on deck, others went back to their cabins.
8. We spoke to most of them, but few could speak Swedish.
9. Everybody seemed to be aboard.
10. Many hurried ashore when the bell rang.

LESSON XXIV

A. GRAMMAR

Indirect Discourse (Lat. *Oratio Obliqua*).

§365^{a)} When a writer or speaker expresses thoughts, whether his own or those of another, in any form other than in the original words of the author, he is said to use the Indirect Discourse.

In such discourse the imperfect subjunctive replaces the present indicative of the Direct Discourse, and the pluperfect subjunctive takes the place of the imperfect, the perfect and the pluperfect indicative of the Direct Discourse.

Note also the following changes:

1. A future indicative of the Direct Discourse becomes a future of the past in Indirect Discourse.
2. A subjunctive or an imperative of the Direct Discourse is rendered in the Indirect Discourse by means of modal auxiliaries.
3. If the verb governing the Indirect Discourse is of the 3rd person, as is usually the case, the pronouns, personal and possessive, of the 1st and 2nd persons are changed to the proper forms of the 3rd person. Certain adverbs, or adverbial expressions (temporal, local), must also be changed so as to coincide with the point of view of the writer (speaker).

Examples of Direct and Indirect Discourse *

1. In colloquial speech where the indicative is used instead of the subjunctive:

Direct

Konungen frågade: "Vad är det du har i din påse?" - "Det är en lyckostav, som kan ta reda på dolda skatter", svarade pojken. "Tag då reda på mina bortstulna äpplen!" sade kungen.

Indirect

Konungen frågade, vad det var han hade i sin påse. Gossen svarade, att det var en lyckostav, som kunde ta reda på dolda skatter. Då bad konungen honom ta reda på hans bortstulna guldfäpplen.

Jag frågade: "Huru länge stannar du här på orten? Vill du inte bo hos mig?" - "Jag reser i morgon", svarade han.

Jag frågade, huru länge han tänkte stanna där på orten, och om han inte ville bo hos mig. Han skulle resa följande dag, svarade han.

*¹ Carl Rebbe: *Svensk språklära för realskolan*, p. 128, ff. Sjunde uppl.

P. A. Norstedt och Söners Förlag.

2. In the written language (normal prose):

Det är ledsamt, att man ofta får se gossar stå stilla, hängande utefter väggarna utan att delta i lekarna under rasten. Men jag tror icke man får döma hårt om sådana gossar. Jag vill påpeka en sak, vari jag tror att en stor del av skulden till detta missförhållande ligger. Det framhölls i går det beklagliga i att våra skolgårdar hava ett så enformigt och tråkigt utseende.

Det vore ledsamt, att man ofta finge se gossar stå stilla, hängande utefter väggarna utan att delta i lekarna under rasten. Men talaren trodde icke, att man finge döma hårt om sådana gossar. Han ville påpeka en sak, vari han trodde att en stor del av skulden till detta missförhållande låge. Det hade dagen förut framhållits det beklagliga i att våra skolgårdar hava ett så enformigt och tråkigt utseende.

§365 b) Change into indirect discourse:

"Soldater! Jag har samlat armen att tillkännagiva, det en preliminär fredsavhandling den 17 september blivit gjord emellan svenska och ryska männen. Denna fredstidning slutar ett förhärjande krigs alla olyckor. Den bör visserligen vara ett glatt budskap, helst Sveriges uttömda källor icke tillåta fortsättning av en strid, börjad av politiskt misstag, och som i tvenne hela år avtynat alla dess krafter. Men Finland frängår Sverige: riksgränsen är Torneälv."

Finnar, vid denna fred förloras tredjedelen av svenska kronans område; Sverige förlorar den stolta finska nationen, sitt kraftigaste stöd. Ej nog härmend: svenska armen förlorar kärnan och betydligaste delen av dess krigsmakt. Moderlandet är krossat, försänkt i sorg och saknad över oersättliga uppföringar, men den visa allmänen har beslutit våra öden, de måste emottas med tålmod, med undergivenhet.

Soldater! Kamrater! Bröder! Ni som under det nyss slutade kriget med så mycken trohet och mandom, trots fientliga härens talrikhet, med vapnens sinnliga styrka vid Siikajoki, Revolaks, Pulkki, Lappo, Kauhajoki, Alavo, Lappfjärd, Ätsäri, Nummijärvi, Jutas och Idensalmi m.m. besegrat fienden, ni som på egen hand återtogen halva Finland, ni som slutligen övermannades av en mångdubbelt överlägsen styrka att lämna finska gränsen, I haven sedermora med ständaktighet stridit för moderlandets svenska jord. I härvarande pretiösa kvarlevor av den stolta finska nationen och dess tappra krigsfolk, det är till eder jag bör och jag skall, med upprört hjärta, förkunna konungens, riksens ständers, svenska folkets, svenska arméns, mina medbröders, min egen, - det är allas uppriktiga tacksamhet."

B. READING SELECTION

George Washington

av

Johan Olov Wallin

1.

Svensk, fatta glaset i din hand
Och klinga med amerikanarn!
Förfadern av hans fosterland,
Den gamle, tappre samfundsbanarn!
Så högt i ärans Panteon
Som du din store Vasa ställer,
Så han sin store Washington -
Och bådas bröst av stolthet sväller.

4.

Du var det, vilkens höga tolk
Han blev, och kändes på accenten,
När han gav lagar åt sitt folk,
Den konungslike presidenten.
I fridens råd med samma mod
Satt nu den vise i sin toga,
Som det, varmed den tappre stod
Vid Trenton, Yorktown, Saratoga.

2.

O frihet, ur Guds hjärta ledd
Att strömma i var mänskoader!
För dig har havet ingen bredd
Och jorden inga antipoder.
Evar du lyfter kämpens arm
Mot dem som mänskorätt förtrycka,
Går pulsen hög, blir själen varm,
Och ropet skallar: seger! lycka!

5.

O, när i glömskans djupa famn
Så mången storhetsbubbla brister,
Och månget firat furstenamn
Sitt sken på minnets stjärnvalv mister:
Då skall han, krönt av seklers lov
Bland de odödelige trona,
Den konungen förutan hov
Förutan vakt och prakt och krona!

3.

Du var det, av vars riddarslag
Han dubbades, den ädle hjälten,
Som med tyranners nederlag
Förhärligat Virginias fälten.
Du var det, på vars bud han kom,
Slog fienden -- och så till dalen
Med Fabii lager vände om,
Den borgerliga generalen.

6.

Vår känsla vallfar till hans stoft,
Till hjältegravens, där han vilar.
Där sprids ej veka blommors doft,
Där växa inga tårepilar;
Men nit för frihet, lag och stat,
Men tro och vänskap åt all världen
Och arvet av evärdligt hat
Till valdet, trädomen och flärden!

PART III

A. Verb Paradigms

I. The Weak Verb

1st weak conjunction

(att) älska (*to*) love

Active

Present

Indicative

I love, etc.:

Sg.1. jag älskar

2. du älskar

3. han älskar

Pl.1. vi älska

2. I älsken

3. de älska

I loved, etc.

Sg.1. jag älskade

2. du älskade

3. han älskade

Pl.1. vi älskade

2. I älskaden

3. de älskade

I have loved, etc.

Sg.1. jag har älskat

2. du har älskat

3. han har älskat

Pl.1. vi ha(va) älskat

2. I haven älskat

3. de ha(va) älskat

I had loved, etc.

Sg.1. jag hade älskat

2. du hade älskat

3. han hade älskat

Pl.1. vi hade älskat

2. I haden älskat

3. de hade älskat

Future

I shall love, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall(kommer att) älska

2. du skall(kommer att) älska

3. han skall(kommer att) älska

Pl.1. vi skola(komma att) älska

2. I skolen(kommen att) älska

3. de skola(komma att) älska

Future Perfect

I shall have loved, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall(kommer att) ha(va) älskat

2. du skall(kommer att) ha(va) älskat

3. han skall(kommer att) ha(va) älskat

Pl.1. vi skola(komma att) ha(va) älska

2. I skolen(komma att) ha(va) älska

3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) älska

Subjunctive (optative)

(that) *I love, etc.*

jag älske

du älske

han älske

vi älske

I älsken¹⁾

de älske

Imperfect

(that) *I loved, etc.*The subjunctive (optative) forms
are identical with those of the
indicative.

Present Perfect

(that) *I (may) have loved, etc. 2)*

jag må(mätte) ha(va) älskat

du må(mätte) ha(va) älskat

han må(mätte) ha(va) älskat

vi må(mätte) ha(va) älskat

I män(mätten) hava älskat

de må(mätte) ha(va) älskat

Past Perfect

(that) *I had loved, etc.*The subjunctive (optative) forms
are identical with those of the
indicative.

Conditional I

I should love, etc.

jag skulle älska

du skulle älska

han skulle älska

vi skulle älska

I skulle älska

de skulle älska

Conditional II

I should have loved, etc.

jag skulle ha(va) älskat

du skulle ha(va) älskat

han skulle ha(va) älskat

vi skulle ha(va) älskat

I skulle hava älskat

de skulle ha(va) älskat

Present

Pl.1. älskom! Låt(om) oss älska!

Let us love!

2. älsken! Love (ye)!

Sg.2. älska³⁾(du)! Love (thou)

Verbals

Infinitive

Pres. (att) älska *to love*Perf. (att) ha(va) älskat *to have loved*Put. (att) skola älska⁵⁾*to be about to love*Participles⁴⁾Pres. älskande *loving*Perf. See *passive*Supine. (har) älskat *(has) loved*

1) This particular subjunctive form, i.e., the 2nd person plural, pres. subj., ending in *-en* is not used in modern Swedish. See Sundén, p.118, footnote 1 and reference.

2) A perfect subjunctive *jag have älskat*, etc., is exceedingly rare. It is usually expressed by *må (mätte) ha(va) älskat*, etc.

3) In careless speech and in the jargon of trades and occupations, the ending of the imperative is often dropped. Ex. *Stop maskin!* for *stoppa maskinen!* Stop the engine! *Spark ut en!* Kick him out! *Spel ut!* It is your turn.

4) Compound forms of participles are of rare occurrence. Ex. *havande älskat (kallat)* having loved (called) *skolande älska (kalla)* being about to love (call).

5) This form is rarely used. It is usually replaced by *komma att* plus the infinitive of the principal verb. Ex. *Han säger sig skola resa i morgon* (= *han säger att han kommer att resa i morgon*) he says that he will start on his journey tomorrow.

§ 367

(att) älskas *to be loved*

Passive

Indicative

I am loved, etc.

Sg.1. jag älskas

2. du älskas

3. han älskas

Pl.1. vi älskas

2. I älskens

3. de älskas

Present

Subjunctive (optative)

*(that) I be loved, etc.*jag älskes¹⁾

du älskes

han älskes

vi älskes

I älskens

de älskes

Past

(that) I were loved, etc.

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

I was loved, etc.

Sg.1. jag älskades

2. du älskades

3. han älskades

Pl.1. vi älskades

2. I älskadens

3. de älskades

Present Perfect

*(that) I (may) have been loved, etc.*jag må(mätte) ha(va) älskats²⁾, etc.

du må(mätte) ha(va) älskats, etc.

han må(mätte) ha(va) älskats, etc.

vi må(mätte) ha(va) älskats, etc.

I mån(mätten) hava älskats, etc.

de må(mätte) ha(va) älskats, etc.

Past Perfect

(that) I had been loved, etc.

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

I had been loved, etc.

Sg.1. jag hade älskats

2. du hade älskats

3. han hade älskats

Pl.1. vi hade älskats

2. I haden älskats

3. de hade älskats

Future

I shall be loved, etc.

- Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) älskas
 2. du skall (kommer att) älskas
 3. han skall (kommer att) älskas
 Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) älskas
 2. I skolen (kommen att) älskas
 3. de skola (komma att) älskas

Future Perfect

I shall have been loved, etc.

- Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) ha(va) älskats
 2. du skall (kommer att) ha(va) älskats
 3. han skall (kommer att) ha(va) älskats
 Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) ha(va) älskats
 2. I skolen (kommen att) hava älskats
 3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) älskats

Conditional I

- I should be loved, etc.*
 jag skulle älskas
 du skulle älskas
 han skulle älskas
 vi skulle älskas
 I skulle älskas
 de skulle älskas

Conditional II

- I should have been loved, etc.*
 jag skulle ha(va) älskats
 du skulle ha(va) älskats
 han skulle ha(va) älskats
 vi skulle ha(va) älskats
 I skulle hava älskats
 de skulle ha(va) älskats

Imperative

Present

- Sg.2. hoppas (du)!³⁾ *Hope (thou)!* Pl.1. samloms (vi)! *Let us gather together!*
 Perf. (att) hava älskats to have been 2. samlens (I)! *gather (ye) together!*

Verbals

Infinitive

- Pres. (att) älskas to be loved
 Perf. (att) hava älskats to have been
 loved
 Fut. (att) skola älskas⁴⁾
 to be about to be loved

Participle

- Pres. -----
 Perf. (är) älskad loved

- Supine (har) älskat (has) loved

1) The use of the present subjunctive passive is exceedingly rare. Ex. *Så leve ljuset! Sprides det av eder i fosterbygden---* So may the light live! May it be diffused by you in your native districts---etc. Sundén, p.119, footnote.

2) The perfect subjunctive passive is expressed by *må* (*mätte*) *ha(va)* followed by the past participle of the principal verb.

3) The passive imperative terminating in *-s* is common in the case of some deponent verbs (§225). Ex. *Minns detta!* Remember this! *Andas djupt!* Take a deep breath! *Skäms!* Be ashamed of yourself! *Yus ej!* Do not boast! Otherwise the passive imperative assumes periphrastic form. Ex. *Låt dig rådas!* Allow thyself to be advised (admonished), etc. Often with the verb *vara* Ex. *Var hälsad sköna morgonstund!* Be greeted glorious morning hour! Cf. Sundén, p.120.

4) This form is rare. It is usually replaced by the periphrastic form *(att) komma att älskas* (*kallas, hälsas, etc.*).

2nd Weak Conjugation

§ 368

(att) böja, köpa to bend, buy

Active

Present

Subjunctive (optative)

- Indicative
I bend, buy, etc.
 Sg.1. jag böjer, köper
 2. du böjer, köper
 3. han böjer, köper
 Pl.1. vi böja, köpa
 2. I böjen, köpen
 3. de böja, köpa

- (that) I bend, buy, etc.*

- jag böje, köpe
 du böje, köpe
 han böje, köpe
 vi böje, köpe
 I böjen, köpen
 de böje, köpe

Past

- (that) I bent, bought, etc.*

- I bent, bought, etc.*
 Sg.1. jag böjde, köpte
 2. du böjde, köpte
 3. han böjde, köpte
 Pl.1. vi böjde, köpte
 2. I böjden, köpten
 3. de böjde, köpte

- The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

Present Perfect

I have bent, bought, etc.

- Sg.1. jag har böjt, köpt
 2. du har böjt, köpt
 3. han har böjt, köpt
 Pl.1. vi ha(va) böjt, köpt
 2. I haven böjt, köpt
 3. de ha(va) böjt, köpt

(that) I may have bent, bought, etc.

- jag mā(mätte) ha(va) böjt, köpt
 du mā(mätte) ha(va) böjt, köpt
 han mā(mätte) ha(va) böjt, köpt
 vi mā(mätte) ha(va) böjt, köpt
 l mān(mätten) hava böjt, köpt
 de mā(mätte) ha(va) böjt, köpt

Past Perfect

I had bent, bought, etc.

- Sg.1. jag hade böjt, köpt
 2. du hade böjt, köpt
 3. han hade böjt, köpt
 Pl.1. vi hade böjt, köpt
 2. I haden böjt, köpt
 3. de hade böjt, köpt

(that) I had bent, bought, etc.

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

Future

I shall bend, buy, etc.

- Sg.1. jag skall(kommer att) böja, köpa
 2. du skall(kommer att) böja, köpa
 3. han skall(kommer att) böja, köpa
 Pl.1. vi skola(komma att) böja, köpa
 2. I skolen(kommen att) böja, köpa
 3. de skola(komma att) böja, köpa

Future Perfect

I shall have bent, bought, etc.

- Sg.1. jag skall(kommer att) böja, köpa
 2. du skall(kommer att) böja, köpa
 3. han skall(kommer att) böja, köpa
 Pl.1. vi skola(komma att) böja, köpa
 2. I skolen(kommen att) böja, köpa
 3. de skola(komma att) böja, köpa

Conditional I

I should bend, buy, etc.

- jag skulle böja, köpa
 du skulle böja, köpa
 han skulle böja, köpa
 vi skulle böja, köpa
 I skulle böja, köpa
 de skulle böja, köpa

Conditional II

I should have bent, bought, etc.

- jag skulle ha(va) böjt, köpt
 du skulle ha(val) böjt, köpt
 han skulle ha(va) böjt, köpt
 vi skulle ha(val) böjt, köpt
 I skulle hava böjt, köpt
 de skulle ha(va) böjt. köpt

Imperative

Present

- Pl.1. böjom, köpom!
 låt(om) oss böja, köpa!
 Let us bend, buy!
 2. böjen, köpen! bend (ye),
 buy (ye)!

Verbals

Participle

- Pres. (att) böja, köpa to bend, buy
 Perf. (att) ha(va) böjt, köpt to have
 bent, bought.
 Fut. (att) skola böja, köpa¹⁾
 to be about to bend, buy

- Pres. böjande, köpande, bending, buying
 Perf. See Passive
 Supine (har) böjt, köpt (have bent,
 bought)

1) See § 366, note 5

§ 369

(att) böjas, köpas (to be bent, bought)

Passive

Present

Indicative

I am being bent, bought, etc.

- Sg.1. jag böjes, köpes
 2. du böjes, köpes
 3. han böjes, köpes
 Pl.1. vi böjas, köpas
 2. I böjens, köpens
 3. de böjas, köpas

Subjunctive (optative)

- (that) I be bent, bought, etc.
 jag böjes, köpes¹⁾
 du böjes, köpes
 han böjes, köpes
 vi böjes
 I böjens
 de böjes

Past

I was being bent, bought, etc. *(that) I were bent, bought etc.*

- Sg.1. jag böjdes, köptes
 2. du böjdes, köptes
 3. han böjdes, köptes
 Pl.1. vi böjdes, köptes
 2. I böjdens, köptens
 3. de böjdes, köptes

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

Present Perfect

I have been bent, bought, etc. *(that) I may have been bent, bought etc.*

- Sg.1. jag har böjts, köpts
 2. du har böjts, köpts
 3. han har böjts, köpts
 Pl.1. vi ha(val) böjts, köpts
 2. I haven böjts, köpts
 3. de ha(val) böjts, köpts

jag må (matte) ha(val) böjts, köpts
 du må (mätte) ha(val) böjts, köpts
 han må (mätte) ha(val) böjts, köpts
 vi må (mätte) ha(val) böjts, köpts
 I män (mätten) ha(val) böjts, köpts
 de må (mätte) ha(val) böjts, köpts

Past Perfect

I had been bent, bought, etc. *(that) I had been bent, bought, etc.*

- Sg.1. jag hade böjts, köpts
 2. du hade böjts, köpts
 3. han hade böjts, köpts
 Pl.1. vi hade böjts, köpts
 2. I haden böjts, köpts
 3. de hade böjts, köpts

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

Future

I shall be bent, bought, etc.

- Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) böjas, köpas
 2. du skall (kommer att) böjas, köpas
 3. han skall (kommer att) böjas, köpas
 Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) böjas, köpas
 2. I skolen (kommen att) böjas, köpas
 3. de skola (komma att) böjas, köpas

Conditional I

I should be bent, bought etc.
 jag skulle böjas, köpas
 du skulle böjas, köpas
 han skulle böjas, köpas
 vi skulle böjas, köpas
 I skulle böjas, köpas
 de skulle böjas, köpas

Future Perfect

I shall have been bent, bought, etc. I should have been bent, bought, etc.

- Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) ha(va) böjts, köpts jag skulle ha(val) böjts, köpts
 2. du skall (kommer att) ha(va) böjts, köpts du skulle ha(val) böjts, köpts
 3. han skall (kommer att) ha(va) böjts, köpts han skulle ha(val) böjts, köpts
 Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) ha(va) böjts, köpts vi skulle ha(val) böjts, köpts
 2. I skolen (kommen att) hava böjts, köpts I skulle hava böjts, köpts
 3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) böjts, köpts de skulle ha(va) böjts, köpts

Conditional II

I should have been bent, bought, etc.

- Sg.2. minns! remember (thou)!

Pl.1. lät(om) oss minnas let us remember!
 2. minnens! remember (ye)!

Verbals

- Infinitive
 Pres. (att) böjas, köpas
 to be bent, bought
 Perf. (att) ha(val) böjts, köpts
 to have been bent, bought
 Fut. (att) skola böjas, köpas³⁾
 to be about to be bent, bought

Participles
 Pres. -----
 Perf. (är) böjd, köpt
 (is) bent, bought
 Supine (har) böjts, köpts
 (has been) bent, bought

1) Usually paraphrased by *må* or *mätte*.

2) Some deponent verbs have imperative s-forms.

3) See § 367, note 4

3rd Weak Conjugation

§ 370

(att) tro to believe

Active

Present

Subjunctive (optative)

(that) I may believe (trust), etc.

I believe (trow), etc.

Sg.1. jag tror

jag må (måttel) tro¹⁾

2. du tror

du må (måttel) tro

3. han tror

han må (måttel) tro

Pl.1. vi tro

vi må (måttel) tro

2. I tron

I mån (måtten) tro

3. de tro

de må (måttel) tro

Past

(that) I believed, etc.

I believed, etc.

Sg.1. jag trodde

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

2. du trodde

3. han trodde

Pl.1. vi trodde

2. I trodden

3. de trodde

Present Perfect

(that) I (may) have believed, etc.

I have believed, etc.

Sg.1. jag har trott

jag må (måttel) ha(va) trott

2. du har trott

du må (måttel) ha(va) trott

3. han har trott

han må (måttel) ha(va) trott

Pl.1. vi ha(va) trott

vi må (måttel) ha(va) trott

2. I haven trott

I mån (måtten) hava trott

3. de ha(va) trott

de må (måttel) ha(va) trott

Past Perfect

(that) I had believed, etc.

I had believed, etc.

Sg.1. jag hade trott

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

2. du hade trott

3. han hade trott

Pl.1. vi hade trott

2. I haden trott

3. de hade trott

Future

Conditional I

I shall believe, etc.

I should believe, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) tro

jag skulle tro¹⁾

2. du skall (kommer att) tro

du skulle tro

3. han skall (kommer att) tro

han skulle tro

Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) tro

vi skulle tro

2. I skolen (kommen att) tro

I skulle tro

3. de skola (komma att) tro

de skulle tro

Future Perfect

Conditional II

I shall have believed, etc.

I should have believed, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) ha(va) trott

jag skulle ha(va) trott

2. du skall (kommer att) ha(va) trott

du skulle ha(va) trott

3. han skall (kommer att) ha(va) trott

han skulle ha(va) trott

Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) ha(va) trott

vi skulle ha(va) trott

2. I skolen (kommen att) hava trott

I skulle hava trott

3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) trott

de skulle ha(va) trott

Imperative

Pl.1. låt(om) oss tro! Let us believe!

Sg.2. tro(du)! believe (thou)!

2. tron (I) believe (ye)!

Verbals

Infinitive	Participle
Pres. (att) tro to believe	Pres. troende believing
Perf. (att) ha (va) trott to have believed	Perf. See Passive § 371.
Fut. (att) skola tro (att) komma att tro ²⁾ to be about to believe	Supine (har) trott, (has) believed

1) The present subjunctive (optative) of verbs of the 3rd conjugation is always formed by *må* (*mätte*) and the proper infinitive of the principal verb. There is no such form as *tro-e*.

2) See § 366, note 5

§ 371	(att) tros to be believed Passive Present	Indicative <i>I am (being) believed, etc.</i> Sg.1. jag tros 2. du tros 3. han tros Pl.1. vi tros 2. I trons 3. de tros	Subjunctive (optative) <i>(that) I (may) be believed, etc.</i> jag må (mätte) tros du må (mätte) tros han må (mätte) tros vi må (mätte) tros I män (mätten) tros de må (mätte) tros
		Past	<i>I was (being) believed, etc.</i> Sg.1. jag troddes Pl.1. vi troddes (that) I were (being) believed, etc. 2. du troddes 2. I troddens The subjunctive (optative) forms are 3. han troddes 3. de troddes identical with those of the indicative.
		Present Perfect	<i>I have been believed, etc.</i> Sg.1. jag har trott 2. du har trott 3. han har trott Pl.1. vi ha(va) trott 2. I haven trott 3. de ha(va) trott
		Past Perfect	<i>I had been believed, etc.</i> Sg.1. jag hade trott 2. du hade trott 3. han hade trott Pl.1. vi hade trott 2. I haden trott 3. de hade trott
		Future	<i>I shall be believed, etc.</i> Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) tros 2. du skall (kommer att) tros 3. han skall (kommer att) tros Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) tros 2. I skolen (kommen att) tros 3. de skola (komma att) tros
		Future Perfect	<i>I shall have been believed, etc.</i> Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) ha(va) trott 2. du skall (kommer att) ha(va) trott 3. han skall (kommer att) ha(va) trott Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) ha(va) trott 2. I skolen (kommen att) hava trott 3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) trott
		Conditional I	<i>I should be believed, etc.</i> jag skulle tros du skulle tros han skulle tros vi skulle tros I skulle tros de skulle tros
		Conditional II	<i>I should have been believed, etc.</i> jag skulle ha(va) trott du skulle ha(va) trott han skulle ha(va) trott vi skulle ha(va) trott I skulle hava trott de skulle ha(va) trott

Imperative

Sg.2. må(mätte) du tros
Mayst thou be believed

- Pl.1. må(mätte) vi tros
May we be believed
 2. män(mätten) I tros
May you (ye) be believed

Verbals

Infinitive

- Pres. (att) tros
to be believed
 Perf. (att) ha(va).trotts
to have been believed
 Fut. (att) skola tros¹⁾
 komma att tros
to be about to be believed

Participle

- Pres. -----
 Perf. (är) trodd
(is) believed
 Supine (har) trotts
(has been) believed

1) See § 367, note 4

The Strong Verb

4th Conjugation

§372.

(att) gripa *to grip (seize)*

Active
Present

- Indicative
I grip (seize), etc.
 Sg.1. jag griper
 2. du griper
 3. han griper
 Pl.1. vi gripa
 2. I gripen
 3. de gripa

Subjunctive (optative)

- (that) *I grip (seize), etc.*
 jag gripe¹⁾
 du gripe
 han gripe
 vi gripe
 I gripen
 de gripe

Past

- I gripped (seized), etc.*
 Sg.1. jag grep
 2. du grep
 3. han grep
 Pl.1. vi grepo
 2. I grepen
 3. de grepo

- (that) *I gripped (seized), etc.*
 jag grepe²⁾
 du grep
 han grep
 vi grep
 I grepen
 de grep

Present Perfect

- I have gripped (seized), etc.*
 Sg.1. jag har gripit
 2. du har gripit
 3. han har gripit
 Pl.1. vi ha(va) gripit
 2. I haven gripit
 3. de ha(va) gripit

- (that) *I (may) have gripped (seized), etc.*
 jag må(mätte) ha(va) gripit
 du må(mätte) ha(va) gripit
 han må(mätte) ha(va) gripit
 vi må(mätte) ha(va) gripit
 I män(mätten) hava gripit
 de må(mätte) ha(va) gripit

Past Perfect

- I had gripped (seized), etc.*
 Sg.1. jag hade gripit
 2. du hade gripit
 3. han hade gripit
 Pl.1. vi hade gripit
 2. I haden gripit
 3. de hade gripit

- (that) *I had gripped (seized), etc.*
 The subjunctive (optative) forms are
 identical with those of the indicative.

Future

I shall grip (seize), etc.

- Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) gripa
 2. du skall (kommer att) gripa
 3. han skall (kommer att) gripa
 Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) gripa
 2. I skolen (kommen att) gripa
 3. de skola (komma att) gripa

Future Perfect

I shall have gripped (seized), etc.

- Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) hava gripit
 2. du skall (kommer att) hava gripit
 3. han skall (kommer att) hava gripit
 Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) hava gripit
 2. I skolen (kommen att) hava gripit
 3. de skola (komma att) hava gripit

Sg.2. grip(du)! grip (thou)!
grip (seize)(thou)!

Infinitive

- Pres. (att) gripa to grip (seize)
 Perf. (att) ha(va) gripit
to have gripped (seized)
 Fut. (att) skola gripa³⁾
to be about to grip (seize)

Notes:

- 1) Often paraphrased by *må, matte* + infinitive.
 2) Often paraphrased by *skulle* + infinitive.
 3) See note 5 §366

Conditional I

- I should grip (seize), etc.*
 jag skulle gripa
 du skulle gripa
 han skulle gripa
 vi skulle gripa
 I skulle gripa
 de skulle gripa

Conditional II

- I should have gripped (seized), etc.*
 jag skulle ha(va) gripit
 du skulle ha(va) gripit
 han skulle ha(va) gripit
 vi skulle ha(va) gripit
 I skulle hava gripit
 de skulle ha(va) gripit

Imperative

- Pl.1. gripom! Let us grip!
(lätt)om oss gripa!
Let us grip (seize)!
 2. gripen (I)! grip (seize) (ye)!

Verbals

Participle

- Pres. gripande gripping (seizing)
 Perf. See Passive
 Supine (har) gripit
(has) gripped (seized)

§ 373

(att) gripas to be gripped (seized)

Passive

Present

Subjunctive (optative)

- Indicative
I am being gripped (seized), etc. (that) I be gripped (seized), etc.
 Sg.1. jag gripes
 2. du gripes
 3. han gripes
 Pl.1. vi gripas
 2. I grepens
 3. de gripas
- jag gripes¹⁾
 du gripes
 han gripes
 vi gripes
 I grepens
 de gripes

Past

- I was being gripped (seized), etc. (that) I were being gripped (seized), etc.*
 Sg.1. jag grepes
 2. du grepes
 3. han grepes
 Pl.1. vi grepas
 2. I grepens
 3. de grepas
- jag grepes²⁾
 du grepes
 han grepes
 vi grepes
 I grepens
 de grepes

Present Perfect

I have been gripped (seized), etc. (that) I (may) have been gripped (seized) etc.

Sg.1.	jag har gripits	jag må(mätte) ha(va) gripits
2.	du har gripits	du må(mätte) ha(va) gripits
3.	han har gripits	han må(mätte) ha(va) gripits
P1.1.	vi ha(va) gripits	vi må(mätte) ha(va) gripits
2.	I haven gripits	I mån(mätten) hava gripits
3.	de ha(va) gripits	de må(mätte) ha(va) gripits

Past Perfect

I had been gripped (seized), etc. (that) I had been gripped (seized), etc.

Sg.1.	jag hade gripits	The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.
2.	du hade gripits	
3.	han hade gripits	
P1.1.	vi hade gripits	
2.	I haden gripits	
3.	de hade gripits	

Future

I shall be gripped (seized), etc. I should be gripped (seized), etc.

Sg.1.	jag skall (kommer att) gripas	jag skulle gripas
2.	du skall (kommer att) gripas	du skulle gripas
3.	han skall (kommer att) gripas	han skulle gripas
P1.1.	vi skola (komma att) gripas	vi skulle gripas
2.	I skolen (kommen att) gripas	I skulle gripas
3.	de skola (komma att) gripas	de skulle gripas

Future Perfect

I shall have been gripped (seized), etc. I should be gripped (seized), etc.

Sg.1.	jag skall(kommer att) ha(va) gripits	jag skulle ha(va) gripits
2.	du skall (kommer att) ha(va) gripits	du skulle ha(va) gripits
3.	han skall (kommer att) ha(va) gripits	han skulle ha(va) gripits
P1.1.	vi skola (komma att) ha(va) gripits	vi skulle ha(va) gripits
2.	I skolen (kommen att) hava gripits	I skulle hava gripits
3.	de skola (komma att) ha(va) gripits	de skulle ha(va) gripits

Imperative

Present

Pl.1. Låt(om) oss inte slåss!

Let us not fight!

2. Slåss inte! Don't fight!

Verbals

Infinitive	
Pres. (att) gripas	<i>to be gripped (seized)</i>
Perf. (att) ha(va) gripits	<i>to have been gripped (seized)</i>
Fut. (atti) skola gripas ³⁾	<i>To be about to be gripped (seized)</i>

Participles

Pres. -----

Perf. (är) gripen
gripped (seized)

Supine (har) gripits
(has) been gripped (seized)

Notes:

1) Often paraphrased by *må, mätte* + infinitive.

2) Often paraphrased by *skulle* + infinitive.

3) See § 367, note 4.

III Auxiliary VERBS

§374.

(att) *hava*

Present

Indicative

*I have, etc.*Sg.1. *jag har*2. *du har*3. *han har*Pl.1. *vi ha(va)*2. *I haven*3. *de ha(va)**I had, etc.*Sg.1. *jag hade*2. *du hade*3. *han hade*Pl.1. *vi hade*2. *I haden*3. *de hade**I have had, etc.*Sg.1. *jag har haft*2. *du har haft*3. *han har haft*Pl.1. *vi ha(va) haft*2. *I haven haft*3. *de ha(va) haft**I had had, etc.*Sg.1. *jag hade haft*2. *du hade haft*3. *han hade haft*Pl.1. *vi hade haft*2. *I haden haft*3. *de hade haft*

Future

*I shall have had, etc.*Sg.1. *jag skall(kommer att)ha(va)*2. *du skall(kommer att) ha(va)*3. *han skall(kommer att) ha(va)*Pl.1. *vi skola (komma att) ha(va)*2. *I skolen(kommen att) hava*3. *de skola (komma att) ha(va)*

Future Perfect

*I shall have had, etc.*Sg.1. *jag skall(kommer att)ha(va) haft*2. *du skall (kommer att)ha(va) haft*3. *han skall(kommer att) ha(va)haft*Pl.1. *vi skola (komma att) ha(va) haft*2. *I skolen(kommen att) hava haft*3. *de skola (komma att) ha(va) haft*

Imperative

Pl.1. *havom! Låt(om) oss ha(va)!**Let us have!*2. *haven! Have (ye)!*

Verbals

Infinitive

Present (att) *ha(va) to have*Perfect (att) *ha(va) haft to have had*Future (att) *skola (komma att) ha(va)**to be about to have*

Participle

Present *havande having*Perfect *havd (rare) had**Supine (har) haft had*

Present

Indicative

I shall, etc., am to, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall

2. du skall

3. han skall

Pl.1. vi skola

2. I skolen

3. de skola

Subjunctive (optative)

Forms are lacking

Imperfect

*I was to**(that) I should*

Sg.1. jag skulle

2. du skulle

3. han skulle

Pl.1. vi skulle

2. I skullen

3. de skulle

The indicative forms are used in the formation of the periphrastic imperfect subjunctive.

Present Perfect

Forms are lacking

Sg.1. jag har skolat¹⁾

2. du har skolat

3. han har skolat

Pl.1. vi ha(va) skolat

2. I haven skolat

3. de ha(va) skolat

Past Perfect

The indicative forms are used in the formation of the periphrastic pluperfect subjunctive.

Sg.1. jag hade skolat¹⁾

2. du hade skolat

3. han hade skolat

Pl.1. vi hade skolat

2. I haden skolat

3. de hade skolat

Future *

Conditional I *

Future Perfect *

Conditional II *

Imperative *

Verbals

Infinitive

Present (att) skola

Participle

Perfect (att) ha(va) skolat

Present skolande

Future -----

Perfect -----

Supine (har) skolat

1) *Skola* and the rest of the modal auxiliaries lack subjunctive (optative) forms, but form in conjunction with infinitives periphrases for the subjunctive, conditionals, and the imperative.

§376.

må

Indicative

Present

I may, etc.

Sg.1. jag må

2. du må

3. han må

Pl.1. vi må

2. I mån

3. de må

This verb is used mainly to express:

1. A concession: *Han må gärna göra det,*
He may do it (for aught I care).
2. An exhortation: *Må envar försvara sin rätt!* Let each and every one defend his rights.
3. A realizable wish: *Må det gå dig väl!*
May things go well with you.

* Forms are lacking

måtte
Present and Past

I may (might)

- Sg.1. jag måtte
2. du måtte
3. han måtte
Pl.1. vi måtte
2. I måtten
3. de måtte

The past (imperfect) of this verb has to all intents and purposes a present meaning. Ex. *Mätte det nu bara gå dig väl!* Now, may things go well with you.

For further examples of the use of this verb see Sundén: *Svensk språklära i sammandrag*, p. 131, note 1.

Måste
Indicative
Present

I must (am obliged to) etc.

- Sg.1. jag måste
2. du måste
3. han måste
Pl.1. vi måste
2. I måsten
3. de måste

Past

I had to (was obliged to) etc.

- Sg.1. jag måste
2. du måste
3. han måste
Pl.1. vi måste
2. I måsten
3. de måste

Note: *Måste*, as the form indicates, is in reality a past tense, which is used as a present also. Cf. Germ. *musste*.

Present Perfect

I have been obliged to, etc.

- Sg.1. jag har måst
2. du har måst
3. han har måst
Pl.1. vi ha(va) måst
2. I haven måst
3. de ha(va) måst

The use of this tense is of rare occurrence.

Past Perfect

I had been obliged to, etc.

- Sg.1. jag hade måst
2. du hade måst
3. han hade måst
Pl.1. vi hade måst
2. I haden måst
3. de hade måst

The use of this tense is of rare occurrence.

Verbals

Infinitive

- Pres. -----
Perf. (att) ha(va) måst
to have been obliged to,
to have had to

Participle

- Pres. -----
Perf. -----
Supine (har) måst
(has been) obliged

1) In dialects and in Swedish in Finland the infinitive *måsta* occurs.

Månde

This is an old imperfect used in the sense of: What may (might) that be? *Vad månde det betyda?* *Vad månde varda av detta barnet?* I wonder what this child will become?

More common is *männe*, originally present subjunctive of the same verb of which *månde* is the past (imperfect). It now functions as an interrogative prounoun. Ex. *männe han kommer?* I wonder if (whether) he is coming. Cf. also the adverb *mäntro*.

Present

Indicative

I can, etc.

Sg.1. jag kan

2. du kan

3. han kan

Pl.1. vi kunna

2. I kunnen

3. de kunna

Subjunctive (optative)

(that) I can, (be able), etc.

jag må (måtte) kunna

du må (måtte) kunna

han må (måtte) kunna

vi må (måtte) kunna

I mån (måtten) kunna

de må (måtte) kunna

Imperfect

I could, etc.

Sg.1. jag kunde

2. du kunde

3. han kunde

Pl.1. vi kunde

2. I kunden

3. de kunde

(that) I could

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

Present Perfect

I have been able, etc.

Sg.1. jag har kunnat

2. du har kunnat

3. han har kunnat

Pl.1. vi ha(va) kunnat

2. I haven kunnat

3. de ha(va) kunnat

(that) I (may) have been able, etc.

jag må (måtte) ha(va) kunnat

du må (måtte) ha(va) kunnat

han må (måtte) ha(va) kunnat

vi må (måtte) ha(va) kunnat

I mån (måtten) hava kunnat

de må (måtte) ha(va) kunnat

Past Perfect

I had been able, etc.

Sg.1. jag hade kunnat

2. du hade kunnat

3. han hade kunnat

Pl.1. vi hade kunnat

2. I haden kunnat

3. de hade kunnat

(that) I might have been able

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the past perfect

Future

I shall be able, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) kunna

2. du skall (kommer att) kunna

3. han skall (kommer att) kunna

Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) kunna

2. I skolen (kommen att) kunna

3. de skola (komma att) kunna

Future Perfect

I shall have been able, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) ha(va) kunnat

2. du skall (kommer att) ha(va) kunnat

3. han skall (kommer att) ha(va) kunnat

Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) ha(va) kunnat

2. I skolen (kommen att) hava kunnat

3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) kunnat

Conditional I

I should be able, I could, etc.

jag skulle kunna

du skulle kunna

han skulle kunna

vi skulle kunna

I skulle kunna

de skulle kunna

Conditional II

I should have been able, etc.

jag skulle ha(va) kunnat

du skulle ha(va) kunnat

han skulle ha(va) kunnat

vi skulle ha(va) kunnat

I skulle hava kunnat

de skulle ha(va) kunnat

Imperative

Forms are lacking

Verbals

Infinitive

Present (att) *kunna* to be ablePerfect (att) *ha(va)* kunnat
to have been ableFuture (att) *skola* (komma att) *kunna*
to be about to be able

Participle

Present *kunnande* being able

Perfect -----

Supine (har) *kunnat*
(has) been able

(att) vilja (to) will, want

Present

Indicative

I will, etc.

Sg.1. jag vill

2. du vill

3. han vill

Pl.1. vi vilja

2. I viljen

3. de vilja

I willed, etc.

Sg.1. jag ville

2. du ville

3. han ville

Pl.1. vi ville

2. I villen

3. de ville

I have willed, etc.

Sg.1. jag har velat

2. du har velat

3. han har velat

Pl.1. vi ha(va) velat

2. I haven velat

3. de ha(va) velat

I had willed, etc.

Sg.1. jag hade velat

2. du hade velat

3. han hade velat

Pl.1. vi hade velat

2. I haden velat

3. de hade velat

Future

I shall will, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) vilja

2. du skall (kommer att) vilja

3. han skall (kommer att) vilja

Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) vilja

2. I skolen (kommen att) vilja

3. de skola (komma att) vilja

Future Perfect

I shall have willed, etc.

Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) ha(va) velat

2. du skall (kommer att) ha(va) velat

3. han skall (kommer att) ha(va) velat

Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) ha(va) velat

2. I skolen (kommen att) ha(va) velat

3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) velat

Conditional I

I should will, etc.

jag skulle vilja

du skulle vilja

han skulle vilja

vi skulle vilja

I skulle vilja

de skulle vilja

Conditional II

I should have willed, etc.

jag skulle ha(va) velat

du skulle ha(va) velat

han skulle ha(va) velat

vi skulle ha(va) velat

I skulle hava velat

de skulle ha(va) velat

Imperative

Pl.1. viljom! Låt(om) oss vilja!

Let us will!

2. viljen! Will (ye)!

Sg.2. vill! will!

Verbals

Infinitive

Present (att) vilja to will

Perfect (att) ha(va) velat

to have willed

Future (att) skola (komma att) vilja

to be about to will

Participle

Present viljande willing

Perfect ----- willed

Supine (har) velat (has) willed

§382.

(att) böra ought (= I ought to, etc.)

Present

Indicative

I ought to + infin.

Sg.1. jag bör

2. du bör

3. han bör

Pl.1. vi böra

2. I bören

3. de böra

Subjunctive (optative)

Forms are lacking

Imperfect

I ought (= I should) + infin.

Sg.1. jag borde [bø:də:]

2. du borde

3. han borde

Pl.1. vi borde

2. I borden

3. de borde

Forms are lacking

Present Perfect

I ought + infin.

Sg.1. jag har bort [bø:t]

2. du har bort

3. han har bort

Pl.1. vi ha(va) bort

2. I haven bort

3. de ha(va) bort

Forms are lacking

Pluperfect

I ought (should) + infin.

Sg.1. jag hade bort

2. du hade bort

3. han hade bort

Pl.1. vi hade bort

2. I haden bort

3. de hade bort

Forms are lacking

Future

Conditional I

I ought to + infin.

Sg.1.

2.

3.

Pl.1. Forms are lacking

2.

3.

jag borde

du borde

han borde

vi borde

I borden

de borde

Future Perfect

Conditional II

I ought to + infin.

Sg.1.

2.

3.

. Forms are lacking

2.

3.

jag hade bort

du hade bort

han hade bort

vi hade bort

I haden bort

de hade bort

Imperative

Forms are lacking

Verbals

Infinitive

Participles

Present (att) böra

Present börande

Perfect (att) ha(va) bort

Perfect (none)

Future (form is lacking)

Supine (har) bort

tör

Indicative
Present*I may, etc.*

Sg.1. jag tör

2. du tör

3. han tör

Pl.1. vi töra

2. I tören

3. de töra

Note. This verb has numerous meanings.

Ex. *Det tör bli regn,**It is likely to rain.**Han tör ha misstagit sig,**He has probably made a mistake.*

Past

*Ni torde observera.**You will (please) observe.**Intresserade torde annäla sig.**Those interested will report.**Det torde han ej veta.**That (I dare say) he may not know.*

lär

Indicative
Present*I am said to, etc.*

Sg.1. jag lär

2. du lär

3. han lär

Pl.1. vi lära

2. I lären

3. de lära

This verb occurs only in the present indicative. In meaning it corresponds to English *is said to be, supposed to be* etc., and to German *sollen, soll sein.*

§384.

(att) vara to be

Present

Indicative

I am, etc.

Sg.1. jag är

2. du är

3. han är

Pl.1. vi äro [æ'rə']

2. I ären

3. de äro

I was, etc.

Sg.1. jag var

2. du var

3. han var

Pl.1. vi voro [və'rə']

2. I voren

3. de voro

I have been, etc.

Sg.1. jag har varit

2. du har varit

3. han har varit

Pl.1. vi ha(va) varit

2. I haven varit

3. de ha(va) varit

I had been, etc.

Sg.1. jag hade varit

2. du hade varit

3. han hade varit

Pl.1. vi hade varit

2. I haden varit

3. de hade varit

Subjunctive (optative)

(that) I be, may be, etc.

jag vare (må vara)

du vare (må vara)

han vare (må vara)

vi vare (må vara)

I varen (mån vara)

de vare (må vara)

Imperfect

(that) I were, might be, etc.

jag vore (mätte vara)

du vore (mätte vara)

han vore (mätte vara)

vi vore (mätte vara)

I voren (mätten vara)

de vore (mätte vara)

Present Perfect

I may have been, etc.

jag må ha(va) varit

du må ha(va) varit

han må ha(va) varit

vi må ha(va) varit

I mår hava varit

de må ha(va) varit

Past Perfect

I might have been, etc.

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative

Future	Conditional I	
<i>I shall be, etc.</i>	<i>I should be, etc.</i>	
Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) vara	jag skulle vara	
2. du skall (kommer att) vara	du skulle vara	
3. han skall (kommer att) vara	han skulle vara	
P1.1. vi skola (komma att) vara	vi skulle vara	
2. I skolen (kommen att) vara	I skulle vara	
3. de skola (komma att) vara	de skulle vara	
Future Perfect	Conditional II	
<i>I shall have been, etc.</i>	<i>I should have been, etc.</i>	
Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) ha(va) varit	jag skulle ha(va) varit	
2. du skall (kommer att) ha(va) varit	du skulle ha(va) varit	
3. han skall (kommer att) ha(va) varit	han skulle ha(va) varit	
P1.1. vi skola (komma att) hal(va)	vi skulle hal(va) varit	
varit		
2. I skolen (kommen att) ha(va) varit	I skulle hava varit	
3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) varit	de skulle ha(va) varit	
Imperative	Verbals	
Sg.2. var! be!		
Infinitive	Participle	
Present (att)vara to be	Present varande being	
Perfect (att) ha(va) varit	Perfect -----	
to have been		
Future (att) skola (komma att) vara	Supine (har) varit been	
to be about to be		
§386.	(att) varda to become	
Indicative	Present	Subjunctive (optative)
<i>I became, etc.</i>		
Sg.1. jag värder	jag varde (må, måtte varda)	
2. du värder	du varde (må, måtte varda)	
3. han värder	han varde (må, måtte varda)	
P1.1. vi varda	vi varde (må, måtte varda)	
2. I varden	I varden (mån, måtten varda)	
3. de varda	de varde (må, måtte varda)	
I became, etc.	Imperfect	
Sg. 1. jag vart	jag vorde	
2. du vart	du vorde	
3. han vart	han vorde	
P1.1. vi vordo [və·dɔ:]	vi vorde	
2. I vorden	I vorden	
3. de vordo	de vorde	
		Nearly always rendered by: skulle varda
I have become, etc.	Present Perfect	
. jag är vorden		
2. du är vorden		
3. han är vorden		
P1.1. vi äro vordna		
2. I ären vordna		
3. de äro vordna		
I had become, etc.	Past Perfect	
Sg.1. jag var vorden		
2. du var vorden		
3. han var vorden		
P1.1. vi voro vordna		
2. I voren vordna		
3. de voro vordna		
		Forms are not in use
		Forms are not in use

Future	Conditional I
<p><i>I shall become, etc.</i></p> <p>Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) varda 2. du skall (kommer att) varda 3. han skall (kommer att) varda</p> <p>Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) varda 2. I skolen (kommen att) varda 3. de skola (komma att) varda</p>	<p><i>I should become, etc.</i></p> <p>jag skulle varda du skulle varda han skulle varda</p> <p>vi skulle varda I skulle varda de skulle varda</p>
Future Perfect	Conditional II
<p><i>I shall have become, etc.</i></p> <p>Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) varda vorden [<i>vɔ'dən'</i>] 2. du skall (kommer att) varda vorden 3. han skall (kommer att) varda vorden</p> <p>Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) varda vordna 2. I skolen (kommen att) varda vordna 3. de skola (komma att) varda vordna</p>	<p><i>I should have become, etc.</i></p> <p>jag skulle varda vorden du skulle varda vorden han skulle varda vorden</p> <p>vi skulle varda vordna I skulle varda vordna de skulle varda vordna</p>
Imperative	Verbals
<p>Sg.2. varde! <i>Let there be (light)!</i></p>	<p>Pl.1. låtom oss varda! 2. varden!</p>
Infinitive	Participle
<p>Present (att) varda¹⁾ Perfect ----- Future -----</p>	<p>Present vardande becoming Perfect (<i>är</i>) vorden²⁾ (has) become Supine -----</p>
<p>1) Swedish <i>varda</i> (cf. German <i>werden</i>) is archaic and replaced by <i>bliva</i>. It is used almost exclusively in the higher style, in poetry and official announcements. The imperfect indicative is practically the only part of the verb still used orally and in writing. Ex. <i>Han vart ond, så snart jag blott nämnde saken</i>. He became angry as soon as I merely mentioned the matter.</p> <p>2) Together with the auxiliary <i>vara</i> (<i>är</i>, <i>var</i>), perfect and pluperfect tenses are formed. Ex. <i>Han är (var) vorden</i>. In combination with the past participle of the principal verb, <i>varda</i> (cf. <i>bliva</i>), forms a periphrastic passive. Ex. <i>Härmed varder offentligen kungjort ... Public notice is hereby given (that) ...</i></p>	
<p>§387</p>	<p>(att) bliva* to become</p>
Present	Subjunctive (optative)
<p>Indicative</p> <p><i>I become, etc.</i></p> <p>Sg.1. jag bli(ve)r 2. du bli(ve)r 3. han bli(ve)r</p> <p>Pl.1. vi bli(va) 2. I bliven 3. de bli(va)</p>	<p><i>(that) I become (may become) etc.</i></p> <p>jag blive (må bli(va)) du blive (må bli(va)) han blive (må bli(va))</p> <p>vi blive (må bli(va)) I bliven (måna bliva) de blive (må bli(va))</p>
Imperfect	Subjunctive (optative)
<p><i>I became, etc.</i></p> <p>Sg.1. jag blev 2. du blev 3. han blev</p> <p>Pl.1. vi blevo 2. I bleven 3. de blevo</p>	<p><i>(that) I became, etc.</i></p> <p>jag bleve du bleve han bleve</p> <p>vi bleve I bleven de bleve</p>
Present Perfect	Subjunctive (optative)
<p><i>I have become, etc.</i></p> <p>Sg.1. jag har blivit 2. du har blivit 3. han har blivit</p> <p>Pl.1. vi ha(va) blivit 2. I haven blivit 3. de ha(va) blivit</p>	<p><i>(that) I (may) have become, etc.</i></p> <p>jag må (måtte) ha(va) blivit du må (måtte) ha(va) blivit han må (måtte) ha(va) blivit</p> <p>vi må (måtte) ha(va) blivit I mån (måtten) hava blivit de må (måtte) ha(va) blivit</p>

Past Perfect*I had become, etc.**(that) I had become, etc.*

Sg.1. jag hade blivit

The subjunctive (optative) forms are identical with those of the indicative.

2. du hade blivit

3. han hade blivit

Pl.1. vi hade blivit

2. I haden blivit

3. de hade blivit

Future*I shall become, etc.***Conditional I**

Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) bli(va)

jag skulle (komme att) bliva

2. du skall (kommer att) bli(va)

du skulle (komme att) bliva

3. han skall (kommer att) bli(va)

han skulle (komme att) bliva

Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) bli(va)

vi skulle (komme att) bliva

2. I skolen (kommen att) bli(va)

I skulle (kommens att) bliva

3. de skola (komma att) bli(va)

de skulle (komme att) bliva

Future Perfect*I shall have become, etc.***Conditional II**

Sg.1. jag skall (kommer att) ha(va) blivit

jag skulle ha(va) blivit

2. du skall (kommer att) ha(va) blivit

du skulle ha(va) blivit

3. han skall (kommer att) ha(va) blivit

han skulle ha(va) blivit

Pl.1. vi skola (komma att) ha(va) blivit

vi skulle ha(va) blivit

2. I skolen (kommen att) hava blivit

I skulle hava blivit

3. de skola (komma att) ha(va) blivit

de skulle ha(va) blivit

Imperative

Pl.1. blivom! låt(om) oss bli(va)!

Let us remain!

2. bliven! Remain!

Sg.2. bliv!Note: Only in the sense of *remain*.

Ex. Bliv när oss! Abide with us!

Verbals**Infinitive**

Present (att) bliva to become

Participle

Present blivande becoming

Perfect (att) ha(va) blivit

Perfect (är) bliven become

to have become

Future (att) skola (komma att) bli(va) Supine (har) blivit (has) become
to be about to become*) When *bli(va)* is used in the sense of *förbliva* - 'to remain' it is a regular verb of the 4th conjugation.

§388. B. ALPHABETICAL LIST OF VERBS OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION
AND OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS. 1)

For the convenience of the learner the following list of verbs has been made to include, in addition to verbs of the fourth conjugation, the following verbs:

1. Verbs that waver between the 1st and the 2nd conjugations.
2. Verbs that waver between the 1st and the 4th conjugations.
3. Verbs that waver between the 2nd and the 4th conjugations.
4. Irregular verbs of the 3rd conjugation.
5. Derivatives of the 2nd conjugation of the type *glädja*.

Note. Verbs of the 2nd conjugation, the only irregularity of which is the lack of the personal ending (-er) have not been included in this list.

6. A selection of the most usual verbs of the 4th conjugation, regular and irregular.

7. Temporal and modal auxiliaries and defective verbs.

This arrangement has seemed desirable in order that the student engaging in the study of Swedish for the first time may readily find an answer to such queries relative to the forms of verbs as are wont to arise during the initial stage of the study of a foreign language.

For lack of space the present subjunctive, the present participle and the imperative have been excluded. The student is referred to the respective verb paradigms for these forms.

The conjugations and classes of the weak verb have generally been indicated by the numerals I, IIa, IIb, and III. Verbs of the 4th conjugation have not been numbered. Irregular verbs have generally been marked irregular (irr.).

Forms marked with a dagger (†) are archaic. Colloquial forms have not always been indicated. The inflection of the past participle (participial adjective) has generally been indicated; when omitted, the forms are either lacking, or rare, or not in use. Compound forms have been given occasionally.
Ex. *leva* : *belevad*; *ligga* : *förlegad*, etc.

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle 2)		
					Singular	Plural	All genders
					Common	Neuter	
<i>bedja</i> , be irr. <i>ask, pray</i>	<i>beder, ber</i>	<i>sing. bad</i> ³⁾ <i>pl. både</i>	<i>både</i> ³⁾	<i>bedit</i>	<i>bedd</i>	<i>bett</i>	<i>bedda</i>
<i>begrava</i> <i>begrava</i> IIa <i>bury</i>	<i>begraver</i> <i>begraver</i>	<i>begrov</i> <i>begravde</i>	<i>begrove</i> ⁴⁾ -----	<i>begravit</i> <i>begravt</i>	<i>begraven</i> <i>begravd</i>	<i>begravet</i> <i>begravt</i>	<i>begravna</i> <i>begravda</i>
<i>begynna</i> IIb <i>begin</i>	<i>begynner</i>	<i>begynte</i>	-----	<i>begynt</i>			
<i>bekväma</i> I <i>sig (till)</i> <i>comply,</i> <i>put up with</i>	<i>bekvämar</i>	<i>bekvämade</i>	-----	<i>bekvämat</i>			
<i>belöpa sig</i> (<i>till</i>) IIb <i>amount to</i> <i>(of bills,</i> <i>etc.)</i>	<i>belöper</i>	<i>belöpte</i>	-----	<i>belöpt</i>			

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj	Supine	Past Participle	207
					Singular	Plural
					Common	All genders
betala I betala IIa betala IIb <i>pay(bills, etc.)</i>	betalar betalar betalar	betalade betalde betalte	-----	betalt betalt betalt	betald betalt betalt	betalta betalta betalta
bida I <i>bide</i>	bidar	bidade bidde	-----	bidat bitt	bidad	bidat
binda <i>bind,tie</i>	binder	sing.band pl.bundo	bunde	bundit	bunden	bundet
bita <i>bite</i>	biter	bet	bete	bitit	biten	bitet
bjudा	bjunder	bjöd †böd	bjöde	bjudit †budit	bjuden †buden	bjudet budet
<i>invite; offer</i>						bjudna budna
bliva, bli <i>become</i>	bliver,blir	blev	bleve	blivit	bliven	blivet
bringa, irr. bringa I <i>bring</i>	bringar bringar	bragte bringade	bragte -----	bragt bringat	bringad	bringat
brinna <i>burn</i>	brinner	sing.brann pl.brunno	brunne	brunnit	brunnen	brunnet
brista <i>break,burst</i>	brister	sing.brast pl.brusto	bruste	brustit	brusten	brustet
bryna IIb <i>sharpen, whet</i>	bryner	brynte	brynte	brynt	brynd	brynt
bryta <i>break</i>	bryter	bröt	bröte	brutit	bruten	brutet
bära <i>carry,bear</i>	bär	sing.bar pl.buro	bure	burit	buren	buret
böra, irr. <i>ought</i>	bör	borde	borde	bort [bɔ:t]		
böta I <i>pay(a fine)</i>	bötar	bötade	-----	bötat		
dela I dela IIb <i>divide, deal</i>	delar delar	delade delte	-----	delat delt	delad delt	delade delta
dimpa <i>fall</i>	dimper	sing.damp pl.dumpo	dümpe	dumpi:	dumpen	dumpet
draga, dra <i>pull,draw, drag</i>	drager,drar	drog	droge	dragit	dragen	draget
dricka <i>drink</i>	dricker	sing.drack pl.drucko	drucke	druckit	drucken	drucket
driva <i>drive,drift</i>	driver	drev	dreve	drivit	driven	drivet
drypa <i>drip</i>	dryper	dröp	dröpe	drupit	drupen	drupet
dräpa, irr. dräpa IIb <i>kill</i>	dräper	sing.drap pl.dräpo	dräpe dräpte	dräpit dräpt	dräpen dräpt	dräpet dräpta

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past Participle		
					Singular	Neuter	Plural All genders
dvälgas dep. irr. <i>dwell</i>	dvälgjes dvälgjs	dvaldes	-----	dvalts			
dyka dyka IIb <i>dive</i>	dyker dyker	dök dykte	döke -----	dykt			
dö, irr. <i>die</i>	dör	dog	döge	dött	död	dött	döda (adj.)
dölja, irr. <i>conceal</i>	döljer	dolde	-----	dolt	dold	dolt	dolda
falla <i>fall</i>	faller	föll	fölle	fallit	fallen	faller	fallna
fara <i>travel, go,</i> <i>fare</i>	far	for	fore	farit	faren	faret	farna
fika I <i>strive</i> <i>(after) seek</i> <i>(to attain)</i>	fikar	fikade	-----	fikat	fiken	fiket	fikna
finna <i>find</i>	finner	sing. fann pl. funno	funne	funnit	funnen	funnet	funna
flyga <i>fly</i>	flyger	flög	flöge	flugit	flugen	fluget	flugna
flyta <i>float,</i> <i>flow</i>	flyter	flöt	flöte	flutit	fluten (i land)	flutet	flutna
fnyxa fnyxa IIb <i>sniff</i>	fnyser fnyser	fnös fnyste	fnöse -----	fnusit fnyst			
frysa <i>freeze</i>	fryser	frös	fröse	frusit	frusen	fruset	frusna
frälsa I frälsa IIb <i>save, make</i> <i>free</i>	frälsar frälsar	frälsade frälste	----- -----	frälsat frälst	frälsad frälst	frälsat frälst	frälsade frälsta
få, irr. <i>receive,</i> <i>be permitted</i>	får	sing. fick pl. fingo	inge	fått	fången These forms are usually used with the verb <i>fänga</i> andfådd out of breath	fåget andfått	fågna andfådda
fästa IIb fästa I <i>fasten</i>	fäster fäster	fäste fästade	-----	fäst -festat	fäst fästad	fäst fästat	fästa fästade
förena I <i>unite</i>	förenar	förenade	-----	förenat förent	förenad	förenat	förenade
förgäta, irr. förgäter <i>forget</i>	tförgat no pl.	no form in use		förgätit	förgäten	förgätet	förgätna
förläna I förläna II <i>grant</i>	förlänar förlänar	förlänade förlänte	-----	förlänat förlänt	förlänad	förlänat	förlänale
förnimma <i>perceive</i>	förnimmer	sing. förnäm (rare form) pl. förnummo	förförnumme	förförnummit	förförnummen	förförnummet	förförnumna

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle			
					Singular Common	Neuter	Plural All genders	
försmäda I <i>scoff at, scorn</i>	försmädar	försämäde †försämäde	-----	försämädat				
försona I <i>atone for</i>	försonar	försonade försonte (Poet.)	-----	försonat försonat (Poet.)	försonad försonat (Poet.)	försonat försonat (Poet.)	försonade försonata (Poet.)	
förvärva I <i>acquire</i>	förvärvar	förvärvade	-----	förvärvat	förvärvad	förvärvat	förvärvade	
förvärva IIa <i>förvärvar</i>	förvärvar	förvärvt	-----					
gala I <i>crow(yell)</i>	gal	gol	gole	galit				
gala IIa <i>gal</i>	gal	galde		galt				
gitta, irr. <i>care</i>	gitter	gitte gittade, gat	-----	gittat				
giva, irr. <i>give</i>	giver, ger	sing. gave pl. gäv o	gåve	givit	given	givet	givna	
gjuta <i>pour, cast (iron, etc)</i>	gjuter	göt	göte	gjutit	gjuten	gjutet	gjutna	
glida <i>glide</i>	glider	gled	glede	glidit	gliden	glidet	glidna	
glädja, irr. <i>gladden</i>	sing. gläder pl. glädja	gladde	gladde	glatt				
gnaga IIa <i>gnaw</i>	gnager	gnagde	-----	gnagt	gnagen	gnaget	gnagna	
gnaga I <i>gnaw</i>	gnagar	gnagade	-----	gnagit				
gnida <i>rub</i>	gnider	gned	gnede	gnagat	gnagad	gnagat	gnagade	
gripa <i>seize, gripe</i>	griper	grep	grepe	gripit	gripen	gripet	gripna	
gråta, irr. <i>weep</i>	gråter	grät	gråte	gråtit	begråten <i>bewailed</i>	begråtet	begråtna	
gräva <i>dig, grave</i>	gräver	†grov grävde	†grove -----	grävt	grävd	grävt	grävda	
gå ⁵⁾ , irr. <i>go</i>	[jik:]	gingo [jɪŋ'ə:]	inge [jɪŋ'e:]	gått	gången	gånget	gångna	
gålda I, irr. <i>pay(yield)</i>	gåldar	gåldade	-----	gåldat	gulden <i>paid, legal</i>	guldet language	guldnä	
gälla IIa <i>be valid, be current, etc.</i>	(det)gäller	gällde	-----	gällt				
göra, irr. <i>make, do</i>	gör	gjorde	-----	gjort	gjord	gjort	gjorda	
ha(va), irr. <i>have</i>	sing. ha(ve) pl. ha(va)	hade	-----	haft	havd	haft	havda	
heta, irr. <i>be called named</i>	heter	hette	-----	hetat				
hinna <i>reach(in time)</i>	hinner	sing. hinn pl. hunno	hunne	hunnit	hunnen	hunnet	hunna	

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle		
					Singular	Plural	All genders
					Common	Neuter	
hjälpa <i>help</i>	hjälper	sing. [†] hälpa pl. [†] hulpo hjälpte	†hulpe	hulpit	†hulpen	hulpet	hulpna
hjälpa IIb <i>help</i>	hjälper		-----	hjälpt	hjälpt	hjälpt	hjälpta
hugga <i>chop, hew</i>	hugger	högg	högge	huggit	huggen	hugget	huggna
hålla <i>hold</i>	håller	höll	hölle	hållit	hållen	hållet	hållna
häva <i>heave, to lift</i>	häver	†hov [hɔ:v]	†hove [hɔ:ve']	†hävit			
häva IIa <i>heave, to lift</i>	häver	hävde	-----	hävt	hävd	hävt	hävda
idas, irr. <i>to be too inert (to do s. th.)</i>	ides, ids	iddes [i'de:s', id:s][id:e:s]	-----	itts [it:s]			
icke, idas <i>to be too inert (to do s. th.)</i>							
klinga <i>ring, clang</i>	klingar	sing. klang pl. klungo	klunge	klungit	klungen	klunget	klungna
kliva <i>climb, stride</i>	kliver	klev	kleve	klivit	kliven	klivet	klivna
klyva <i>cleave, split</i>	klyver	klöv	klöve	kluvit	kluven	kluvet	kluvna
kläcka IIb <i>hatch</i>	kläcker	kläckte	-----	kläckt	kläckt	kläckt	kläckta
kläda, klä <i>to dress</i>	kläder, klär	klädde	-----	klätt	klädd	klätt	klädda
knipa <i>pinch, catch</i>	kniper	knep	knepe	knipit	knipen	knipet	knipna
knysta I knysta IIb <i>grumble</i>	knystar knyster	knystade knyste	-----	knystat knyst			
knyta <i>tie, knot</i>	knyter	knöt	knöte	knutit	knuten	knutet	knutna
koka I koka IIb <i>boil, cook</i>	kokar kokar	kokade kokte	-----	kokat kokt	kokad kokt	kokat kokt	kokade kokta
komma, irr. <i>come</i>	kommer	sing. kom pl. kommo	komme	kommit	kommen	kommet	komna
krympa IIb <i>shrink</i>	krymper	krympte	-----	krympt krumpit	krympt krumpen	krympt krumpet	krympta krumpna
krypa <i>creep</i>	kryper	kröp	kröpe	krupit			
krysta I krysta IIb <i>strain</i>	krystar kryster	krystade kryste	-----	krystat kryst	krystad	krystat	krystade
kräva IIa <i>demand pay-ment / crave)</i>	kräver	krävde (kravde)	-----	krävt (krävt)	krävd	krävt	krävda
kräona IIb <i>crown</i>	kräoner	kränte	-----	kränt	kränt	kränt	kränta

Infinitive	Present indicative	Past indicative	Past subjunctive	Supine	Past participle		
					Singular Common	Neuter	Plural All genders
kunna, irr. <i>be able (can)</i>	sing.kan pl.kunna	kunde	-----	kunnat			
kvida <i>moan</i>	kvider	kved kvidde	kvede	kvidit			
kväda, irr. <i>(recite) sing</i>	kväder	kvad kvidde		kvädit	kväden	kvädet	kvädna
kvälja, irr. kvälja IIa <i>torment impers. nauseate</i>	kväljer kväljer	kvalde kvälde	-----	kvalt kväljt	kvald	kvalt	kvalda
le, irr. <i>smile</i>	ler	log [lə:g]	log [lə:gə']	lett	beledd derided	belett	beledda
ledas, leds dep, irr. <i>dislike, have aver- sion for</i>	ledes, leds	leddes	-----	letts			
leva, irr. <i>live</i>	lever	levde	-----	levat	belevad well-bred	belevat	belevade
lida <i>suffer, wear on (as time)</i>	lider	led	lede	lidit	liden	lidet	lidna
ligga, irr. <i>lie</i>	ligger	läg	läge	legat	förlegad shopworn	förlegat	förlegade
lita I <i>depend(on)</i>	litar	litade †let	†lete	litat			
ljuda ljuda II ^b) <i>(re)sound</i>	ljuder ljudar	ljöd ljudade	ljöde -----	ljudit ljudat			
ljuga <i>tell an untruth</i>	ljuger	ljög	ljöge	ljugit	ljuden ljugen	ljuget	ljugna
ljuta(döden)ljuter <i>to die</i>	ljuter	ljöt	ljöte	ljutit	ljuta döden to suffer death		
lyfta IIb lyfta I <i>lift</i>	lyfter lyftar	lyfte lyftade	-----	lyft lyftat	lyft lyftad	lyft lyftat	lyfta lyftade
lyss, irr. <i>listen</i>	sing.lyss pl.lyss	lyddes	-----	lytts			
läda, vid IIblåder irr.		lädde	-----	lätt	vidlädd	vidlätt	vidlädda
läda I <i>stick, (cling) to</i>		lädade					
läna I läna IIb <i>borrow, lend</i>	länar länar	länade länte	-----	länat länt	länad länt	länat länt	länade länta
(läss) <i>pretend</i>	sing.(läss)(läddes) pl. all persons, läss		-----	(lätts)			

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle		
					Singular	Neuter	Plural All genders
läta, irr. <i>utter a sound permit</i>	läter	lät	läte	lätit	tillåten	tillåtet	tillåtna
lägga, irr. <i>lay</i>	lägger	lade	-----	lagt	lagd	lagt	lagda
no infin.	sing.lär pl.lära lären						
<i>is said to be</i>		lära					
löna I löna IIb <i>pay, (reward)</i>	lönar	lönaðe	-----	lönat	belönad	belönat	belönade
löna IIb <i>pay, (reward)</i>	lönar	lönte (rare)	-----	lönt	belönt	belönt	belönta
löpa, irr. <i>run, leap</i>	löper	sing.lopp pl.lupo	lupe	lupit	förlupen <i>strayed (of a bullet)</i>	förlupet <i>bortlöpt</i>	förlupna <i>bortlöpta</i>
löpa IIb <i>run, leap</i>	löper	löpte	-----	löpt	bortlöpt	bortlöpt	bortlöpta
mala mala <i>grind (as in a grist mill)</i>	mal	malde	-----	malit	malen	malet	malna
mana I mana IIb <i>urge, admonish</i>	manar	manade	-----	manat	manad	manat	manade
mena I mena IIb <i>mean, say</i>	menar	menade	-----	menat	välment	välment	välmenta
mena IIb <i>mean, say</i>	menar	mente	-----	ment	<i>well-meant</i>		
mista IIb mista I <i>lose</i>	mister	miste	-----	mist			
mista I <i>lose</i>	mister	mistade	-----	mistat			
no infin.	måste, irr. <i>must</i>	måste	-----	måst			
no infin.	må, irr. <i>may, might, must, etc.</i>	mätte					
niga <i>courtesy</i>	niger	neg	nege	nigit			
njuta <i>enjoy</i>	njuter	njöt	njöte	njutit	njuten	njutet	njutna
nypa <i>pinch (nip)</i>	nyper	nöp	nöpe	nupit	nupen	nupet	nupna
nysa	nyser	nös	nöse	nusit			
nysa IIb <i>sneeze</i>	nyser	nyste	-----	nyst			
nästa I nästa IIb <i>baste, stitch</i>	nästar	nästade	-----	nästat	nästad	nästat	nästade
nästa IIb <i>baste, stitch</i>	nästar	näste	-----	näst			
pipa <i>pipe</i>	piper	pep	pepe	pipit			
pläga I <i>be accustomed, used to</i>	plägar, plär	plägade	-----	plägat	förplägad <i>served, well attended to</i>	förplägat	förplägade
rida <i>ride</i>	rider	red	rede	ridit	beriden <i>mounted</i>	beridet	beridna
rinna <i>flow, run</i>	rinner	sg rann pl.runno	runne	runnit	förrunnen	forrunnet	förrunna
					<i>vanished, past (of time, etc.)</i>		

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle		
					Singular	Plural	
					Common	Neuter	All genders
rista I <i>cut, inscribe</i>	ristar	ristade	-----	ristat	inristad	inristat	inristade
rista IIb <i>shake</i>	rister	riste	-----	rist			
riva <i>tear, rip</i>	river	rev	reve	rivot	riven sönderriven, etc., torn to pieces	rivet	rivna
ropa I <i>call out, cry</i>	ropar	ropade	-----	ropat	anropad challenged, etc.	anropat	anropade
ryka ryka IIb <i>smoke</i>	(det) ryker	rök	röke	rukit, rykit			
	ryker	rykte	-----	rykt			
ryta <i>roar</i>	ryter	röt	röte	rutit rytit			
råka I	råkar	råkade	-----	råkat			
råka IIb <i>meet, happen</i>	råkar	råkte	-----	råkt			
rädas, dep. irr. <i>fear</i>	rädes	räddes	-----	rädits (rare form)			
rödja (<i>see röja</i>)							
röja IIa <i>expose, to clear(roads, a wood, etc.)</i>	röjer	röjde	-----	röjt	röjd	röjt	röjda
röja	röjer	rödde	-----	rött	rödd	rött	rödda
röna IIb <i>experience</i>	röner	rönte	-----	rönt			
se, irr. <i>see</i>	ser	ság	säge	sett	sedd	sett	sedda
simma	simmar	sing.sam pl.summo	summe	summit			
Simma I <i>swim</i>	simmar	simmade	-----	simmat			
sitta, irr. <i>sit, be seated</i>	sitter	sing.satt pl.sutto [sut'ə']	sutte	suttit setat	försutten defaulted	försuttet	försuttna
sjuda <i>boil, seeth</i>	sjuder	sjöd	sjöde	sjudit	sjuden sudden	sjudet	sjudna
sjunga <i>sing</i>	sjunger	sjöng	sjönge	sjungit	sjungen	sjunget	sjungna
sjunka <i>sink</i>	sjunker	sjöñk [ʃöñ:k]	sjönke [ʃöñ:kə']	sjunkit	sjunken	sjunket	sjunkna
skapa I <i>create, shape</i>	skapar	skapade	-----	skapat	skapad	skapat	skapade
skava IIa <i>scrape chafe cogn. shave</i>	skaver	skavde	-----	skavt skavit	skavd skaven	skavt skavet	skavda skavna
skilja, irr. <i>separate</i>	skiljer	skillde	-----	skilt	skild	skilt	skilda
skina <i>shine</i>	skiner	sken	skene	skinit			
skira I <i>clarify</i>	skirar	skirade	-----	skirat	skirad	skirat	skirade
skjuta <i>shoot</i>	skjuter	sköt	sköte	skjutit	skjuten	skjutet	skjutna
skola, irr. <i>shall</i>	sing.skall pl.skola	skulle	-----	skolat			

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past Ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle			Plural All genders
					Singular Common	Neuter		
skona I	skonar	skonade	-----	skonat	skonad	skonat		skonade
skona IIb	skonar	skonte (Poet.)	-----	skont				
späre								
skrida	skrider	skred	skrede	skridit	skriden	skridet		skridna
walk slowly, move								
skrika	skriker	skrek	skreke	skrikit	skriken	skriket		skrikna
shriek, cry								
skrinna	skrinnar	sing.skrann pl.skrunno	skrunne	skrunnit				
skrinna I	skrinnar	skrinnade	-----	skrinnat				
glide								
skriva	skriver	skrev	skreve	skrivit	skriven	skrivet		skrivna
write, shrive								
skrympa IIb	skrymper	skrympte	-----	skrympt				
strong forms								
extant					skrumpit	skrumpen	skrumpet	skrumpna
become wrinkled								
skryta	skryter	skrot	skröte	skrutit	skruten	skrutet		skrutna
boast								
skväta IIb	skväetter	skvätte	-----	skvätt				
tr. splash								
skväta								
intr.	skväetter	skvatt						
start (as from fear)								
skälva	skälver	sing.skalv pl.none	skälvdé	skälvt				
skälva IIa	skälver	skälvdé	-----					
tremble								
skära	skär	sing.skär pl.skuro	skure	skurit	skuren	skuret		skurna
cut, shear, score								
slinka	slinker	sing.slank pl.slunko	slunke	slunkit	slunken	slunket		slunkna
slink								
slinta	slinter	sing.slant pl.slunto	slunte	sluntit	slunten	sluntet		slunta
slip								
slippa	slipper	sing.slapp pl.sluppo	sluppe	sluppit	uppsluppen gay, vivacious	uppsluppet		uppsluppna
not to have to, not to need to								
slita	sliter	slet	slete	slitit	sliten	slitet		slitna
tear, toil hard, worn								
sluka	slukar	slök	slöke	slukit	slukan	sluket		slukna
sluka I	slukar	slukade	-----	slukat	slukad	slukat		slukade
devour								
sluta	sluter	slöt	slöte	slutit	sluten silent, quiet, taciturn	slutet		slutna
close (eyes, etc.)								
sluta I	slutar	slutade	-----	slutat	slutad ended	slutat		slutade
end, close								
slå, irr.	slår	slog	sloge	slagit	slagen	slaget		slagna
beat, slay								
slåss, dep.	slåss	sing.slogs pl.slogos	sloges	slagits				
irr. fight								
smita	smiter	smet	smete	smitit	smiten	smitet		smitna
sneak								
smyga	smyger	smög	smöge	smugit	smugen	smuget		smugna
steal(away), slip								

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle		215
					Singular	Plural	
					Common	Neuter	All genders
smälла IIa	smällder	smälldes	-----	smällt	smälld	smällt	smällda
smälла, intr.	smällder	small					
<i>slap, etc.</i>							
smälta, intr.	smälter	sing. smalt pl. smulto	smulte	smultit	smulten	smultet	smultna
smälta IIb	smälter	smälte	-----	smält	nedsmält <i>melted down</i>	nedsmält	nedsmälta
<i>tr.</i>							
<i>melt, dissolve</i>							
smörja, irr.	smörjer	smorde	-----	smort	smord	smort	smorda
<i>grease,</i>							
<i>lubricate,</i>							
<i>annoint</i>							
snida I	snidar	snidade	-----	snidat	snidad	snidat	snidade
snida	snider	-----	-----	-----			
<i>carve (as wood,</i>							
<i>ivory, etc.)</i>							
snyta	snyter	snöt	smöte	snutit	snuten	snutet	snutna
<i>blow the nose</i>							
snärja IIa	snärjer	snärjde	-----	snärjt	tsnärd	snärt	snärda
<i>ensnare</i>		<i>tsnärde</i>					
sona I	sonar	sonade	-----	sonat			
<i>atone for</i>							
cf. försona I					försonad	försonat	försonade
<i>reconcile</i>							
sova, irr.	sover	sov	sove	sovit			
<i>sleep</i>							
spara I	sparar, spar	sparde	-----	sparat	spasad	sparat	sprade
spara IIa	sparar	sparde	-----	spart			
<i>save, spare</i>							
spela I	spelar	spelade	-----	spelat	bortspelad <i>lost by gambling</i>	bortspelat	bortspelade
spela IIb	spelar	spelte	-----	spelt	spelt	spelt	spelta
<i>play (instrument or game)</i>							
spinna	spinner	sing. spann pl. spunno	spunne	spunnit	spunnen	spunnet	spunna
<i>spin</i>							
spricka	spricker	sing. sprack pl. sprucko	sprucke	spruckit	sprucken	sprucket	sprukna
<i>crack</i>							
sprida	sprider	sing. spred pl. spredo	sprede				
sprida IIa	sprider	spridde	-----	spritt	spridd	spritt	spridda
<i>spread</i>							
springa	springer	sing. sprang pl. sprungo	sprunge	sprungit	sprungen	sprunget	sprungna
<i>run, spring</i>							
spritta	spritter	sing. spratt pl. sprutto	sprutte	spruttit	sprutten	spruttet	spruttna
<i>start, jump</i>							
(from fright, etc.)							
öppna (as the eyes)							
sprätta I	sprättar	sprättade	-----	sprättat	uppsprättad <i>split open</i>	uppsprättat	uppsprättade
<i>rip</i>							
sprätta IIb	sprätter	sprätte	-----	sprätt			
<i>scatter, spatter</i>							
spörja	spörjer	sporde	-----	sport	spord	sport	sporda
<i>ask, learn</i>							
cf. spörjas	spörjes,	spordes	-----	sports			
<i>pass.</i>	<i>spörjs,</i>						
<i>to be</i>	<i>coll. spörs</i>						
<i>asked, rumored</i>							
sticka	sticker	sing. stack pl. stucko	stucke	stuckit	stucken	stucket	stuckna
<i>stick, pierce</i>							
sticka I	stickar	stickade	-----	stickat	stickad	stickat	stickade
<i>knit</i>							

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle		
					Singular	Neuter	Plural All genders
stiga <i>step</i>	stiger	steg	stege	stigit	bestigen <i>ascended, scaled, mounted</i>	bestiget	bestigna
stinga <i>sting</i>	stinger	sing.stack pl.stungo	stunge	stungit	stungen	stunget	stungna
stinka <i>stink</i>	stinker	sing.stank pl.†stunko	†stunke	†stunkit			
stjäla <i>steal</i>	stjäl	sing.stal pl.stulo	stule	stulit	stulen	stulet	stulna
stjälpa	stjälper	sing.†stalp pl.†stulpo	†stulpe	†stulpit	†stulpen	†stulpet	†stulpna
stjälpa IIb <i>upset, turn over (as of a car)</i>	stjälper	stjälpte	-----	stjälpt	stjälpt	stjälpt	stjälpta
strida <i>fight</i>	strider	stred	strede	stridit	bestridd <i>defrayed</i>	bestritt	bestridda
stryka <i>ströke, iron</i>	stryker	strök	ströke	strukit	struknen	struket	strukna
stupa I <i>fall (in battle) fall over</i>	stupar	stupade	-----	stupat			
stupa	stöp	stöp	stöpe				
stå ⁷⁾ , irr. står		stod	stode	stätt	förstådd <i>understood</i>	förstått	förstådda
†stända <i>stand</i>	ständar		†stände		Överståenden	Överståndet	Överståndna <i>surmounted, accomplished, etc.</i>
städja <i>engage (a servant)</i>	städjer	stadde	-----	statt	stadd	statt	stadda
stödja IIa <i>support, steady</i>	stödjer	stödde	-----	stött	stödd	stött	stödda
suga <i>suck</i>	suger	sög	söge	sugit	utsugen <i>exhausted</i>	utsuget	utsugna
supa <i>drink, sip</i>	super	söp	söpe	supit	supen	supet	supna
svida <i>burn, smart</i>	svider	sved	svede	svidit			
svika <i>disappoint, betray, deceive</i>	sviker	svek	sveke	svikit	sviken	sviket	svikna
svinna <i>vanish</i>	svinner	sing.svann pl.svunno	svunne	svunnit	svunnen	svunnet	svunna
svälja IIa <i>swallow</i>	sväljer	sväljde	-----	sväljt	sväljd	sväljt	sväljda
svälta, intr. svälter		svälde	-----	svalt			
svälta IIb <i>starve</i>	svälter	sing.svalt pl.svulto	svalte	svultit	svulten	svultet	svultna
svär(j)a, irr. svärjer, <i>swear</i>	svär	sing.svor pl.svuro	svure	svurit	utsvält <i>starved</i>	utsvält	utsvälda
syna I <i>examine, inspect</i>	synar	synade	-----	synat	synad	synat	synade
syna IIb	synar	syntel(coll.)	-----	synt(coll.)	synt	synt	synta
synas, dep. IIb <i>seem, appear</i>	synes, syns	syntes	-----	synts			

Infin.	Pres. ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle			Plural All genders
					Singular Common	Neuter	Plural	
syra <i>make sour</i>	syrar	syrade	-----	syrat	syrad	syrat	syrade	
syra IIa <i>intr. become sour</i>	syr	syrde	-----	syrt				
säga, irr. <i>say</i>	säger [sæj:ər]	sade	-----	sagt	sagd	sagt	sagda	
sälja <i>sell</i>	säljer	sälde	-----	sålt	såld	sålt	sålda	
sämjas IIa <i>dep. agree</i>	sämjes, säms	sämjdes, sämdes	-----	sämts				
sätta, irr. <i>tr. set</i>	sätter	satte	-----	satt	satt	satt	satta	
taga, ta <i>take</i>	tager, tar	tog	toge	tagit	tagen	taget	tagna	
tala I tala IIb <i>speak(talk)</i>	talar	talade	-----	talat	uttalad	uttalat	uttalade	
tala IIb <i>speak(talk)</i>	talar	talte	-----	talt	pronounced, spoken			
tiga, irr. <i>be silent</i>	tiger	teg	tege	tegat, tiget	förtegen reticent	förteget	förtegna	
tjusa I [çw'sa']	tjusar [çw'sar']	tjusade [çw'sadə']	-----	tjusat [çw'sat']				
tjusa IIb <i>charm</i>	tjusar	tjuste [çw'stə']	-----	tjust [çw'st]	förtjust delighted, charmed	förtjust	förtjusta	
tjuta <i>howl</i>	tjuter	tjöt	tjöte	tjutit				
tjäna I [çe'na']	tjänar [çs'nar']	tjänade [çs'nadə']	-----	tjänat [çs'nat']				
tjäna IIb <i>serve</i>	tjänar	tjänte	-----	tjänt	förtjänt	förtjänt	förtjänta	
trivas IIa <i>thrive, trivs make out well</i>	trives	trivdes	-----	trivits				
tryta <i>be wanting, be getting low</i>	tryter	tröt	tröte	trutit	oförtruten indefatigable	oförtrutet	oförtrutna	
					andtruten	andtrutet	andtrutna	
					short of breath			
träda IIa <i>tread</i>	träder, trär	trädde	-----	trätt				
tvinga tvinga I <i>compel, force</i>	tvingar	sing. tvang pl. tvungo	tvunge	tvungit	tvungen compelled	tvunget	tvungna	
†två ⁸⁾ , irr. <i>wash</i>	tvår	tvädd	-----	tvätt	tvädd	tvätt	tvätta	
tåla IIa tåla IIa <i>endure, suffer</i>	tål	tälde	-----	tält	tvagen	tvaget	tvagna	
tåla IIa tåla IIa <i>endure, suffer</i>	tål	tälte	-----	tält	tåld	tålt	tålda	
tälja <i>tell, recount</i>	täljer	talde	-----	talt	tald counted	talt	talda	
tälja IIa <i>cut, whittle</i>	täljer	täljde	-----	täljt	täljd	täljt	täljda	
tämja <i>tame</i>	tämjer	tamde	-----	tamt	tamd	tami	tamda	
no infin. <i>to be likely</i>	sing. tör, irr. pl. töra	torde	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	

Infin.	Pres.ind.	Past ind.	Past subj.	Supine	Past participle		
					Singular	Plural	
					Common	Neuter	All genders
töras, dep., sing. töras irr. pl. töras <i>dare</i>		tordes	-----	torts			
vara, irr. be	sing. är pl. äro	var pl. voro	vore	varit			
varda, irr. become, be	varder	sing. vart pl. vordo		-----	vorden	vordet	vordna
veta, irr. know	vet	visste	-----	vetat	medveten <i>conscious</i>	medvetet	medvetna
vetta, irr. face	vetter	vette	-----	vettat			
vidlåda, irr. see	läda vid						
vika <i>give way</i>	viker	vek	veke	vikit	viken	viket <i>avviken, disappeared</i>	vikna
vilja, irr. will	vill	ville	-----	velat			
vina <i>whistle, whiz (of the wind, etc.)</i>	viner	ven	vene	vinit			
vinna <i>win</i>	vinner	sing. vann pl. vunno	vunne	vunnit	vunnen	vunnet	vunna
visa I	visar	visade	-----	visat	utvisad <i>excluded, expelled, turned out, etc.</i>	utvisat	utvisade
visa IIb	visar <i>show, point out</i>	viste	-----	vist	landsförvist <i>exiled</i>		
vrida <i>twist</i>	vrider	vred	vrede	vridit	vriden	vridet	vridna
vräka IIb vräka	vräker <i>throw, evict, eject</i>	vräkte sing. vrok (Poet.) pl. vroko	----- vroke (Poet.)	vräkt -----	vräkt	vräkt	vräkta
välja <i>choose</i>	väljer	valde	-----	valt	vald	valt	valda
välta I, tr. <i>roll (a rod)</i>	vältar	vältade	-----	vältat	vältad	vältat	vältade
välta IIb <i>tr. and intr.</i>	vältar	välte	-----	vält			
<i>turn over, upset, keel over, tumble, fall</i>							
vämjas, dep. intr. <i>(to feel) nauseated</i>	vämjes	vämjdes vämdes	-----	vämjts vämts			
vänja <i>accustom</i>	vänjer <i>han vänjer sig</i>	vande	-----	vant	vand <i>accustomed, used to</i>	vant	vanda
växa <i>grow, increase, wax</i>	växer	sing. växte pl. vuxo	vuxe	vuxit	vuxen	vuxet	vuxna
yra I intr. <i>rave, be delirious</i>	yrar	yrade	-----	yrat			
yra II (det) yr <i>whirl, fly (as snow, dust)</i>	yr	yrde	-----	yrt			
ysta I <i>make cheese</i>	ystar	ystade	-----	ystat	ystad	ystat	ystade
äta, irr. <i>eat</i>	äter	ät	åte	ätit	äten	ätet	ätna
öka I öka IIb <i>increase</i>	ökar öker (Poet.)	ökade ökte	-----	ökat ökt	ökad ökt <i>förökt, increased</i>	ökat ökt	ökade öcta

Notes on alphabetical list of verbs:

1) As the form of the imperat. singular has not been given in this list, note the following statement: In the 1st and 3rd conjugations the imperative (and pers. sing.) has the same form as the infinitive. Ex. *tala!* *tro!* In the 2nd and 4th conjugations the form is that of the stem of the verb, i.e., the infinitive ending cut off. Ex. *böj* (from *böja*),

köp (from *köpa*), *bed* (from *bedja*), *brinn* (from *brinna*).

2) Auxiliary verbs with past participle: *vara* to be, *bli(va)* to be(come). Ex. *Han (hon) är bedd.* He (she) is asked. *Barnet är bätt.* The child is asked. *Pappa, mamma och barnen äro bedda.* Papa, mama and the children are asked.

3) The past indicative (sing. and pl.) of the 4th conjugation is given whenever the form of the radical vowel of the plural differs from that of the singular. Ex. *band* - *bundo*. Otherwise only the singular appears: *föll*. The past sing. of the subjunctive is given.

4) Dashes (----) mean, in the case of weak verb forms 'same as indicative'.

5) *Gå* has archaic imperative sing. *gack!* beside regular form *ga!*

6) In the sense of "utter". Ex. *ljuda en bokstav* [ju'da' en: bɔ'ksta've] to sound (enunciate) a letter.

7) *Stå* has archaic imperat. *statt* in the expression: *Statt upp!* Stand up!

8) *Tvätta* replaces the verb *två* in the ordinary use of the language.

SWEDISH—ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Explanations

Abbreviations used in this book will be found on page 27. Certain signs and additional abbreviations occurring in the vocabularies up to Lesson XVII have been explained at the head of the vocabulary of Lesson VIII, page 70.

The position of syllabic stress is generally indicated by the sign ('') whenever it rests on some syllable other than the first, ex. *anarki'*, *förfal'la*. Words with movable accent, ex. *fram'dt* : *framá't*, have not been marked. The indication of syllabic stress is, as a rule, confined to words of the following type: *kultu'r*, *förfat'tare*, *panora'ma*, *muse'u'm*. In all other cases the student is referred to Part I: Phonology.

A

- accen't, -en; -er, accent
ack, alas!
aderton, eighteen
af see av
Afrika, Africa
afton, -en; aftnar, evening
om~, in the ~
aldrig, never
all, -t; -a, all, whole
alldenstund, inasmuch as
allm n, -t; -na public
allm nhet, -en, (the) public, populace
i ~, in general, generally
alls, at all
inte~, not at all
allt, all, everything, altogether
~~ eftersom, as; according as
~~ (tydligare), more and more
(distinct)
alltsedan, ever since
alltid, always,
f r~, forever
allting, everything
allvar, -et, seriousness
p  ~, in earnest
alm, -en; -ar, elm
alp, -en; -er, alp
Ame'rika, America
amerika'n, -en; -er, American
amerika'nar|e, -en; -, American
amerikan'sk, -t; -a, American
Anakre'on, Anacreon
andas I, dep., breathe
and|e, -en; -ar, spirit
andlig, -t; -a, spiritual, intellectual
andra see annan
anfall, -et; -, attack
ang , -gick, -gingo; -g tt, concern
ankare, -t; -, anchor
lyfta ~, weigh ~

- ankärplats, -en; -er, anchorage
 ankomst, -en; -er, arrival
 anlade see anlägga
 anlagd, -t; -da, disposed, inclined, designed
 anledning, -en; -ar, cause, reason
 anlägga, -lade; -lagt, disposed, inclined, designed
 anmärkningsvärd, -t; -da, noteworthy
 annan, annat; andra, other, second
 anropa I, call upon, implore
 ~ ngn om ngt, implore s.one for s.thing
 ans, -en, care
 anse, ansäg, ansett, consider
 ~ för, take for
 anspråk, -et; -, claim
 göra ~ på, lay claim to
 anspråkslös, -t; -a, unpretentious
 anstalt, -en; -er, institution
 antal, number
 antipo'd, -en; -er, Antipod.
 pl. Antipodes
 använda IIa, use
 arbete, -t; -n, work
 arbetsfolk, -et; -, working people
 area'l, -en; -er, area
 arm, -en; -ar, arm
 art, -en; -er, kind, sort, species (of)
 arv, -et; -, inheritance, heritage
 ett ~ efter, an inheritance from
 Asien, Asia
 att, to, that, so that, the fact that
 för ~, in order to, because
 så ~, so that
 av, of, by, from
 avbrutlen, -et; -na, broken off
 avdelning, -en; -ar, division
 avgångsexamen, -; -ina, final examination
 avgöra IIa, -gjorde, -gjort, settle

avhandling, -en; -ar, essay
 avhämta I, come for, fetch
 avresa IIb, depart
 avskuros see avskära
 avskära, -skar, -skuro; -skurit, cut off, sever
 avsluta|d, -t; -de, finished
 avstanna I, cease
 avstånd, -et; -, distance
 på en mils~, at a ~ of a mile
 avsäga IIa,
 -sade, -sagt sig, abdicate
 axel, -n; axlar, shoulder

B

bad see bedja
 badort, -en; -er, bathing resort
 ban|a, -an; -or, track
 band see binda
 band, -et; -, band, rope, garland
 bar see bärta
 bara, only, just
 barn, -et; -, child
 barnlös, -t; -a, childless
 bataljo'n, -en; -er, battalion
 batteri', -et; -er, battery
 be see bedja
 bebygg|d, -t; -da, settled
 bedja (be) beder (ber); bad, bådo;
 bett, ask
 bedri'va, -drev, -drivit, pursue,
 carry on
 bedri'vende, -t, pursuance
 befal'lning, -en; -ar, order, command
 befann see befin'na
 befin'na, -fann, -funno; -funnit sig
 find oneself, be
 befol'kning, -en; -ar, population
 befrei'a I, free, release
 ~sig, release oneself, get free
 befruk'tande, life-giving, fructifying
 befä'l, -et; -, command
 föra ~, be in ~
 befäl'havar|e, -en; -, commander
 begyn'na IIb, begin
 begå'vald, -t; -de, gifted, talented
 begå'vning, -en; -ar, endowment, talent
 begä'ra IIa, ask, request, demand
 begä'r|d, -t; -da, requested
 beha'glig, -t; -a, pleasing, pleasant

beho'v, -et; -, desire, urge
 behär'skar|e, -en; -, master
 behö'va IIa, need
 bekant'. -; -a, familiar; as subst.,
 acquaintance
 belä'gring, -en; -ar, siege
 ben, -et; -, leg, bone
 ber see bedja
 bere|d'd, -tt; -dda, prepared
 bere'st, -; -a, traveled
 bero' III, depend on
 ~på, be due to, depend on
 beräk'ning, -en; -ar, calculation
 berät'ta I, tell
 berät'telse, -n; -r, story
 berät'tiga I, entitle, give a right to
 beröm'|d, -t; -da, famous
 beskjut|a, -sköt, -skjutit, shoot at
 beskri'va, -skrev, -skrivit, describe
 beskå'da I, look at
 beslu'ta, -slöt, -slutit, decide
 beslöt see beslu'ta
 besti'ga, -steg, -stigit, ascend
 bestyr'ka IIb, confirm
 bestå', -stod, -stätt, consist (of)
 bestän'd, -et; -, existence, preservation
 bestäm'|d, -t; -da, regular, definite
 bestäm'ma IIa, decide
 ~om, ~upon
 bestäm't, decidedly
 besö'ka IIb, visit
 besö'kande, visiting, visitor
 besö'kar|e, -en; -, visitor
 betrak'ta I, look at, regard
 bety'da IIa, mean, signify
 bety'delse, -n; -r, significance
 betyd'lig, -t; -a, considerable
 beun'drar|e, -en; -, admirer
 beva'ra I, preserve
 bevi'sa I, prove, demonstrate
 bibliote'k, -et; (-er), library
 bil, -en; -ar, automobile, car
 bild, -en; -er, picture
 biljet't, -en; -er, ticket
 binda, band, bundo; bundit, bind, tie
 biogra'f, -en; -er, motion picture
 theatre
 på ~, at the ~
 biografi', -leln; -er, biography
 bildning, -en; -ar, formation, education

björk, -en; -ar, *birch*
 björn, -en; -ar, *bear*
 bland, *among*
 bleka IIb, *bleach*
 blev see bliva
 bli see bliva
 blick, -en; -ar, *glance*
 en ~ på, a ~ at
 i ~, "in their eyes"
 blicka I, *gaze, look*
 ~ på, ~ at
 blind, -t; -da, *blind*
 blir see bliva
 bli(va), blev, blivit, *become, remain*
 blivande, *future, remaining*
 blixtturné, -(e)n; -er, *rapid tour*
 blod, -et, *blood*
 blomm|a, -an; -or, *flower*
 blomsterkonungen, *The "Flower King"*
 (*applied to Karl von Linné*)
 blomstring, -en; -ar, *prosperity*
 blott, *only*
 blyfärga|d, -t; -de, *lead-colored*
 blygas, IIa, dep., *feel ashamed*
 blå, -tt; -a, *blue*
 blågul, -t; -a, *blue and yellow*
 blåsa IIb, *blow*
 blåsippa, -an; -or, *liverwort*
 blått see blå
 blödande, *bleeding*
 bo III, *live*
 bofast, -; -a, *settled*
 bog, -en; -ar, *bow*
 bok, -en; böcker *book*
 bok, -en; -ar, *beech*
 boningshus, -et; -, *dwelling house*
 bord, -et; -, *table, board*
 klockan ringde vänerna ifrån ~
 the bell sounded for the friends
 to go ashore
 borde see böra
 borg, -en; -ar, *fortified castle*
 borgerlig, -t; -a, *civilian*
 bort, *away, off*
 bortom, *beyond*
 bottenskola, -an; -or, *common*
 (*primary*) *school*
 bra (indecl.) (bättre, bäst), *fine, good, well*
 braka I, *crash (sound)*
 ~ |ös't, *break loose*

brant, -; -a, *steep*
 bredd, -en; -er, *breadth (bounds)*
 bredvid, *close by, alongside*
 brig, -en; -ar, *brig*
 brink, -en; -ar, *hillside*
 brista, brast, brasto; brustit, *burst*
 bro, -n; -ar, *bridge*
 broder, -n; bröder, *brother (friends)*
 brons, -en; -er, *bronze*
 bror see broder
 brukta I, *use, be accustomed to*
 brunn, -en; -ar, *well*
 bry III sig, *concern oneself*
 ~ sig om', ~about
 bryta, bröt, brutit, *break*
 ~ sig sin egen väg, *make one's own way*
 bråk, -et; -, *noise, ado*
 med ~, *noisily*
 bräcka IIb, *crack*
 bröd, -et; -, *bread*
 bröst, -et; -, *chest, breast*
 bröt see bryta
 bud, -et; -, *bidding, command*
 bundo see binda
 busslinje, -n; -r, *bus line*
 bygga IIa, *build, settle*
 bygge, -t; -n, *construction, building*
 byggnad, -en; -er, *building*
 båda, *both*
 vi ~, ~ of us
 både, *both*
 ~ ... och, ~ ... and
 båt, -en; -ar, *boat*
 bäddald, -t; -de, *made (of a bed)*
 bärge, *both*
 vi ~. ~ of us
 bänk, -en; -ar, *bench, flower-bed*
 bärä, bar, buro; burit, *carry, bear*
 ~ me'd sig, *carry with oneself*
 bärer ~bär see bärä
 bäst see bra, *god*
 bättre see bra, *god*
 böcker see bok
 böjl|a, -an; -or, *pillow*
 böñ, -en; -er, *prayer*
 bönhöra IIa, *grant a supplication*
 böra IIa, borde, bort, ought, *should*
 börja I, *begin*
 början (indecl.), *beginning*
 böss|a, -an; -or, *gun*

C

centr|um, -et; -a (-er), center
chef, -en; -er, chief

D

dag, -en; -ar (or dar), day
följande ~, the following day
i ~, today
i denna ~, today
nästa ~, the following day
om fjorton ~, in a fortnight
~därpå', the next day
~till ära, in honor of the occasion

dal, -en; -ar, valley

Danmark, Denmark

dansa I, dance

dansk, -t; -a, Danish

dar see dag

darra I, tremble

de(dem), they these; pl. of article

defile'ring, -en; -ar, parade

del, -en; -ar, part, section
till stor~, to a great extent

Delaware-floden, Delaware River

dels, partly
~~... ~, partly ... partly

detalje'ra d, -t; -de, detailed

delvis, partly

dem see de

den, det; de, the, this, that; he,
she, it
~ hä'r, this, this one
~dā'r, that, that one

denna (-e), detta; dessa, this

densamma (-e); detsamma, desamma,
the same

deras, their, theirs

dess see den

dessa see denna (-e)

dessutom, besides, in addition to

det see den

detta see denna

dig see du

dill, -en, dill

din, ditt, dina, thy

diskute'ra I, discuss

dit, there, to that place

djup, -t; -a, deep

djup, -et; - , deep, depth

djurliv, -et, animal life, fauna

djärvas IIa, dep., dare

dock, however, nevertheless

doft, -en; -er, fragrance

dog see dö

domstol, -en; -ar, court

dotter, -n; döttrar, daughter

drack see dricka

draga, drog, dragit, draw, pull
~~ sig ur, withdraw from
~~ til'l sig, attract
~~ en växel på ngn, draw a draft on
someone

drama'tisk, -t; -a, dramatic
"legitimate"

dricka, drack, drucko; druckit, drink

driva, drev, drivit, drive, drift
~~ ut, drive out, drift out

drog see draga

drottning, -en; -ar, queen

dryck, -en; -er, drink

dröm, -men; -ar, dream

drömgossle, -en; -ar, dream-boy

du (dig), thou, (thee)

dubba I, dubb (a knight)

dubbel, -t; dubbla, double, twofold

duk, -en; -ar, cloth

duktig, -t; -a, clever, able

dunkelgrön, -t; -a, dark green

dvärg, -en; -ar, dwarf

d.y. (den yngrel) see ung, the younger

dyr, -t; -a, dear, expensive, costly

dyrbar, -t; -a, precious

dyrgrip, -en; -ar, treasure

då, then, at that time; since, because,
inasmuch as

dålig, -t; -a, bad, wicked

dåvarande, at that time

däck, -et; -, deck

där, there, where
~~ borta, yonder
~~ bortom, beyond that
~~ hemma, at home

därvav, of it, thereof

däri, in it, therein

därifrån, from there, therefrom

därin'ne, in there

därmed, with that, therewith

därom, about it

därpå, thereupon, then

därtill, besides, in addition

dö|d, -tt; -da, dead
 den ~de, the dead man, the deceased
 dö, dog, dött, die
 ~ut, become extinct
 döma IIa, judge, consider
 döpa IIb, baptize
 dövald, -t; -de, stunned

E

ecklesiasti'kminist|er -ern; -rar
 Minister of public worship and
 education
 eder see ni
 eder (er), your
 eftersom see eftersom
 eftersom, after, behind
 ~att ha varit, after having been
 eftersom, since
 efterst, last, hind(er)most
 efterträda IIa, succeed, follow
 eg|en, -et; -na, own
 egendom, -en; -ar, property
 egent'ligen, properly, specifically,
 really
 ehu'ru, although
 ej, no, not
 ek, -en; -ar, oak
 elmaskin, -en; -er, machine
 elemen't, -et; -(er), element
 elfte, eleventh
 eller, or
 elvatum, eleven-inch
 emel'lan, between
 emel'lanåt, occasionally
 emellerti'd, however
 emot, toward, against
 emottaga see mottaga
 emottog see mottaga
 en, ett, one, a, an
 den ena (-e)...den andra (-e), the
 one...the other
 enastående, unique
 enbart, merely
 enda, only
 endast, only
 ener'gisk, -t; -a, energetic
 engelsk|a, -an, English
 på ~, in ~
 engelsktalande, English-speaking

engelsman, -nen; -män, Englishman
 enkel, -t; enkla, simple
 helt ~t, simply
 enligt, according to
 ensam, -t; -ma, alone
 envig, -et; -, single combat
 enög|d, -t; -da, one-eyed
 epite't, -et; -er, epithet
 er see ni
 erfara, -for, -farit, experience, feel
 erövra I, conquer
 et = ett
 ett (neut.) see en
 Euro'pa, Europe
 europe'isk, -t; -a, European
 eva'r, wherever
 evä'r dilig, -t; -a, eternal
 expedie'ra I, expedite
 expeditio'n, -en; -er, expedition
 exploate'ra I, exploit
 extratåg, -et; -, special train
 med ~, by ~

F

fabri'k, -en; -er, factory
 fackelbärar|e, -en; -, torch bearer
 fader (far), -n; fäder, father
 faderlös. -t; -a, fatherless
 fager, -t; fagra, fair
 fakt|um, -; -a, fact
 fakulte't, -en; -er, faculty
 falla, föll, fallit, fall, be killed
 famil'j, -en; -er, family
 fann, -en, arms, bosom
 fan|a, -an; -or, flag, colors
 fanns see finnas
 far see fader
 fara, for, farit, go, travel (fare)
 — u't, set out, go on a journey
 farbro(de)r, -n; -bröder, uncle
 (paternal)
 farmo(de)r, -n; -mödrar, grandmother
 (paternal)
 fart, -en; (-er), speed
 fartyg, -et; -, ship, vessel
 fartygschef, -en; -er, ship's commander
 fastbund|en, -et; -na, fastened,
 (bound fast)

- fastland, -et; -, continent, mainland
 fastställa IIa, determine
 fastän, although
 fatta I, grasp, seize
 fattas I, dep., be lacking
 ngt ~ för ngn, s.th. is ~ to s.o.
 fattig, -t; -a, poor
 fauna, fauna
 favori't, -en; -er, favorite
 februa'ri, February
 fem, five
 femton, fifteen
 femtonde, fifteenth
 fest, -en; -er, festival
 festlig, -t; -a, festive
 fick see få
 fiende, -n; -r, enemy
 filosofi', -(e)n, philosophy
 finger, fingern or fingret; fingrar
 finger
 fingo see få
 finländar|e, -en; -, Finlander
 finna, fann, funno, funnit, find
 finnas (dep.) fanns, funnos; funnits,
 exist, be found
 fira|d, -t; -de, celebrated
 fjorton, fourteen
 om ~ dagar, in a fortnight
 fjäll, -et; -, mountain
 fjärran (indecl.), far
 flagg|a, -an; -or, flag
 flick|a, -an; -or, girl
 flock, -en; -ar, group
 flod, -en; -er, river
 flodvåg, -en; -or, tidal wave
 flor|a, -an; -or, flora
 flott|a, -an; -or, navy, fleet
 fly|dd, -tt; -dda, gone by, past
 i ~dda tider, in times past,
 in days gone by
 flyga, flög, flugit, fly
 flyta, flöt, flutit, float, run
 flärd, -en, vanity, pomp
 flögo see flyga
 flöt see flyta
 folk, -et; -, people, nation
 folkbildningsanstalt, -en; -er,
 institution for public education
 folkmängd, -en; -er, population
 folkräkning, -en; -ar, census
 folkskol|a, -an; -or, public school
 fontä'n, -en; -er, fountain
 for, see fara
 fordromtima, in olden times
 fonn, -t; -a, former
 foro see fara
 forskningsarbete, -t; -n, research
 fortifikatio'n, -en; -er,
 fortification
 fortleva IIa, -levde, -levat, survive
 fortsatte see fortsätta
 fortsätta, -satte, -satt, continue
 fosforisk, -t; -a, phosphorescent
 fosterjord, -en, native soil
 fosterland, -et; -, native land
 fot, -en; fötter, foot
 fotvandring, -en; -ar, walk, stroll
 fram, forward, forth
 frambringa I, produce
 framfart, -en, progress, advance
 framför, before, in front of; in
 preference to
 framskjut|en, -et; -na, prominent
 framstå, -stod, -stätt, stand forth
 framstående, prominent
 framställa IIa, produce, put forth
 framställning, -en; -ar, presentation
 framtidsland, -et; -länder, land of
 the future
 Frankrike, France
 fransk, -t; -a, French
 frappe'ra I, -ade; -at, strike, surprise
 fregat|t, -en; -er, frigate
 frejda|d, -t; -de, famous
 frid, -en, peace
 frihet, -en; -er, freedom
 frisk, -t; -a, fresh, brisk
 frivillig, -t; -a, free
 fru, -n- -ar, lady (Mrs.)
 frukta I, fear
 fruktan (indecl.), fear
 fruktansvä|r|d, -t; -da, dreadful,
 frightful, awful
 fruktbarande, fruitful
 fråga I, ask
 från, from
 fränfälle, -t; -n, demise
 främling, -en; -ar, stranger, foreigner
 främst, -; -a, foremost, first
 fräsa IIb, hiss, sizzle
 fräsande, -t, sizzling
 full, -t; -a, full, filled
 ~av, full of, filled with

- fullborda I, *complete*
 fullkomlig, -t; -a, *perfect*
 fullständig, -t; -a, *complete*
 funge'ra I, *function*
 funktionä'r, -en; -er, *functionary, official*
 funnit see finna
 funno see finna
 furstenamn, -et; -, *princely name*
 fyll|d, -t; -da, *filled*
 fyra, *four*
 fyrkant, -en; -er, *square*
 fyrtio, *forty*
 fysisk, -t; -a, *physical*
 få, *few*
 några~, *a few*
 få, *fick, fingo; fått, get, be allowed to*
 ~ lust att, *get a desire to*
 ~ för sig, *imagine, take it into one's head*
 ~ lov att, *may, must, get permission to*
 fällbänk, -en; -ar, *folding bed*
 fånga I, *catch*
 fått see få
 fälla II, *fell, let fall*
 ~ ett yttrande (ett omdöme), *make a statement, express an opinion*
 fält, -et; -, *field*
 fältjägarekår, -en; -er, *rifle corps*
 fänrik, -en; -ar, *ensign*
 färd, -en; -er, *course, journey*
 färdas I dep., *travel*
 färdig, -t; -a, *ready, complete, finished*
 färg, -en; -er, *color*
 färgskiftning, -en; -ar, *tint, hue*
 fästa|d, -t; -de, *fixed, attached*
 fäste, -t, *firmament*
 fäste, -t; -n, *fort*
 fästning, -en; -ar, *fortress*
 föda IIa, *bear, give birth to*
 ~ upp, *bring up, rear*
 födas IIa, *pass., be born*
 föga (indecl.), *little*
 följa IIa, *follow*
 följaktligen, *consequently*
 föll, *see falla*
 för, *for*
 föra IIa, *lead, bring*
 ~ krig, *wage war*
 förbi', *over, past*
 förbin'delse, -n; -r, *connection, relation*
- förbju'da, -bjöd, -bjudit, *forbid*
 förbli'(va), -blev, -blivit, *remain*
 fördju'pa I, *deepen, make deeper*
 ~ sig i, *enter deeply into, become absorbed in*
 före, *before*
 förebilda|d, -t; -de, *patterned, modelled*
 före'na I, *unite*
 förefalla, -föll, -fallit, *appear*
 föreföll, *see förefalla*
 förekomma, -kom- -kommit, *occur*
 före'nald, -t; -de, *united*
 ~ med, ~by
 föreställa IIa, *represent, present*
 föresätta, -satte; -satt sig
 ~ make up one's mind to
 företa(ga) -tug, -tagit sig, *undertake*
 företar *see företaga*
 förete III, *exhibit, present*
 förfat'ta I, *write (exercise authorship)*
 förflyt'ta I, *move*
 ~ sig, *move, shift about*
 förfri'ska I, *refresh*
 förfä'ras I dep., *be terrified*
 förgå's, -gicks, -gingos, -gåtts dep., *perish*
 förgä'ves, *in vain*
 förhin'dra I, *hinder, obstruct, prevent*
 förhål'lande, -t; -n, *relation, condition*
 i ~ till, in ~ to
 förhä'rliga I, *glorify*
 förkor'tning, -en; -ar, *abbreviation*
 förla'g, -et; -, *publishing company*
 förli'sa IIb, *founder*
 förli'ta I sig, *rely*
 förli'tan (indecl.), *confidence*
 förlö'ra I, *lose*
 förlus't, -en; -er, *loss*
 förlå'ta, -lätt, -lätit, *forgive*
 förmel'dla I, *arrange, intervene*
 förnä'mligast, *principally, chiefly*
 förr, *before*
 som ~, as ~
 förrn *see förrän*
 förrän (förrn), *before, until*
 förrät'ta I, *perform, officiate at*
 ~ uppropet, *call the roll*
 försam'ling, -en; -ar, *congregation*
 förse'gla I, *seal*

först, -; -a, first
 först, for the first time
 försto'd see förstå'
 förstå', -stod, -stätt, understand
 förstö'ra IIa, destroy
 försum'ma I, neglect
 försvin'na, -svann, -svunno;-svunnit,
 vanish, disappear
 försunnit see försvin'na
 försvunno see försvin'na
 försy'en, Providence
 försö'k, -et; -, attempt
 vid ett sista ~, in a final ~
 försök'a IIb, try, attempt
 ~sig på något, ~one's luck at
 something
 förtä'la I, malign
 förtju'sande, charming, lovely
 förtjä'na I, earn, deserve
 förtro'g|en, -et; -na, familiar,
 intimate
 ~med, ~with
 förtryc'ka IIb, suppress
 förtvi'vla|d, -t; -de, desperate
 förtäl'ja IIa, -talde, -talt, relate
 föru't, previously, before
 för|u'tan, without
 förva'ra I, keep, preserve
 förverk'ligande, -t, realization
 förväx'la I, confuse
 förä'dla I, ennable
 fötter see fot

G

gammal, -t; gamla (äldre, äldst), old
 ganska, quite
 ~få, very few
 gat|a, -n; -or, street
 gatunamn, -et; -, street name
 gav see giva
 ge see giva
 gemen'sam, -t; -ma, mutual
 genast, immediately
 genera'l, -en; -er, general
 genera'lguvernör, -en; -er, governor
 general
 genius, -en; -er, genius, spirit
 genom (ige'nom), through
 genomfara, -for, -farit, pass through

genomflut|en -et; -na, traversed (of
 a water course)
 genomleva IIa, live through
 geografi', -(e)n; -er, geography
 ger see giva
 germanis'm, -en; -er, Germanism
 ges see giva
 gestal't, -en; -er, personality, form
 gick see gå
 giva (ge), gav, gåvo; givit, give
 ~ sig i väg, get out; start out,
 depart
 givas (gives, givs, ges), gavs; givits,
 impers. dep., there is, there are
 gjorde see göra
 gjort see göra
 gjuta, göt, gjutit, pour
 gla|d, -tt, -da, happy, gay
 glas, -et; -, glass
 ett ~ mjölk, a ~ of milk
 glädje, -n, joy
 glädjetår, -en; -ar, tear of joy
 glömma IIa, forget
 ~ bort, forget
 glömska, -n, oblivion, forgetfulness
 gnugga IIa, rub
 go|d, -tt, -da, good
 i ~ tid, in time
 var så ~, please
 så ~tt som, almost
 godmodig, -t; -a, good-natured
 Golfrömmen, Gulf stream
 goss|e, -en; -ar, boy
 gran, -en; -ar, fir
 grann, -t; -a, splendid, dazzling
 granne, -en; -ar, neighbor
 grannskap, -et; -, neighborhood
 grev|e, -en; -ar, count
 grind, -en; -ar, gate
 grov, -t; -a, thick, rough
 grubbla, I, ponder, muse
 gründ, -en; -er, ground, basis
 på ~ av, on account of
 grundlig, -t; -a, thorough
 grundläggning,-en; -ar, founding
 gruvlig, -t; -a, grievous
 grundlägga, -lade, -lagt, found
 grå, -tt; -(a), gray
 gränd, -en; -er, alley
 gräns, -en; -er, extent, limit
 gränsa I, border
 ~ till, border on, be bounded by
 gräs, -et; -, grass

grässtrå, -(e)t; -n, blade of grass
 grävling, -en; -ar, badger
 grön, -t; -a, green
 gröngräs, -et, green grass
 gubble, -en; -ar, old man
 Gud (gud, -en; -ar), God (god)
 gul, -t; -a, yellow
 guld, -et, gold
 guldviv|a, -an; -or, primrose
 guldstol, -en; -ar, "golden chair"
 gunstling, -en; -ar, favorite
 gurk|a, -an; -or, cucumber
 gyllene (indecl.), golden
 gymnasi|um, -et; -er, college,
 gymnasium
 gå, gick, gingo; gått, go, walk
 ~bra, come out well
 ~i, get into, go into
 ~ige'nom, endure, come (go) through
 ~i land, land, go ashore
 ~sönder, break up, go to pieces
 ~till ro, go to rest, die
 ~utför, decline
 hur ~ det med honom? how is he
 making out, how is he getting along?
 ~igen', reappear after death, walk
 (as a ghost)
 gång, -en, course, progress
 i full~, in full swing
 gång, -en; ar, walk, path
 gång, -en; -er, time
 en ~, once
 en annan ~, another time
 nästa~, next time
 för denna~, this time
 på en~, all at once
 två~, twice
 det var en~, there was once upon
 a time
 på samma~, at the same time
 än(nu) en~, once again, once more
 går
 i ~, yesterday
 går see gå
 gården, -en; -ar, house, farm
 gåv|a, -an; -or, gift
 gävo see giva
 gälla IIa, be valid, hold true, obtain
 det gäller om, it is true of, it ap-
 plies to
 gömma IIa, hide
 göra IIa, gjorde, gjort, do, make
 ~ i ordning, get ready
 ~ rent hus, clean house
 ~ slag i saken, settle the matter
 ~ anspråk på, lay claim to
 ~ lycka, have success, be successful

göt, see gjuta
 Göta kanal, Gotha Canal
 H
 ha see hava
 hade see hava
 haft see hava
 halv, -t; -a, half
 halvcirk|el, -eln; -lar, semi-circle
 halvtimm|e, -en; -ar, half-hour
 halvö, -n; -ar, peninsula
 hamn, -en; -ar, harbor
 ~vid, harbor of
 han (gen. hans, acc. honom), he
 hand, -en; händer, hand
 handelshögskola, -an; -or, Commercial
 college
 handla I, deal, trade
 ~om, deal with
 handskrift, -en; -er, manuscript
 hans see han
 har see hava
 hasslel, -eln; -lar, hazel
 hasta I, hasten
 hastighetslöpar|e, -en; -, sprinter
 hastig, -t; -a, quick, swift
 hat, -et, hate
 halva, har; hade, haft, have
 ~på sig, wear
 ~lust att, want to, desire to
 hedning, -en; -ar, heathen
 hav, -et; -, sea, ocean
 hednisk, -t; -a, heathen, pagan
 hejda I, stop
 hel, -t; -a, whole, entire, intact
 helgedom, -en; -ar, sanctuary
 helhet, -en, entirety, wholeness
 i dess ~, in its entirety
 helig, -t; -a, holy
 Heliga Trefal'dighetskyrkan, The
 Church of the Holy Trinity
 helst, rather
 vilken (vem) som~, anyone (at all)
 helt, wholly, entirely, quite
 ~enkelt, simply
 ~och hållit, completely
 ~nära bredvi'd, quite close to
 hembygd, -en; -er, native district
 hemland, -et, native land
 hemlig, -t; -a, secret
 hem, -met; -, home

hemma, at home
 hemsk, -t; -a, ghastly
 henne see hon
 hennes see hon
 Herkules, Hercules
 herr, Mr.
 herrle, -n; -ar, gentleman
 herresäte, -t; -n, manor-house
 het, -t; -a, hot
 heta IIb, be called
 himmel, -n; himlar, sky, heaven
 himmelsrand, -en, horizon
 hinna, hann, hunno; hunnit, reach,
 attain, arrive, have time to
 hissa I, hoist
 histo'ri:a, -en; -er, history, story
 histo'riker, -n; -, historian
 histo'risk, -t; -a, historical
 hjälpa IIb, help
 — till, help
 hjälte|e, -en; -ar, hero
 hjältegrav, -en; -ar, hero's grave
 hjältemodig, -t; -a, heroic
 hjärta, -t; -n, heart
 hjärtslag, -et; -, heart-beat
 holländar|e, -en; -, Hollander,
 Dutchman
 holländsk, -t; -a, Hollandish (Dutch)
 holm'e, -en; -ar, island
 hon (gen. hennes, acc. henne), she
 honom see han
 hopp, -et, hope
 hoppa I, hop, jump
 hoppas I dep., hope
 horison't, -en; -er, horizon
 hos, by, with, at, at the home of
 cf. Fr. chez
 hota I, threaten
 hov, -et; -, court
 huka I, crouch, squat
 — sig (ned), crouch, squat
 hundra, hundred
 hundratal, -et; -, century
 17— the 18th century
 hur, how
 hurrarop, -et; -, cheer, hurrah
 huru, how
 hurudan, -t;-a, what kind of
 hus, -et; -, house
 huvud, -et; -, head
 huvudpart, -en; -er, the major part
 huvudsak, -en; -er, principal thing,
 main point
 i ~, in the main
 huvudsakligen, principally, mainly
 huvudstad, -en; -städer, capital
 huvudvärk, -en, headache
 hwarken see varken
 hygglig, -t; -a, nice, agreeable
 hypote's, -en; -er, hypothesis
 hysa IIb, house, accommodate, entertain
 (an opinion or feeling)
 hytt, -en; -er, cabin
 håll, -et; -, direction, quarter (of
 the compass)
 hålla, höll, hållit, hold
 ~ på att, be about to, be on the
 point of, continue to
 hållplats, -en; -er, car-stop
 Hålländsk see holländsk
 hår, -et; -, hair
 hård, -t; -da, hard, severe
 hårdhet, -en, harshness, severity
 hädanefter, henceforth
 häftig, -t;-a, violent, fierce
 hägrande, beckoning, looming (as a
 mirage)
 hälft, -en; -er, half
 hälsa I, greet, welcome
 hända IIa, happen
 händer see hand
 hänförande, enchanting
 hänga IIa, hang
 hälsa I, greet
 hänvisa I, refer
 här, here
 här, -en; -ar, army
 härefter, after this, henceforth
 härförar|e, -en; -, general
 härifrån, from here, hence
 härja I, lay waste, harry
 härgomst, -en, origin
 härlig, -t; -a, splendid, glorious
 häromda'gen, the other day
 härtåg, -et; -, military expedition
 hög, -t; -a (högre, högst), high, tall,
 höger, right
 till ~, to the ~
 högre see hög
 högst; -a see hög
 — intressant, exceedingly interest-
 ing
 högt, aloud, greatly, highly

höll see hålla
 höra IIa, hear
 ~ till see tillhöra
 hörn, -et; -, corner
 hörsamma I, pay heed to
 höst, -en; -ar, autumn, fall

 I
 I, you, ye
 i, in
 ~ och med, at the same time;
 simultaneously with
 iakttaga, -toga, -tagit, observe
 iblan'd, among, sometimes, now and then
 icke, not
 idé, -(e)n; -er, idea
 komma på en ~, get an idea
 idea'l, -et; [-er], ideal
 idog, -t; -a, industrious
 idrottsborg, -en; -ar, athletic "citadel"
 idrottsman, -nen; -män, athlete
 ifrå'n, from
 igen', again
 ige'nom see genom
 ihängande, persistent
 illa, badly, ill, wrong
 impone'rande, imposing
 in, in
 ~ i, into
 inbjuda, -bjöd, -bjudit, invite
 inbund|en, -et; -na, reserved
 inbyggar|e, -en; -, inhabitant
 inbördeskrig, -et; -, civil war
 indo-europe'isk, -t; -a, Indo-European
 inföding, -en; -ar, aborigine, native
 inför, before, in front of
 införa IIa, introduce
 ingen, intet (inget); inga, no; none,
 no one, nobody
 ingendera, neither (of them)
 ingenjö'r, -(e)n; -er, engineer
 ingenting, nothing
 ingång, -en; -ar, entrance
 stora ~, main entrance
 inifrån, from within
 inleda III, introduce, open
 inlopp, -et; -, entrance, harbor, mouth,
 inlet
 inläsa IIb, lock up
 innan, before, prior to

innanläsning, -en, reading aloud, from
 book
 inne, in, within
 inom, between, within
 inre, internal, inner
 insjö, -n; -ar, lake
 institutio'n, -en; -er, institution
 intaga, -toga, -tagit, occupy, hold
 inte, not
 intellektuel'l, -t; -a, intellectual
 intet, nothing
 intill, unto, onto
 intressan't, -; -a, interesting
 intres'se, -t; -n, interest
 introduce'ra I, introduce
 inträck, -et; -, impression
 intrypka IIb, force in, impress
 inträde, -t; -n, entrance
 ~ i, ~ into
 intränga IIa, penetrate
 intåga I, enter, make entry
 ~ i, ~ into
 invånar|e, -en; -, inhabitant
 Ireland, Ireland

J

ja, yes
 jag (mig), I
 jo, yes, indeed, certainly
 ~ då, yes, indeed, of course
 jord, -en; (-ar), earth, ground, in
 plur. land, property
 ju, really, you know, to be sure,
 indeed
 jub|el, -let, jubilation, applause
 juli, July
 juridi'k, -en, jurisprudence
 just, just, precisely
 ~ det, the very one, the very thing
 jämförelsevis, comparatively
 jämn, -t; -a, even, close
 järn, -et; -, iron
 järnbalk, -en; -ar, iron beam
 järnbekläd'ning, -en; -ar, sheet-iron
 covering
 järnklä|dd, -tt; -dda, iron-clad
 järnskärv|a, -an; -or, iron splinter
 järnvägsförbin'delse, -n; -r, railway
 communication

K

kabriolet't, -en; -er, cabriolet, cab
 kalka|d, -t; -de, white-washed
 kall, -t; -a, cold
 kamp, -en, struggle, strife, fight
 kamra't, -en; -er, comrade
 kan see kunna
 kana'l, -en; -er, canal
 kandida't, -en; -er, candidate (for a degree)
 kano'n, -en; -er, cannon
 kano'ndund|er, -ret, roar of cannon
 kano'ntorn, -et; -, gun-turret
 kanske, perhaps
 kappsäck, -en; -ar, bag, knapsack
 kapte'n, -en; -er, captain
 karakterise'ra I, characterize
 karaktä'r, -en; -er, character
 karl, -en; -ar, man, fellow
 ~ är~, a man's a man
 karlakläder, man's clothing
 kart|a, -an; -or, map
 kartogra'f, -en; -er, cartographer
 kas! interj., get out!
 kasket't, -en; -er, cap, head-gear
 kasta I, cast, throw
 ~ ett öga på, glance at
 katedra'l, -en; -er, cathedral
 katt, -en; -er, cat
 Kattegatt, Cattegat
 kejsar|e, en; -, emperor
 kemis't, -en; -er, chemist
 kikhål, -et; -, observation hole
 klar, -t; -a, clear, bright, ready
 klara I, clear, clear up
 ~ sig, e.g., pass an examination
 klare'ra|d, -t; -de, cleared
 klass, -en; -er, class
 klima't, -et; -(er), climate
 klinga I, ring, sound, clink
 klipp|a, -an; -or, cliff
 klistra I, paste on
 kliva, klev, klivit, stride, step, stalk
 ~ fram till, stride up to
 ~ (upp) i, climb (up) into
 klock|a, -an; -or, bell, watch, clock
 ~ kvarten över fyra, at a quarter past four o'clock
 preci's~ fyra, at four o'clock precisely
 klockar|e, -en; -, sacristan
 klost|er, -ret; -, cloister

klung|a, -an; -or, cluster
 kläda IIa, clothe, dress
 ~ sig, dress oneself, get dressed
 kläder, clothes, clothing
 knappnål, -en; -ar, pin (straight)
 knappt, hardly, scarcely, barely
 knycka IIb, jerk, nab
 ~ på nacken, "turn up one's nose"
 knäckebrödssmörgås, -en; -ar, thin-baked bread sandwich
 knäppa IIb, snap, button, clasp
 (ihop') händerna, fold (clasp) one's hands
 ko, -n; -r, cow
 koket't, -; -a, coquettish
 koloni', -en; -er, colony
 kolonis't, -en; -er, colonist
 kom see komma
 komma, kom, kommo; kommit, come
 ~ ngn att (with inf.), cause someone to
 ~ hem, come (get) home
 ~ i land, come (get) ashore
 ~ in vid, get into, join
 ~ ihå'g, remember
 ~ med, come along
 ~ på en idé, get an idea
 ~ på tronen, ascend the throne
 ~ till synes, appear
 kommit see komma
 kommunikatio'n, -en; -er, communication
 komplette'ra I, complete
 kongres's, -en; -er, congress
 konse'rthus, -et, concert hall
 konst, -en; -er, art, skill
 konstalst|er, -ret; -, work of art
 konstellatio'n, -en; -er, constellation
 kontinen't, -en; -er, continent
 kontrolle'ra I, control
 konung (kung), -en; -ar, king
 konungaborg, -en; -ar, royal castle
 konungaätt, -en; -er, dynasty
 konungslik, -t; -a, kingly
 konversatio'n, -en; -er, conversation
 korståg, -et; -, crusade
 kort, -; -a, short
 ~ därpå, shortly afterwards
 kos|a, -en; -or, course
 kosta I, cost
 kraft, -en; -er, power, strength
 krag|e, -en; -ar, collar
 krav, -et; -, claim, requirement
 krig, -et; -, war

krigsfartyg, -et; -, war-ship,
 man-of-war
 krigsman, -nen; krigsmän, soldier
 kring, around, about
 kristal'klar, -t; -a, crystal-clear
 kristendom, -en, Christianity
 kristna|d, -t; -de, christened
 krokig, -t; -a, crooked
 kron|a, -an; -or, crown
 kronprins, -en; -ar, crown prince
 krossa I, crush
 krypa, kröp, krupit, creep, crawl
 kräk|a, -an; -or, crow
 kröna IIb, crown
 kröp see krypa
 kul|a, -an; -or, bullet, shell
 kull|e, -en; -ar, hill
 kultu|r, -en; -er, culture
 kunde see kunna
 kung see konung
 kunglig, -t; -a, royal, kingly
 kungsträdgården, Royal gardens
 kunna, kann, kunde, kunnat, can, be
 able to, may
 jag skulle ~ giva mig i väg, I could
 start on my journey
 kust, -en; -er, coast
 kvar (adv.), remaining, left
 kvart, -en; -er, quarter
 en ~, a quarter
 klockan ~ over fyra, at a quarter
 past four o'clock
 kvinn|a, -an; -or, woman
 kväll, -en; -ar, evening, night
 på ~, in the evening
 till ~, for the evening
 kväva IIa, stifle, suppress
 kyrk|a, -an; -or, church
 kyss, -en; -ar, kiss
 kyssa IIb, kiss
 kål, -en, cabbage
 göra ~ på, "make hash of"
 kär, -en; -er, corps
 käck, -t; -a, dashing, bold
 käll|a, -an; -or, spring, source
 källvatt|en, -net; -, spring water
 kampa I, struggle, fight
 ~om, ~for
 ~emo't, ~with, against
 kämp|e, -en; -ar, champion
 kanna IIa, know, feel
 ~sig, feel
 ~sig val(illa) till mods, feel

cheerful (uneasy)
 ~s på, be known by
 kännedom, -en, knowledge
 känsl|a, -an; -or, feeling
 känslig, -t; -a, sensitive
 käpp, -en; -ar, stick, cane
 kär, -t; -a, dear, beloved
 har~, hold dear, love
 köksdörr, -en; -ar, kitchen door
 köl, -en; -ar, keel
 köpa, IIb, buy
 köra IIa, drive

 ladda I, load
 lade see lägga
 ladugård, -en; -ar, barn
 lag, -en; -ar, law
 lag|er, -ern; -rar, laurel
 lagkarl, -en; -ar, lawyer
 lagstiftning, -en; -ar, legislation
 land, -et; länder, land, country
 i ~, to land, to go (be) ashore
 från ~, from land, off shore
 landförvärv, -et; -, acquisition of land
 landsens (archaic def. gen.), see land
 lands|män, -mannen; -män, countryman
 landsteg, see landstiga
 landstiga, -steg, -stigit, land
 landsväg, -en; -ar, highway
 landsänd|e, -en; -ar, part of the
 country, country-side
 lapp, -en; -ar, Lapp
 Lappland, Lapland
 Lars, Lawrence
 Lasse, Lawrence
 last, -en; -er, cargo
 lata I sig, be idle, lounge
 led see lida
 leda IIa, lead, direct
 ledande, leading
 ledning, -en; -ar, management, direct-
 ion, leadership
 ledsam, -t; -ma, dull, tedious, dis-
 agreeable
 hal(va)~, have a ~ time
 få ~, be caused annoyance (or grief)
 leds|en, -et, -na, grieved, disappoint-
 ed, annoyed
 ~ pa, ~ with

leende, -t; -n, smile
 lejonpart, -en; (-er), lion's share.
 major part
 leka IIb, play
 leka'mlig, -t; -a, bodily, corporeal
 leksak, -en; -er, toy, plaything
 leva IIa, levde, levat, live
 lev väl, farewell, take good care
 of yourself
 levnadsår, -et; -, year of life (age)
 lida, led, lidit, suffer, endure;
 glide on
 som tiden ~, as time goes on
 ligga, låg, legat, lie
 ~ i, be implied in, exert oneself
 ~ till grund för, be the basis of
 lik, -t; -a, like
 lika, like, as
 likasom, just as, like
 lik|e, -en; -ar, equal
 liksom, just as, like
 lill|a, -e def. form see liten
 lind, -en; -ar, linden, lime
 linjeskepp, -et; -, ship of the line,
 man-of-war
 liten, litet; pl. små, def. lilla(-e)
 (mindre, minst), little, small
 litteratu'r, -en; -er, literature
 liv, -et; -, life
 för~, for~
 liva|d, -t; -de, moved, enlivened
 ~ till samtal, moved to conversation
 livfull, -t; -a, lively
 livlig, -t; -a, lively, animated
 ljuda, ljöd, ljudit, sound
 en visselpipa~, a whistle blows
 (sounds)
 ljum, -t; -ma, warm, mild, tepid
 ljus, -t; -a, bright, light, fair,
 cheerful
 ~ och lätt, bright and easy
 ~ dagen, broad daylight
 ljus, -et, light
 ljusblå, -tt; -a, light-blue
 ljusexplosio'n, -en; -er, explosion
 of light
 ljasna I, brighten
 ljöd see ljuda
 lo, -n; -ar (or, -(e)t; -n), lynx
 lopp, -et; -, course, run
 100-metersloppet, hundred meter dash
 under histo'riens~, in the course
 of history
 lopp|a, -an; -or, flea

lossna I, come loose, untied
 lov, -et; -, permission, praise
 luft, -en, air
 lugn, -t; -a, calm, tranquil
 lugnande, soothing
 lura I, lurk, cheat, trick
 ~ på, lie in wait for
 lust, -en, inclination, desire
 hava~, want to, have a desire to
 do s.th.
 lyck|a, -an, luck, fortune
 han gjorde ingen~, he had no
 success; was unsuccessful
 lyckas I dep., succeed
 lyce'|um, -et; -er, lyceum, high school
 lycklig, happy, fortunate, lucky
 lyda IIa, obey, respond to
 ~ under, be subject to, be under
 the jurisdiction of
 lyfta IIb, raise, lift
 ~ ankar|el, weigh anchor
 lynne, -t; -n, disposition, mood
 lysa IIb, shine
 låg see ligga
 låg, -t; -a, low
 lågland, -et; -länder, lowland
 lågo see ligga
 läng, -t; -a (längre, längst), long, far
 på ~ håll, from a distance
 längst i norr, farthest north
 långsam, -t; -ma, slow
 långt, far
 låtsa I, pretend, assume
 läge, -t; -n, situation, position
 lägga, lade, lagt, lay
 läktarle, -en; -, gallery
 lämna I, leave
 lämpa I, adapt, suit
 läng, long, for a long time
 längre see läng
 längs, along
 ~ med, along
 längst see läng
 längta I, to long, yearn
 ~ till, ~ for
 läpp, -en; -ar, lip
 lär|a, -an; -or, faith, doctrine
 lärer (=lär), said to (be), likely to (be)
 lärar|e, -en; -, teacher
 lärft, -et; -er, linen
 lära IIa, learn, teach
 ~ kanna, become acquainted with
 lärk|a, -an; -or, lark

läroverk -et; -, higher secondary school
 lärosäte, -t; -n, seat of learning
 läsebok, -en; läseböcker, reader, reading-book
 läsplana, -en; -er, curriculum
 lätt, -; -a, easy, light
 lättnad, -en; (-er), relief
 löjtnant, -en; -er, lieutenant
 lönn, -en; -ar, maple
 löpar|e, -en; -, runner
 lösa IIb, loose, untie, release
 ~~sig, withdraw, separate from
 löv, -et; -, leaf
 lövträd, -et; -, deciduous tree
 lövverk, -et, foliage

M

mag|e, -en; -ar, stomach
 magnifi'k, -t; -a, magnificent
 maj, May
 majestä't, -et; -er, majesty
 makt, -en; -er, power
 mamm|a, -an; -or, mam(m)a
 man pron., one (we, you, they, people)
 man, -nen; män, man
 manö'v|er, -ern; -rar, manoeuvre
 mark, -en; -er, field, ground
 i skog och~, in the woods and fields
 mars, March
 marschrut|a, -an; -or, route, itinerary
 marskal'k, -en; -er, marshal
 maski'n, -en; -er, machine
 mass|a, -an; -or, mass, great number
 mast, -en; -er, mast
 mat, -en, food
 mattid, -en; -er, meal-time, time for eating
 match, -en; -er, contest, match
 med, with, by means of, along
 medan, while
 medborgar|e, -en; -, citizen
 medelpunkt, -en; -er, center
 medeltida, medieval
 medeltiden, The Middle Ages
 medelålder, -n, middle age
 medici'n, -en, medicine
 medvetande, -t, consciousness
 medvind, -en; -ar, favorable wind

mellan, between
 mellerst, -; -a, middlemost, central men, but
 mena I, mean, think, be of an opinion
 mening, -en; -ar, opinion
 mer, -a, more, any more
 inte(ej)~, no more, no longer
 ~eller mindre, more or less
 meta I, fish
 metamorfo's, -en; -er, metamorphosis
 metspö, -(e)t; -n, fishing-rod
 middagstid, -en; -er, noon
 vid~, at noon
 midnattssol, -en; midnight sun
 midsommarafhton, -en, -aftnar,
 Midsummer Eve
 mig see jag
 mil, -en, mile
 mil|d, -t; -da, soft, mild
 militä'r, -t; -a, military
 miljo'n, -en; -er, million
 min, mitt; mina, my, mine
 minderårig, -t; -a, not of age
 minderåighet, -en, minority
 mindre see liten
 mer eller~, more or less
 minnas IIa dep., remember
 minne, -t; -n, memory
 minnesmärke, -t; -n, memorial
 minns see minnas
 minska I, reduce
 minst see liten
 misslyckas I dep., fail
 mista I or II, lose, miss
 mitt, -en, middle
 ~emot, directly opposite
 vid~, in the middle of
 mittpunkt, -en; -er, central point
 mjölk, -en, milk
 mjölka I, milk
 mödel|r, -n; mödrar, mother
 mod, -et, courage
 moderlös, -t; -a, motherless
 mode'rn, -t; -a, modern
 mog|en, -et; -na, ripe
 mogenhetsex'a|m|en, -; -ina, final examination
 moln, -et; -, cloud
 mona'r|k, -en; -er, monarch
 mor see moder
 morgon, -en; morgnar, morning
 på~, in the ~

morgonhälsning, -en; -ar, morning greeting
 morot, -en; -morötter, carrot
 moss|e, -en; -ar, bog, swamp
 mot see emo't
 motgång, -en; -ar, adversity
 motsats, -en; -er, antithesis, the opposite of
 motsatte see motsätta
 motstå, -stod, -stätt, resist, oppose
 motständar|e, -en; -, opponent
 motsvara I, correspond to
 motsvarighet, -en; -er, equivalent
 motsätta sig, -satte, -satt, oppose, object to
 mottaga (emot-) -tog, -tagit, receive, get
 mottagning, -en; -ar, reception
 mottog see mottaga
 mul|en, -et; -na, cloudy
 mumla I, mumble
 ~ för sig själv, ~ to oneself
 mun, -nen; -nar, mouth
 "muntan", the oral examination
 munter, -t; muntra, merry
 mur, -en; -ar, wall
 muse'|um, -et; -er, museum
 musi'k, -en, music
 mycket, much, very
 mystisk, -t; -a, mystical
 må, may, let
 ~ vara, let it be
 måhän'da, perhaps
 mål, -et; -, goal
 måla I, paint
 målmedvet|en, -et; -na, purposeful
 målstolp|e, -en; -ar, goal post
 månad, -en; -er, month
 i mars~, in the ~ of March
 mång|en, -et; -a, sg. many a; pl. many
 måste, must, have to
 mäktig, -t; -a, mighty, powerful
 mängd, -en; -er, multitude, great number
 människ|a, -an; -or, human being, person; pl. people
 ingen~, not a soul
 människobliv|en, -et; -na, incarnate
 mänskor = människor see människa
 mänskorrätt, -en; -er, human rights, rights of man
 mänskoåd|er, -ern; -ror, human vein

märka IIb, notice, mark
 märke, -t; -n, mark
 märkt, -; -a, marked
 märkvärdig, -t; -a, remarkable
 mödosam, -t; -ma, laborious
 mögla|d, -t; -de, mouldy
 möjlig, -t, -a, possible
 möjliggöra, -gjorde, -gjort, make possible
 möjlighet, -en; -er, possibility
 mörk, -t; -a, dark
 mörker, mörkret, darkness
 möss|a, -an; -or, cap
 mötas IIb dep., meet, come together
 möte, -t; -n, meeting
 ånga till~, steam toward, steam to meet

N

nack|e, -en; -ar, neck, nape of the neck
 med mössan käckt på~, with cap a-tilt
 nalkas I dep., draw near, approach
 namn, -et; -, name
 ~ på, name of
 natio'n, -en; -er, nation
 nationel'l, -t; -a, national
 natt, -en; nättar, night
 natu'r, -en; -er, nature
 natu'rgudom'lighet, -en; -er, nature-deity
 natu'rligtvis, naturally, of course
 ned (ner, neder), down
 nedanför, below, beneath
 neder see ned
 nederlag, -et; -, defeat
 nej, no
 nektar, -n, nectar
 ner see ned
 nere, down
 nerv, -en; -er, nerve
 nervö's, -t; -a, nervous
 ni (acc. er or eder!), you
 nicka I, nod
 ~ på huvudet, nod one's head
 nio, nine
 niotums, nine-inch
 nit, -et, zeal
 nog, enough, indeed, rather

nord, -en, <i>North</i>	obetydlig, -t; -a, <i>insignificant, inconsiderable</i>
nordisk, -t; -a, <i>Nordic</i>	observe'ra I, <i>observe, note</i>
nordlig, -t; -a, <i>northern</i>	oce'a'n, -en; -er, <i>ocean</i>
nordligast, -; -e, <i>northernmost</i>	och, <i>and</i>
nordstat, -en; -er, <i>Northern state</i>	~så, ~then
nordstats man, -nen; -män, <i>man of the northern states</i>	~så vidare (o.s.v.), <i>et cetera</i>
Norge, <i>Norway</i>	ock, <i>also, too</i>
norr, <i>north</i>	också, <i>also, too</i>
i~, <i>to the north</i>	odela d, -t; -de, <i>undivided, whole-hearted</i>
norra (indecl.), <i>northern</i>	odla I, <i>cultivate</i>
norsk, -t; -a, <i>Norwegian</i>	odödlig, -t; -a, <i>immortal</i>
nota'rie, -n; -r, <i>notary</i>	oersättlig, -t; -a, <i>invaluable, irreplaceable</i>
nu, <i>now</i>	office'rar e, -en; -, <i>officer</i>
~- för tiden, <i>now-a-days</i>	officiel'l, -t; -a, <i>official</i>
Nukku Matti, "The Sandman" (<i>Finnish</i>)	ofta, <i>often</i>
numera, <i>now, nowadays</i>	ofördelaktig, -t; -a, <i>unfavorable</i>
nuvarande, <i>present</i>	oförmög en, -et; -na, <i>incapacitated</i>
ny, -tt; -a, <i>new</i>	oförstånd, -et, <i>ignorance</i>
Nya England, <i>New England</i>	ogilla I, <i>disapprove</i>
Nya-Englandsstaterna, <i>The New England States</i>	okunnig, -t; -a, <i>ignorant</i>
nybaka d, -t; -de, <i>"freshly-baked", brand-new</i>	olik', -t; -a, <i>various, unlike</i>
nyss, <i>just, presently, lately</i>	olydig, -t; -a, <i>disobedient</i>
nytt see ny	om, <i>if, whether, about</i>
nå!, <i>well!</i>	~-igen', <i>over again</i>
någon, något; några, <i>some(one), any(one)</i>	~~och ~igen', <i>over and over again</i>
något, <i>something, anything</i>	~-sommaren, <i>in the summer</i>
något annat, <i>something else</i>	ombord (på), <i>on board</i>
några, <i>some, a few</i>	ombud, -et; -, <i>representative</i>
några få, <i>a few</i>	omdöme, -t; -n, <i>opinion, judgment</i>
någonsin, <i>ever, at any time</i>	omfamning, -en; -ar, <i>embrace</i>
någonting, <i>something, anything</i>	omfatta I, <i>comprise, embrace, encircle</i>
någorlunda, <i>fairly</i>	omgivning, -en; -ar, <i>environment, neighborhood</i>
något see någon	omkomma, -kom, -kommit, <i>perish</i>
några see någon	omkring, <i>around</i>
nämna IIa, <i>name, mention</i>	område, -t; -n, <i>sphere, field</i> på alla~, <i>in every field</i>
när, <i>when</i>	omsluta, -slöt, -slutit, <i>enclose, embrace</i>
nära, <i>near, almost</i>	omslöt see omsluta
~- bredvi'd, <i>close by, close to</i>	omständighet, -en; -er, <i>circumstance</i>
näst, -; -a, <i>next, next to</i>	omtala I, <i>relate</i>
~-gång, <i>the next time</i>	omutlig, -t; -a, <i>incorruptible</i>
~-dag, <i>(on) the following day</i>	omvänta IIa, <i>convert</i>
nästan, <i>almost</i>	omvändelsekrig, -et; -, <i>war of conversion</i>
nätter see natt	omväxlande, <i>varying</i>
nöd, <i>need</i>	omöjlig, -t; -a, <i>impossible</i>
nödsaka d, -t; -de, <i>compelled</i>	on d, -t; -da, <i>angry (bad, evil, wicked)</i>
0	ondska, -n, <i>evil, wickedness</i>
oberoende, -t; <i>independence</i>	ondskans värld, <i>evil world</i>

ord, -et; -, word
orden'tligt, properly, in an orderly manner
ordna I, arrange, classify
ordning, -en, order, arrangement i ~, in order, ready, "in shape"
orkeslös, -t; -a, decrepit
orolig, -t; -a, anxious, restless, worried
ored|a, -an; -, disorder
orsak, -en; -er, cause, reason
orätt, -; -a, wrong, injustice
oss see vi
o.s.v.(och så vidare), etc.
osårbar, -t; -a, invulnerable
otillfredsställande, unsatisfactory
otålig, -t; -a, impatient
oupphörlig, -t; -a, continual, incessant
outplånlig, -t; -a, ineffaceable
outsäglig, -t; -a, inexpressible
ova'l, -t; -a, oval
ovan, above

P

packa I, pack
palat's, -et; -, palace
palsternack|a, -an; -or, parsnip
panora'm|a, -at; -or, panorama
~~ över, ~~ of
pansar, -et; -, armor
pansarbälte, -t; -n, armor-plating
Panteon, Pantheon
papp|a, -an; -or, papa
papper, -et; -, paper
par, -et; -, pair
park, -en; -er, park
pastor, -n; pasto'rer, pastor
paus, -en; -er, pause, intermission, interval
pedago'gisk, -t; -a, pedagogical
peka I, point
~~ i österled, in an easterly direction, i.e., toward Russia
~~ på, ~~ at
pengar (penningar) see penning
penning, -en; -ar (pengar), coin, piece of money; in pl. money för en ringa~~. for a small price
permisio'n, -en, leave

persikomjuk, -t; -a, soft, velvety as a peach
persil'j|a, -an, parsley
perso'nighet, -en; -er, personality
pilt, -en; -ar, lad
pinlig, -t; -a, painful; embarrassing
pionjä'r, -en; -er, pioneer
pip|a, -an; -or, pipe
pittores'k, -t; -a, picturesque
plan, -en; -er, field; plan
plats, -en; -er, seat till sista~, to the last ~
plira I, squint
plump, -en; -ar, blot
plätt, -en; -ar, pancake
plättpann|a, -an; -or, pancake griddle
plötslig, -t; -a, sudden
poe'tisk, -t; -a, poetic
pojk|e, -en; -ar, boy, lad
polcirkeln, the Arctic (or Antarctic) circle
Polen, Poland
poli'tisk, -t; -a, political
Polyne'sien, Polynesia
populä'r, -t; -a, popular
port, -en; -ar, gate
prakt, -en, splendor
praktisk, -t; -a, practical
prassla I, rustle
preci's, precisely ~ klockan fyra, at four o'clock precisely
presiden't, -en; -er, president
prins, -en; -ar, prince en ~ av blodet, a prince of the blood, prince-royal
proble'm, -et; -, problem
procen't, -en, percent, percentage
professionell, -t; -a, professional
profeti'|a, -an; -or, prophecy
protestan'tisk, -t; -a, Protestant
provian't, -en, supply, provisions
präktig, -t; -a, fine, nice
präst, -en; -er, minister
prästman, -nen; -män, clergyman
puls, -en; -ar, pulse
pa, on, upon
pådraga, -drog, -dragit, put on, don
pådrog see pådraga
pärl|a, -an; -or, pearl
pösa IIb, swell ~ u't med bröstet, put out one's chest

R

rak, -t; -a, straight
 ~ vägen, straight ahead

ram, -en; -ar, frame

ramm, -en; -ar, ram

rang, -en, rank

rask, -t; -a, rapid, quick

reda IIa sig, take care of oneself

red|a, -an, order

redan, already

redd, -en; -er, roadstead, roads

redskap, -et; -(or, -er), tool(s). instrument

regen't, -en; -er, regent, ruler

rege'ring, -en; -ar, government (reign of)

regio'n, -en; -er, region

regnskur, -en; -ar, shower

relativ, -t; -a, relative

ren, -t; -a, clean, pure
 göra ~hus, clean house, perform a housecleaning

renhjord, -en; -ar, reindeer-herd

representan't, -en; -er, representative

resa, -an; -or, trip, journey

resa IIb, travel, depart
 ~ sig, rise

resenä'r, -en; -er, traveler

resulta't, -et; -en, outcome, result

revolutio'n, -en; -er, revolution

riddarslag, -et; -, accolade

rik, -t; -a, rich, wealthy

rike, -t; -n, kingdom

rikedom, -en; -ar, wealth, abundance

riksdag, -en; -ar, parliament

riksdagshus, -et; -, House of Parliament

riksdal|er, -ern; -rar, rix-dollar

riksföreståndar|e, -en; -, regent

riktig, -t; -a, real, right, veritable

ringa IIa, ring, sound (as of a bell)

ringa (indecl.), slight, humble
 ~ eller ingen, little or no

rispa I, rip
 ~ up'p, ~ up, ~ open

ritsch, ratsch, (onomatopoeia)

riv|en, -et; -na, torn

ro, -n, peace, rest

ro III, row

roddarbänk, -en; -ar, rowing-bench

rofull, -t; -a, peaceful

roman'tisk, -t; -a, romantic

rop, -et; -, cry, shout

ros, -en; -or, rose

rosenbädd, -en; -ar, rose-bed

rosenrö|d, -tt; -da, rosy

rui'n, -en; -er, ruin

rum, -met; -, room

rund, -en; -er, round, circular

runt, around

ruska I, shake

rutig, -t; -a, plaid

rygga I, shrink

rycka IIb, pull, wrench
 ~s me'd, be carried along

rykt, -en, cultivation
 själens ans och ~, the soul's care and cultivation

rykte, -t; -n, reputation

ryslig, -t; -a, horrible, frightful

Ryssland, Russia

råd, -et; -, council, advice

råda IIa, advise, rule

rådjur, -et; -, roe, deer

råg, -en; -ar, rye

råka I, meet, encounter

rädda I, save

räkna I, count

rätt, -; -a, right, correct, true

rätt, rightly

rätt, -en; -er, right, justice
 hal|va ~, be right

räv, -en; -ar, fox

rö|d, -tt; -a, red

rökmoln, -et; -, cloud of smoke

röra IIa, move
 ~ sig, move, be concerned
 konversatio'nen måste ~sig om, the conversation must be carried on about

rörelse, -n; -r, movement

S

sabelhugg, -et; -, sabre-cut

sade see säga

sag|a, -an; -or, story, tale

sagt see säga

sak, -en; -er, thing, matter, affair
 göra slag i ~, settle a matter, decide a thing

sakna I, lack, miss

sakta (indecl.), low, soft, gentle
 slow

salut, -en; -er, salute
 samfundsdanar|e, -en; -, founder of
 the nation
 samhälle, -t; -n, community, society
 samlas I dep., gather, assemble
 samma(-e), samma; samma, same
 vid ~tid, at the ~time
 sammansättning, -en; -ar, combination
 sammanträda IIb, meet, convene
 samskola, -an; -or, co-educational
 school
 samt, and, as well as
 samtal, -et; -, conversation
 samtycka I, assent, agree to
 sanning, -en; -ar, truth
 med ~, truth, in ~
 satt see sitta
 scen, -en; -er, scene
 Schola see skola
 se, såg, sett, see, look
 ~mot, ~at
 ~på, ~at
 ~så', ~now! there!
 ~sig omkring, look around
 ~ut, look out, appear
 sedan, then, thereupon, since,
 after, afterwards
 för några år~, some years ago
 segler, -ern; -rar, victory
 segerfan|a, -an; -or, banner of victory
 segerherr|e, -en; -ar, conqueror,
 Lord of victory
 segerpalm, -en; -er, palm of victory
 segerstång, -en; -stänger, victory
 pole
 segla I, sail
 sekelskifte, -t; -n, turn of the
 century
 sen, -t; -a, late
 för ~, too ~
 till helt ~, until quite ~
 senare, later
 de ~, the latter
 sett see se
 sex, six
 sexton, sixteen
 sid|a, -an; -or, side
 på andra ~, on the other ~
 vid ~, by the ~
 vid ~av, besides
 sidodörr, -en; -ar, side door
 sidopansar, -et; -, side armor
 siersk|a, -an; -or, seeress, prophetess
 sig, refl. pron., himself, herself, etc.
 signal, -en; -er, signal

silver, silvret, silver
 silverband, -et; -, silver band
 simp|el, -elt; -la, common, plain
 sin, sitt, sina, his, her, their
 sist, -; -a, last
 sitt see sin
 sitta, satt,utto; suttit, sit,
 be seated
 ~fast, stick, be stuck
 situatio'n, -en; -er, situation
 sju, seven
 sjukdom, -en; -ar, sickness, disease
 sjukhus, -et; -, hospital
 sjunga, sjöng, sjungit, sing
 sjutton, seventeen
 själ, -en; -ar, soul
 själasörjar|e, -en; -, spiritual guide
 själv, -t; -a, myself, yourself, him-
 self, herself, etc.; very, even
 sjö, -n; -ar, lake
 sjöng see sjunga
 sjörövar|e, -en; -, pirate
 s.k.=så kallad, so-called
 skad|a, -an; -or, harm, injury
 skada I, damage, injure
 skada|d, -t; -de, injured, damaged
 Skagerack Skagerrack
 skaka I, shake
 skald, -en; -er, poet
 skall see skola
 skalla I, resound
 skandina'visk, -t; -a, Scandinavian
 skattkammar|e, -en; -, treasury,
 treasure-house
 skede, -t; -n, phase, period
 sken, -et; -, light, gleam, brilliancy
 skepp, -et; -, ship
 skicka I, send
 skickelig see skicklig
 skicklig, -t; -a, skilled, trained
 skid|a, -an; -or, pod
 skiljaktig, -t; -a, divided
 skillnad, -en; -er, difference
 skina, sken, skinit, shine
 skjuta, sköt, skjutit, shoot
 skjutande, -t, firing
 sko, -n; -r, shoe
 skog, -en; -ar, woods, forest
 i ~ och mark, in the woods and
 fields

skogig, -t; -a, wooded
 skogssjö, -n; -ar, forest lake
 skogsväg, -en; -ar, forest road
 Skokloster, old castle, cloister
 skola, -an; -or, school
 skola, skall, skulle; skolat,
 shall, will
 skola|d, -t; -de, schooled, trained
 skolgård, -en; -ar, school-yard
 skolhus, -et; -, school-house
 skolkamrat, -en; -er, school-mate
 skollärar|e, -en; -, school-teacher
 skoltvång, -et; -, compulsory
 education
 sko'nert, -en; -ar, schooner
 skott, -et; -, shot
 skrek see skrika
 skrev see skriva
 skrift, -en; -er, writing
 skriftställar|e, -en; -, writer
 skrifwa see skriva
 skrik, -et; -, shriek, cry
 skrika, skrek, skrikit, cry, call,
 shriek
 skriva, skrev, skrivit, write
 skräck, -en, terror, dread
 skugg|a, -an; -or, shadow
 skulle see skola
 sky, -n; -ar, sky, cloud
 skydda I, protect, defend
 skyla IIa (or I), cover, shield
 skymma IIa, obscure, hide
 skymning, -en, dusk, twilight
 skymta I, flit, pass by
 skynda I, hurry
 ~på', ~up
 ~sig, make haste
 skåda, gaze, see, look
 ~u't på, ~out at
 skål, -en; -ar, bowl
 skål! "To your health!"
 skälla IIa, bark, scold
 skalmsk, -t; -a, mischievous
 skamtsamt, jocularly, in jest
 skanka IIb, give, present (with)
 skära, skar, skuro; skurit, cut
 skärv|a, -an; -or, splinter
 skön, -t; -a, beautiful
 skönhet, -en; -er, beauty
 skör, -t; -a, fragile
 skördefolk, -et, reapers, harvesters
 sköt see skjuta

slag, -et; -, blow, stroke
 göra ~ i saken, settle the matter
 slå ett ~, strike a blow
 på ~ fem, on the stroke of five
 slag|en, -et; -na, defeated
 slagfält, -et; -, field of battle
 slagit see slå
 slags, kind, sort, species
 ett ~, a kind of
 slagskepp, -et; -, battleship
 slev, -en; -ar, ladle
 slitning, -en; -ar, discord, dissension
 slocknande, dulled, going out,
 becoming extinct
 slog see slå
 slott, -et; -, castle
 slut, -et; -, end, close
 sluta I (and slöt, slöto, slutit),
 finish, end
 slutligen, finally, at last
 slå, slog, slagit, strike, tap, beat
 ~ en drill, warble
 ~ tillbaka, beat off, repulse
 ~ up'p, throw open, open
 ~ mot, beat against
 ~ u't, come out (as follows)
 släkt, -en; -er, relation, relative
 ~ och vänner, relatives and friends
 släpa I, drag
 smal, narrow, thin, lean
 smickra I, flatter
 smittosam, -t; -ma, contagious
 små, pl. of liten, little, small
 småningom, gradually
 så ~, little by little
 smästen, -en; -ar, pebble
 smörgäs, -en; -ar, sandwich
 snabb, -t; -a, quick, swift
 snart, soon
 snillrik, -t; -a, brilliant
 snyftning, -en; -ar, sob
 snödriv|a, -an; -or, snowdrift
 socia'l, -t; -a, social
 sol, -en; -(ar), sun
 solda't, -en; -er, soldier
 solig, -t; -a, sunny
 solsken, -et, sunshine
 solsträl|e, -en; -ar, sun-beam
 som, who, whom, that, which; as
 somliga, some
 sommar, -en; somrar, summer
 en ~, one ~
 om ~, in the ~
 sommarnatt, -en; -nätter, summer night

sommarröck, -en; -ar, *summer coat*
 somna I, *fall asleep*
 son, -en; söner, *son*
 sonson, -en; -söner, *grandson*
 sorgespel, -et; -, *tragic sight, tragedy (play)*
 sorl, -et; -, *hum, murmur, purl*
 sorla I, *murmur*
 sova,sov, sovit, *sleep*
 sparv, -en; -ar, *sparrow*
 spegel, -eln; -lar, *mirror*
 spela I, *play*
 ~ up'p, *strike up, begin playing*
 spill|d, -t; -da, *splotched*
 spillr|a, -an; -or, *fragment*
 spis, -en (=födal), *food*
 spisel, -n; spislar, *stove*
 i~, *on the ~*
 spjälka I, *split*
 splittra|d, -t; -de, *split, shattered*
 spora'disk, -t; -a, *sporadic*
 sprang *see springa*
 sprida IIa (*and spred, spridit*),
 spread, diffuse
 spri|dd,--tt; -dda, *scattered*
 springa, sprang, sprungo; sprungit,
 run, leap
 ~ fram', *burst forth, leap forward*
 ~ i lan'd, *jump ashore*
 sprittande, *buoyant*
 sprungo *see springa*
 spårvagn, -en; -ar, *street-car*
 spårvagnssamtal, -et; -, *chat in the street-car*
 spänna IIa, *stretch, draw(bow-string), tighten*
 spänning, -en, *tension, suspense*
 stad, -en; städer, *city, town*
 stadion (*indecl.*), *stadium*
 på~, *in the ~*
 stadionarka'd, -en; -er, *arcade of the stadium*
 stadsbibliote'k, -et; -, *city library*
 stadsdel, -en; -ar, *section of the city*
 stadshus, -et; -, *city hall*
 stadsmur, -en; -ar, *city wall*
 stanna I, *stop, remain*
 stark, -t; -a, *strong*
 starta I, *start*
 startgrop, -en; -ar, *toe-hole*
 startskott, -et; -, *starting shot*
 stat, -en; -er, *state*
 statsman, -nen; -män, *statesman*

staty', -(e)n; -er, *statue*
 steg *see stiga*
 steka IIb, *fry, roast*
 sten, -en; -ar, *stone, rock*
 stenkast, -et; -, *stone's throw*
 stenläggning, -en; -ar, *stone pavement*
 stick|a, -an; -or, *stick, splinter*
 stiga, steg, stigit, step, *rise*
 ~ a'v, *get off*
 ~ up'p, *rise*
 ~ i, *step into*
 ~ i lan'd, *step ashore*
 stilla, still, *quiet*
 stjärn|a, -an; -or, *star*
 stjärnvalv, -et, *starry vault*
 stod *see stå*
 stoft, -et; -, *remains*
 stol, -en; -ar, *chair*
 stolt, -; -a, *proud*
 stolthet, -en, *pride*
 stor, -t; -a(större, störst),
 big, great, large
 storhetssbubbl|a, -an; -or,
 bubble of greatness
 storhetstid, -en, *Period of greatness*
 stormakt, -en; -er, *great power*
 stormande, *thunderous*
 strand, -en; stränder, *shore*
 vid~, *on the ~*
 strandbod, -en; -ar, *boat-house*
 strax, *immediately*
 ~ invi'd, *close by*
 strid, -en; -er, *fight, struggle*
 stryka, strök, strukit, *stroke, spread*
 ~ utmed, *run along*
 stråla I, *shine, radiate*
 sträcka IIb, *stretch, extend*
 sträng, -t; -a, *strict, forbidding*
 strävande, -t; -n, *endeavor*
 strömma I, *stream*
 studen't, -en; -er, *student (graduate)*
 studen't|exa'men, -; -exa'mina,
 student-examination
 studie, -n; -r, *studies*
 studsa I, *fly back, bounce*
 stug|a, -an; -or, *cottage*
 stund, -en; -er, *moment*
 stundom, *at times, occasionally*
 stupa I, *fall (in battle)*
 stycke, -t; -n, *piece, short distance*
 styra IIa, *steer, guide, rule*
 ~ kosan mot, *set out for*
 ~ rakt pa, *head straight for*

styrhus, -et; -, pilot house
 styrkedryck, -en; -er, drink.
 strengthening draught
 styv, -t; -a, lit. stiff, important
 proud
 stå, stod, stått, stand
 hur ~det till? how are you?
 ~kvar, stay behind
 städse, always, ever
 tilltagande, ever-increasing
 ställa IIa, put, place, set
 ställe, -t; -n, place
 i ~för, instead of
 ställning, -en; -ar, position,
 attitude
 ständigt, ever, continually
 stärkande, invigorating
 stäv, -en; -ar, stem, bow (of a boat)
 stödja IIb, stödde, stött, support
 ~sig på, base one's opinion on
 större see stor
 störst see stor
 stöt, -en; -ar, blow, impact
 stöta IIb, strike
 suck, -en; -ar, sigh
 suckan (indecl.), sighing, sighs
 sutto see sitta
 sval, -t; -a, cool
 svans, -en; -ar, tail
 svar, -et; -, answer
 ~på, ~to
 svara I, answer
 svart, -; -a, black
 svensk, -en; -ar, Swede
 svensk-amerika'n, -en; -er (also -are,
 -n or -arn; -,) Swedish-American
 svenskfödd, -tt; -dda, Swedish-born
 svensk, -t; -a, Swedish
 svensk-rysk, -t; -a, Swedish-Russian
 svår, -t; -a, hard, difficult
 svårmelig, -t; -a, gloomy
 svälla IIa, swell
 Swenske see svensk
 sydlig, -t; -a, southern
 sydstat, -en; -er, southern state
 syfte, -t; -n, aim
 sympati', -(e)n; -er, sympathy
 syn, -en; -er, spectacle, view
 synas IIb, dep., seem
 det syntes mig, it seemed to me
 synnerhet, especially
 i ~, particularly, especially
 i all~, above all, in particular

syslolös, -t; -a, idle
 syste'm, -et; -, system
 syster, -n; systrar, sister
 sisterinstitution, -en; -er,
 sister institution
 så, so, thus, then, as
 ~att, so that
 ~där som, just as
 ~stor som, as great as
 ~väl som, as well as
 sådan, -t; -a, such
 en~, ~ a (one)
 såg see se
 således, thus
 sålunda, thus
 sång, -en; -er, song
 sångar|e, -en; -, singer
 såra I, wound, hurt
 såsom, as, like, such as
 såväl see så
 säga, sade, sagt, say
 sända IIa, send
 sänka IIb, lower, sink
 ~sig, sink, set
 särdeles, particularly
 särskilt, especially, particularly
 sätt, -et; -, way, manner
 på ett~, in one way
 på samma ~, in the same
 sätta, satte, satt, put, set, place
 ~sig, seat oneself
 ~tro till, have faith in
 ~värde på, value, esteem
 söder, south
 ~ om, ~of
 söderut, southward
 södra (indecl.), southern
 söka IIb, seek, try
 ~efter, look, search for
 sömn, -en, sleep
 söndag, -en; -ar, Sunday
 söndagseftermiddag, -en; -ar,
 Sunday afternoon
 sónder, asunder (broken)
 gingo ~, went to pieces

T

tack, -en(-et); -, thanks, gratitude
 ~vare, thanks to
 tacka I, thank
 ~samtyckande, thankfully accept
 tacksamhet, -en, gratitude

- taga, tog, tagit, take
 ~fas't, catch
 ~i rin'g, form a ring
 tala I, talk
 ~om', discuss (but omtala=relate)
 talrik, -t; -a, numerous
 talscen, -en; -er, dramatic stage
 tall, -en; -ar, pine
 tankeliv, -et; -, consciousness
 tankfull, -t; -a, thoughtful
 tant, -en; -er, aunt
 tappler, -ert; -ra, brave
 tavla, -an; -or, picture
 tea't|er, -ern; -rar, theatre
 tecknald, -t; -de, drawn
 t.ex. (=till exempel), e.g. (for example)
 teknisk, -t; -a, technical
 teologi', -en, theology
 tid, -en; -er, time, period
 i god~, in time
 nu för~, now-a-days
 på den~, at that time
 som ~led, as time went on
 vid ~för, during the period before
 vid samma~, at the same time
 tidig, -t; -a, early
 tidigare, earlier, before
 några år~, some years before
 tidspillan (indecl.), waste of time
 tidtagare, -en; -, time-keeper
 till, to, until
 ~des's, until
 ~exem'pel (t.ex.), for example
 ~sis't, at last
 ~sjös's, to sea
 tillba'ka, back
 tillfälle, -t; -n, occasion
 för~, for the moment
 tillgång, -en, supply
 ~på, ~of
 tillhöra IIa, belong to
 till|komma, -kom, -kommit, come
 into existence
 tillräcklig, -t; -a, sufficient
 tillsam'mans, together
 tilltagande, increasing
 städse~, ever-increasing
 tillträda IIa, take over,
 assume duties
 timme, -en; -ar, hour
 i flera~, for several hours
 timmer, timret, timber
 tiotal, -et; -en, decade
 under ett ~år, for about ten years
 tjugotvå', twenty-two
 tjugotre'åring, -en; -ar, twenty-
 three-year-old (man)
 tjuskraft, -en; -er, power to charm
 tjudning, -en; -ar, charm
 tjäna I, serve
 tjänst, -en; -er, service, function,
 purpose
 tjänstetid, -en; -er, period of service
 tog see taga
 tog|a, -an; -or, toga
 tolk, -en; -ar, spokesman, expounder,
 interpreter
 tolfte, twelfth
 den ~ Karl, Charles XII
 tolv, twelve
 tom, -t; -a, empty
 tomt|e, -en; -ar, "Brownie"
 ton, -en; -er, strain, tune
 topp, -en; -ar, top
 torde see tör
 torg, -et; -a, square, market place
 torka I, dry, wipe
 torn, -et; -, tower, turret
 torparson, -en; -söner, crofter's son
 torv|a, -an; -or, sod
 vilken älskvärd ~, what a lovely land!
 torvtäckt, -; -a, sod-covered
 tota'lintryck, -en; -et, general
 impression
 traditio'n, -en; -er, tradition
 traditionel'l, -t; -a, traditional
 trakt, -en; -er, neighborhood
 transpor'tfrott|a, -an; -or,
 transport fleet
 trapp|a, -an; -or, stairs, steps
 vid ~, beside the ~
 på ~, on the ~
 tre, three
 Trefal'dighetskyrkan, proper name
 Heliga ~, The Church of the Holy
 Trinity
 trrikesröse, -t, cairn of the
 three kingdoms
 trettioåriga kriget, Thirty Years' War
 tretton, thirteen
 trivas, IIa, dep..
 get on well, thrive
 ~mest, like best
 tro III, think, believe
 tro, -n, faith
 sätta ~till, place ~ in
 trolig, -t; -a, probable
 trollslag, -et; -, stroke of magic
 på ett ~, by a ~

tron, -en; -er, throne
 trona I, be enthroned
 tronföljar|e, -en; -, successor to
 the throne
 trots, in spite of
 trumpe'tar|e, -en; -, trumpet
 (bugle) boy
 trång, -t; -a, narrow
 träd, -et; -, tree
 tråda IIa, walk, tread, go
 ~i, enter into
 trädgård, -en; -ar, garden
 trädgårdsmästar|e, -en; -, gardener
 träff, -en; -ar, hit
 bliva en~, make a ~
 träffa I, meet, encounter
 träffas I, dep., meet
 tråldom, -en; -, thraldom, bondage
 tränga IIa, penetrate
 tråsk, -et; -, marsh, swamp
 tråvirke, -t; -, woodwork
 tröj|a, -an; -or, jacket
 trött, -; -a, tired
 tröttna I, tire, weary
 tum, -met; -, inch
 tung, -t; -a, heavy
 tunn, tunt; -a, thin
 tur, -en; -er, turn
 turis'tland, -et; land for tourists
 turis'tström, -men; -mar, stream
 of tourists
 tusen, thousand
 ~och åter~, thousands and thousands
 tvenne, two
 tvistighet, -en; -er, dispute,
 pl. differences
 tviv|el, -let; -, doubt
 utan~, no~, undoubtedly
 två, two
 tvåvåningsbyggnad, -en; -er,
 two-story building
 ty, for, because
 tycka IIb, think
 ~om', like
 tyckas IIb, dep., seem
 tydlig, -t; -a, clear, distinct
 tydligen, apparently
 typ, -en; -er, type
 tyran'n, -en; -er, tyrant
 tyst, -; -a, silent, still
 tår(e)pil, -en; -ar, weeping willow
 täck, -t; -a, lovely

tänka IIb, think
 ~på, ~of
 tänkande, reasoning
 tävla I, compete
 ~om, ~for
 tävling, -en; -ar, race, contest
 tävlingsledar|e, -en; -, athletic
 director, sports official
 töm, -men; -mar, rein
 tör, imp. torde, is likely to

 U
 udd|e, -en; -ar, cape
 ullgarn, -et; -, woolen thread
 (yarn), tape
 ulltråd, -en; -ar, woolen thread
 umgänge, -t; -n, company
 undantag, -et; -, exception
 under, under, beneath, during
 ~det, while, as
 ~ett tiotal år, for about ten years
 ~medeltiden, during the Middle Ages
 ~de senare åren, in recent years,
 in the last few years
 underbar, -t; -a, wonderful
 undergång, -en, decline
 underhåll, -et; -, maintenance
 underhålla, -höll, -hållit, support
 underlig, -t; -a, odd, peculiar,
 strange
 underrätta|d, -t; -de, informed
 undervisa I, instruct, teach
 undervisning, -en; -ar, instruction
 undervisningsväsen, -det; -,
 educational system
 undervisningsämne, -t; -n, subject
 taught
 ung, -t; -a(yngre, yngst), young
 de ~, the~, the children
 ungdom, -en; -ar, youth
 ungdomsstark, -t; -a, youthfully
 vigorous
 undra IIa, wonder
 ungefär, about
 unio'n, -en; -er, union
 Unio'n, -en, Union
 unionis't, -en; -er, unionist
 unio'nskepp, -et; -, Union ship
 universite't, -et; -, university
 uppdrag, -et; -, commission
 uppe, up

uppfinnar|e, -en; -, inventor
 uppfinnaregåv|a, -an; -or,
 inventive gift
 uppfostra I, rear, educate
 uppfostran (indecl.), education
 uppfostrar|e, -en; -, educator
 uppfylla IIa, fulfil
 uppföra IIa, erect, build,
 present (a play)
 uppförande, -t; -, erection
 uppgick see uppgå
 uppgå, -gick, -gingo; -gått,
 amount, reach, total
 ~ till, ~to
 upphöra IIa, cease
 uppkalla|d, -t; -de, named, nominated
 uppkomma, -kom; -kommit, arise, come
 into existence
 upplysning, -en; -ar, information,
 enlightenment
 uppmuntra I, encourage
 uppmuntrande, encouraging
 uppmärksamma I, notice, pay attention to
 upprepa I, repeat
 upprop, -et; -, appeal, call
 förrät'ta~, call the roll
 uppskatta I, appreciate
 uppväxa IIb, grow up
 uppåt, up toward
 ur, from, out, out of
 urinvånar|e, -en; -, aborigine
 uråldrig, -t; -, ancient, venerable
 ut, out
 ~ i, ~into
 utan, without
 utav, out of, from
 utbilda I, train, educate
 ~ sig (till), study, prepare
 oneselves (for)
 utbildala|d, -t; -de, trained
 utbildning, -en; -ar, training
 utbrott, -et; -, outbreak
 ute, out
 utför, down
 gå ~, decline
 utgiva, -gav, -gåvo; -givit,
 publish, give out
 utgiv|en, -et; -na, published
 utgå, -gick, -gingo; -gått,
 go out, come out
 utlandet, abroad
 i ~, "
 utmed, along

utmärka IIb, distinguish, delineate,
 denote
 utnämna IIa, appoint, name
 ~ till fänrik, be appointed an
 ensign
 utom, besides
 utomlands, abroad
 uträffa I, accomplish
 utsträckning, -en, length, extent
 i hela dess~, for its whole
 length, in all its scope
 uttalande, -t; -n, statement
 utter, -n; uttar, otter
 utveckla I, develop
 utveckling, -en; -ar, development
 utvidga I, broaden, expand
 utövande, -t; -, pursuit

V

vack|er, -ert; -ra, handsome, fine
 nice, beautiful
 vad, what
 vad för en, what kind of
 vaja I, flutter
 vakna I, awaken
 vakt, -en; -er, guard
 vaktmästar|e, -en; -, janitor,
 caretaker
 vald see välja
 vall, -en; -ar, rampart, battlement
 vall|fara, -for, -farit, make a
 pilgrimage
 valv, -et; -, vault
 vanka I, saunter
 ~ efter, lag behind
 vanlig, usual, customary
 vanligtvis, usually
 vann see vinna
 var, each, every
 ~ och en, each one, everyone
 var see vara
 var, where
 vara, är, äro; var, voro; varit, be
 vara I, last, endure
 varandra, each other, one another
 varför, why
 ~ inte, ~not
 varg, -en; -ar, wolf
 varhelst, wherever
 vari, in what

varit see vara
 varje, every, each
 varken, neither
 ~...eller, ~...nor
 varm, -t; -a, warm
 varmed, with which
 varmluftsmaskin, -en; -er,
 hot-air engine
 vars, whose
 vart, whither, to what place,
 where, wherever
 ~som helst, anywhere
 varuti, wherein, in which (what)
 varv, -et; -, task
 vass, -t; -a, sharp
 vatt|en, -net; -, water
 vattenkraft, -en; -er, water power
 vattensamling, -en; -ar, body of water
 vattna I, water
 veck|a, -an; -or, week
 vek, -t; -a, delicate
 vek see vika
 velat see vilja
 vem, who, whom
 vems, whose, of whom
 verk, -et; -, work, performance
 verka I, act
 verkan (indecl.), effect
 verklig, -t; -a, real, actual
 verkligen, truly, really
 verksam, -t; -samma, active
 verksamhet, -en; -er, activity
 veta, visste, vetat, know
 vetenskaplig, -t; -a, scientific
 vetenskapsman, -nen; -män, scientist
 vi (oss), we
 vid, at, by, beside
 vid, vitt, vida, wide, far
 vida, far
 vidare, further
 vidd, -en; -er, extent, expanse, tract
 vidsträckt, -; -a, extensive
 vidund|er, -ret; -, monster
 vifta I, wag, wave
 vik, -en; -ar, bay (wick)
 vika, vek, vikit, yield
 ~undan, get out of the way
 vikingasinne, -t; -n, viking temper
 vikingatåg, -et; -, Viking expedition
 viktig, -t; -a, important
 vila I, rest

vilj|a, -an; -or, will
 vilja, ville, velat, will, wish, want
 vilken, vilket, vilka, who, which,
 what (a)
 ~som helst, anyone at all
 ~älskvärd torva, what a lovely
 land!
 vill see vilja
 vill|a, -an; -or, villa
 ville see vilja
 villrädig, -t; -a, irresolute
 vimla I, swarm
 vind, -en; -ar, wind
 ving|e, -en; -ar, wing
 vinna, vann, vunno; vunnit, win, gain
 vinter, -n; -vintrar, winter
 violet't, -; -a, violet, purple
 Virgi'nsk, -t; -a, Virginian
 virvel, -eln; -lar, whirl
 vis, -et; -, manner
 vis, -t; -a, wise
 vis|a, -an; -or, song
 visa I, show
 vispdeg, -en; -ar, batter
 viska I, whisper
 viskning, -en; -ar, whisper
 viss, -t; -a, certain
 visselepip|a, -an; -or, whistle
 visserligen, certainly
 visst, certainly, of course
 visste see veta
 vit, vitt, vita, white
 vitmåla|d, -t; -de, painted white
 vitt, wide, far
 ~omkrin'g, far and wide
 vittberöm|d, -t; -da, far-famed
 voro see vara
 vrida, vred, vridit, turn, twist
 våg, -en; -or, wave
 våga I, dare
 väld, -et, force, violence
 vår, -t; -a, our
 vårflåkt, -en; -ar, spring breeze
 vårsol, -en; -ar, vernal sun
 väcka IIb, awaken
 väd|er, -ret; -, weather, air
 hissa i~, hoist into the air
 väg, -en; -ar, way, road
 i den~, in that respect
 under~, on the way
 vägg, -en; -ar, wall

väl, well, to be sure
 lev~, farewell
 välja IIa, valde, valt, elect
 ~ngn till ngt, ~ someone,
 something; choose someone
 for something
 välla IIa, well up, gush forth,
 surge forth
 välsig'nelse, -n; -r, blessing
 vän, -nen; -ner, friend
 vända IIa, turn, shift
 ~om', return
 ~sig mot, turn toward
 vänlig, -t; -a, friendly
 vänlighet, -en; -er, amiability
 vänskap, -en, friendship
 vänskapsband, -et; bond of friendship
 vänster, left
 till~, to the~
 vänta I, wait, expect
 ~ lite(l), wait a little
 ~ på, wait for
 värdighet, -en; -er, position
 värld, -en; -ar, world
 hela~, the whole world, everybody
 i hela~, throughout the world
 världsdel, -en; -ar, continent
 världserövrande, world-conquering
 världshav, -et; -, ocean
 värmländsk, -t; -a, pertaining to
 Värmland, a province of Sweden
 värre, worse
 värst, -; -a, worst
 väster, west
 västerut, westward
 västkust, -en, west coast
 västra, western
 väv, -en; -ar, fabric, woven material
 växa IIb, grow
 väx|el, -eln; -lar, draft
 draga en~ på ngn, draw a~ on
 someone
 växtliv, -et; -, plant life, flora

W

wad see vad
 war = vara see vara
 wisste = visste see veta
 woro = voro see vara
 wärt = vårt see vår

Y

yankee, -n; -s, Yankee
 ylleschal, -en; -ar, woolen shawl
 yngling, -en; -ar, youth, young man
 yngre see ung
 yngst see ung
 yrke, -t; -n, profession
 ytterst, extreme, uttermost
 yttre, external, outer

Å

åbyggare, -en; -, settler
 åka IIb, go, ride, drive
 åker, -n; åkrar, field (tilled)
 på~, in the~
 åkerbrukar|e, -en; -, farmer
 åliggande, -t; -n, duty, function,
 task
 ånga I, steam
 ~ till mötes, ~ ahead to meet
 ångbåtslinje, -n; -r, steamship line
 ångerfull, -t; -a, remorseful
 ångfregatt, -en; -er, steam-frigate
 ångra I, regret
 ånyo, anew
 år, -et; -, year
 i hela sju~, for seven years
 ~ 1934, in 1934
 för några~ sedan, some years ago
 årla, -an; -or, oar
 århundrade, -t; -n, century
 årligen, yearly
 åsikt, -en; -er, opinion
 åskådar|e, -en; -, spectator
 åstadkomma, -kom; -kommit, achieve,
 produce, cause
 åt, to
 åt see äta
 åter, again, back
 ~tillba'ka, back again
 återföra IIa, bring back
 återigen, again, once more
 återkomma, -kom; -kommit, come back,
 return
 återse, -säg, -sett, see again
 återstå, -stod, -stätt, remain,
 be left
 åtskillig, -t; -a, various
 åtta, eight
 åttatiden, about eight o'clock

Ä

ädel, -t; ädla, *noble*
 äga IIa, *own, have, possess*
 äldre *see* gammal
 äldst *see* gammal
 älg, -en; -ar, *elk, moose*
 älskvär|d, -t; -da, *lovable, lovely, amiable*
 ämbete, -t; -n, *office*
 ämna I, *intend, plan*
 ämna|d, -t; -de, *destined, meant to*
 än, *than*
 än *see* ännu
 ända, *all the way*
 ~till, *up to, as far as*
 ändamål, -et; -, *purpose, end*
 för ~et, *for its purpose, as an end*
 ängslig, -t; -a, *anxious*
 ännu (än), *yet, still*
 ~en gång, *once more*
 äntligen, *finally*
 är *see* vara
 ärende, -t; -n, *matter, affair*
 är|a, -an, *honor*
 dagen till ~, *in ~ of the occasion*
 äro *see* vara
 ärt, -en; -er, *pea*
 ärtland, -et; -, *pea-patch*
 artskid|a, -an; -or, *pea-pod*
 ärtskidsbåt, -en; -ar, *pea-pod boat*
 ärtskidsfartyg, -et; -, *pea-pod ship*
 ärtskidsflott|a, -an; -or, *pea-pod fleet*
 ärtstång|el, -eln; -lar, *pea-vine*
 ärva IIa, *inherit*

äta, åt, ätit, *eat*
 även, *even*

Ö

ö, -n; -ar, *island*
 öde, -t; -n, *fate*
 öde (indecl.), *waste, desolate*
 ödemark, -en; -er, *wasteland, desert, wilderness*
 öga, -t; ögon, *eye*
 ögonblick, -et; -, *moment*
 ögonvrå, -n; -r, *corner of the eye*
 önska I, *wish (for)*
 öpp|en, -et; -na, *open*
 öppna I, *open*
 öster, *east*
 Österled, *easterly direction, i.e., Russia*
 österrikisk, -t; -a, *Austrian*
 Östersjön, *the Baltic Sea*
 över, *over, above, upon*
 överal'lt, *everywhere*
 överdrift, -en; -er, *exaggeration*
 overkant, -en; -er, *upper edge*
 överraska I, *surprise*
 överstiga, -steg, -stigit, *surpass, exceed, pass beyond*
 översvämma I, *overflow*
 övertala I, *persuade*
 överträda IIa, *transgress, offend, disobey*
 övrig, -t; -a, *rest of, remainder*
 för ~, *besides, furthermore*

ENGLISH—SWEDISH VOCABULARY

A

a, an, en, ett
 aboard, *ombor'd*
 about, om, *omkrin'g*
 ~ it *därom*
 academic, *akade'misk.* -t; -a
 ~ institution, *lärosäte.* -t; -n
 account,
 on ~ of, på grund av
 achievement, dåd, -et; -
 bedrif't, -en; -er
 acquaintance, *bekan't*, -; -a
 across, över
 act, bär, bar; *burst sig åt*
 active, *verksam.* -t; -ma
 advance, föra I, *framå't*
 afraid, rädd, -; -a
 ~ of, ~ för
 after, efter, *efter att, sedan*
 ~ this, *hädanefter*
 again, igen, *engång till*
 against, mot, *emo't*
 age, ålder
 ~ of Greatness, *Storhetstiden*
 all, all, -t; -a
 alone, ensam, -t; -ma
 although, ehu'ru, fast (än)
 always, alltid, ständse
 among, bland
 Anacreon, *Anakre'on*
 and, och
 anew, åny'o. på nytt
 another, en annan, ett annat
 anxious, ängslig, -t; -a; orolig, -t; -a
 any, någon, något, några
 appear, visa I isig; komma (kom, kommit)
 ~ till synes; synas IIb
 appreciate, sätta (satte, satt) *värde på*
 approve of, gilla I
 around, runt, *omkrin'g*
 arrive, ankomma, -kom; -kommit
 anlända IIa
 as, som, såsom
 ~ if, ~ om
 ashore, i land
 ask, *bedja*, bad, bådo, bett; *fråga* I

at, vid

~ that time, på den tiden
 athletic field, tävlingsban|a, -an; -or
 attack, angripa, -grep, -gripit
 attempt, förs'ök, -et; -
 in a final ~, vid ett sista ~
 attract, draga (drog, dragit) till sig
 Austrian, österri'kiskt, -t; -a
 awaken, väcka IIb
 away, i väg, bort

B

back, tillbaka
 battle, kamp, -en
 beautiful, vacker, -t; -a
 skön, -t; -a
 because, därför, ty
 become, bliva, blev, blivit
 before, innan, framför, före
 begin, börja I
 ~ all over again, ~ ifrån början
 beginning, början (indecl.)
 bell, klock|a, -an; -or
 best, bäst, -; -a (sup. bra, god)
 their very ~, sitt allra ~
 better, bättre (comp. bra, god)
 bid, bjuda, bjöd, bjudit
 biography, biografi', -en; -er
 bleeding, blödande
 blue, blå, -tt; -(a)
 ~ and yellow, blågul, -t; -a
 bond of friendship, vänskapsband -et;
 book, bok, -en; böcker
 born, be, födas III pass.
 bowl, skål, -en; -ar
 boy, goss|e, -en; -ar
 break, bryta, bröt, brutit
 ~ for oneself, ~ sig
 ~ through, ~ (i)genom
 bright, klar, -t; -a
 broadside, bredsid|a, -an; -or
 build, bygga IIa
 but, men
 buy, köpa IIb
 by, av

C

cabin, *hytt*, -en; -er
 calm, *lugn*, -t; -a
 can, *kunna*, *kan*, *kunde*; *kunnat*
 cannon, *kano'n*, -en; -er
 roar of ~, *kano'ndund|er*, -ret; -
 car-stop, *hållplats*, -en; -er
 carry, *föra* IIa; *bära*, *bar*, *buro*; *burit*
 ~ on war, *föra krig*
 case, *fall*, -et; -
 in that ~. i det fallet
 cease, *upphöra* IIa
 century, *århundrade*, -t -n
 certainly (most), *sannerligen*
 chair, *stol*, -en; -ar
 character, *karaklä'r*. -en; -er
 check, *hejda* I
 child, *barn*, -et; -
 choose, *välja* IIa, *valde*, *valt*
 Christianity, *kristendom*, -en
 church, *kyrk|a*, -an; -or
 citizen, *medborgare*, -en; -
 city, *stad*, -en; *städer*
 ~ of Stockholm, *Stockholms stad*
 claim, *anspråk*, -et; -
 cloud, *moln*, -et; -
 colony, *koloni'*, -en; -er
 color, *färg*, -en; -er
 colors, *fanor*
 combination, *sammansättning*, -en; -ar
 come, *komma*, *kom*, *kommit*
 ~ to the throne, *besti'ga tro'nen*
 command, *befal'lning*, -en; -ar
 complete, *fullborda* I
 completely, *fullständigt*
 compulsory education, *skoltvång*, -et;
 concern, *angå*. -gick, -gingo; -gått
 confuse, *förväx'la*
 conquer, *erövra* I
 consider, *anse*, *ansäg*, *ansett*
 consist, *bestå*', *besto'd*, *bestat't*
 contagious, *smittosam*, -t; -ma
 continually, *oupphörligt*
 control, *kontrolle'ra* I
 controversy, *tvistighet*, -en; -er
 conversation, *konversatio'n*, -en; -er
 conversion, *omvälvelse*, -n; -r
 could, *kunde*, see *kunna*
 country, *land*, -et; *länder*
 covered, *övertäckt*, -; -a
 ~ with stars; *stjärnbeströ|dd*, -tt; -dda

curriculum, *läsplän*, -en; -er

D

damage, *skad|a*, -an; -or
 damage, *skada* I
 daughter, *dotter*, -n; *döttrar*
 day, *dag*, -en; -ar
 decide, *beslu'ta* (-slöt, -slu'tit, or
 -slu'tat) *sig för*
 decidedly, *bestäm't*
 deck, *däck*, -et; -
 decrepit, *orkeslös*, -t; -a
 deep, *djup*, -et; -
 defeat, *bese'gra* I
 Denmark, *Danmark*
 depend, *lita* I
 ~ on oneself, ~ på sig själv
 dependent, *beroende*
 ~ on, ~ av
 desperate, *förtvivlad*, -t; -de
 destined, *ämna|d*, -t; -de
 ~ to, av ödet bestäm'd till
 detailed, *detalje'rad*, -t; -de
 develop, *utveckla* I
 ~ oneself, ~ sig
 development, *utveckling*, -en; -ar
 die out, *dö* (dog, dött) *ut*
 disadvantage, *förlus't*, -en; -er
 disappear, *jörsvin'na*, -svan'n, -svun'no;
 -svun'nit
 discuss, *diskute'ra* I
 disease, *sjukdom*, -en; -ar
 disobey, *överträda* IIa
 disprove, *vederlägga*, -lade; -lagt;
 distinguish, *utmärka* IIb, *beteck'na* I
 do, *göra*, *gjorde*, *gjort*
 down-hill, *utföre*
 dull-green, *dunkelgrön*
 during, *under*
 dynasty, *dynasti'*, -en; -er

E

each one, *var och en*, *varen'da en*;
 varte'nda ett
 each other, *varan'dra*
 earlier, *tidigare*
 earth, *jord*, -en; -ar

educational system, *undervisningsväsen*, -det; -
 education, *uppmostran*
 compulsory ~, *skoltvång*, -et
 educator, *uppmostrar|e*, -en; -
 effect, *verkan* (indecl.)
 to that~, *av sådan innebörd*
 eleventh, *elfte*
 emperor, *kejsar|e*, -en; -
 encircled, *infatta|d*, -t; -de
 end, *slut*, -et; -
 endure, *fortleva* IIa, -levde, -levat
 enemy, *fiende*, -n; -er
 English, *engelsk*, -t; -a
 Englishman, *engels|man*, -nen; -män
 essay, *avhandling*, -en; -ar
 even, *även*
 evening, *afton*, -en; *aftnar*
 kväll, -en; -ar
 in the ~, *på kvällen*
 ever, *städse*
 ever-increasing, *städse tilltagande*
 everybody, *var och en*, *alla*
 everything, *allt*, *allting*
 evidently, *uppenbarligen*
 explosion of light, *ljusexpllosion*, -en; -er
 extend, *sträcka* IIb sig

flattering, *smickrande*
 flutter, *vaja* I
 follow, *följa* IIa
 following, *följande*
 food, *mat*, -en
 for, *ty*, *för*
 forced, *nödsaka|d*, -t; -de
 foremost, *främst*, -; -a
 the ~, *den främste*
 forest, *skog*, -en; -ar
 forest lake, *skogssjö*, -n; -ar
 form (of study), *studieplan*, -en; -er
 formidable, *fruktansvärd*, -t; -da
 fortress, *fästning*, -en; -ar
 forty, *fyrtio*
 founding, *grundläggning*, -en; -ar
 four, *fyra*
 four-thirty, *klockan halv fem*
 frame, *ram*, -en; -ar
 freeze, *frysa*, *frös*, *frusit*
 freezing, it is, *det fryser*
 French, *fransk*, -t; -a
 friend, *vän*, -nen; *vänner*
 from, *från*
 full, *full*, -t; -a, *fullständig*, -t; -a
 fully, *fullständigt*
 further, *vidare*
 future, *framtid*, -en

F

factory, *fabri'k*, -en; -er
 fail, *misslyckas* I (dep.)
 faith, *lär|a*, -an; -or
 famous, *beröm'|d*, -t; -da
 farewell, *farväl*
 farther, *längre* (compar. of *lång*)
 fastest, *fortast*
 favorite, *favori't*, -en; -er
 fear, *fruktan* (indecl.)
 have no ~, *frukta inte*
 few, *få*
 fierce, *häftig*, -t; -a
 fifteen, *femton*
 fight, *kämpa* I
 finally, *slutligen*
 find, *finna*, *fann*, *funno*; *funnit*
 Finlander, *finländar|e*, -en; -
 fire, *avskjuta* I
 firing, *skjutande*, -t
 flag, *flagg|a*, -an; -or

G

get, *få*, *fick*, *ingo*; *fått*; *erna* III
 give, *giva*, *gav*, *gåvo*, *givit*
 glass, *glas*, -et; -
 go, *gå*, *gick*, *gingo*; *gått*;
 fara, *for*, *farit*; *resa* IIb
 go away, *resa bort*
 go on a visit, *gå på besök*
 goal, *mål*, -et; -
 good, *god*, *gott*, *goda*; *bra*
 governor general, *generalguvernör*,
 -en; -er
 grandmother (paternal), *farmoder*, -n;
 farmödrar
 great, *stor*, -t; -a
 greater, *större* (comp. of *stor*)
 greatest, *störst*, -; -a(e)
 group, *flock*, -en; -ar
 grow, *växa* IIb

H

half, *halv*, -t; -a
 ~ the way, *halva vägen*
 half-way, *halvvägs*
 happy, *lycklig*, -t; -a
 harbor, *hamn*, -en; -ar
 ~ of, *hamnen vid*
 hard, *hård*, -t; -da
 he, *han*
 head, *huvud*, -et; -en
 heathen, *hedning*, -en; -ar
 hepatica, *bläsipp|a*, -an; -or
 her (obj.), *henne*
 her, hers, *hennes*; refl. *sin*, *sitt*, *sina*
 here, *här*
 heroic, *hjältemodig*, -t; -a
 high school, *läroverk*, -et; -
 higher, *högre* (comp. of *hög*)
 him, *honom*
 his, *hans*; refl. *sin*, *sitt*, *sina*
 history, *histo'ri|a*, -en; -er
 Hollander, *holländar|e*, -(e)n; -
 home, *hem*, -met; -
 hope, *hopp*, -et
 hope, *hoppas* I (dep.)
 hour, *timm|e*, -en; -ar
 house, *hus*, -et; -
 how, *hur*: *på vilket sätt*
 ~ are you? *Hur står det till?*
 Hur mår ni?
 hundred, *hundra*
 hurry, *skynda* I *sig*

I

I, *jag*
 idea, *idé*, -(e)n; -er
 get an ~, *komma på en ~*
 if, *om*
 importance, *vikt*, -en
 in, *i*
 in order to, *för att*
 in what, *var i*
 influx of tourists, *turis'tström*, -men; -mar
 information, *upplysning*, -en; -ar
 inhabited, *bebyg'g|d*, -t; -da
 inherit, *ärva* IIa
 ink, *bläck*, -et
 institution, *anstalt*, -en; -er
 institution, -en; -er

into, *in i*
 introduce, *införa* IIa
 introduction, *införande*, -t
 invigorating, *stärkande*
 ironclad, *järnklä|dd*, -tt; -da
 is, *är*
 ~ still with us, *finns ännu kvar*
 it, *det* (masc. and fem. *den*)
 its, *dess*; refl. *sin*, *sitt*, *sina*

J

janitor, *vaktmästar|e*, -(e)n; -

K

kill, *döda* I
 killed, be, *stupa* I
 kind (of), *slags* (indecl.)
 king, *konung*, -en; -ar
 kiss, *kyssa* IIb
 know, *veta*, *visste*, *vetat*
 known, *kän|d*, -t; -da

L

laboriously, *mödosamt*
 lake, *sjö*, -n; -ar
 land, *land*, -et; -
 land, *landstiga*, -steg, -stigit
 Lapland, *Lappland*
 Lapp, *lapp*, -en; -ar
 large number, *mängd*, -en, -er
 larger, *större* (comp. of *stor*)
 last, *efterst*, *sist*
 ~ of all, *sist av alla*
 ~ Sunday, *förra söndagen* (i *söndags*)
 later, *senare*
 lay, *lägga* IIa, *lade*, *lagt*
 ~ waste, *härja* I
 lean, *spenslig*, -t; -a
 less, *mindre*
 let, *läta*, *lätt*, *lätit*
 liberate, *befri'a* I
 lie, *ligga*, *läg*, *legat*
 light-blue, *ljusblå*, -tt; -a
 like, *som*, *liksom*, *såsom*
 likely, *troligt*
 it is ~, *det är ~*
 det troliga är

lip, *läpp*. -en; -ar
 little, *liten*, *litet*; pl. *små*;
 def. *lilla*(-e)
 live, *bo* III; *leva* IIa, *levde*, *levat*
 long, *lång*. -t; -a
 long for, *längta* I *efter*
 longer, *längre* (comp. of *lång*)
 look, *se*, *såg*, *sett*
 ~at, ~ på
 lose, *förlo'ra* I
 ~ oneself, ~ sig
 lower, *sänka* IIb
 lowland, *lägland*, -et; *lägländer*
 lustily, *friskt*

M

machine, *maski'n*, -en; -er
 maintain, *hävda* I
 make, *göra*, *gjorde*, *gjort*
 ~ one's own way, *bryta*(*bröt*, *brutit*)
 ~ sig sin egen väg
 man, *man*, -nen; *män*
 old ~, *gubb[e]*, -en; -ar
 maneuver, *manö'ver*, -n; *manövrer*(-rar)
 manner, *sätt*, -et; -
 many, *mång|en*, -et; -a
 map, *kart|a*, -an; -or
 marshal, *marskal'k*, -en; -ar
 may, *mödte* (*må*)
 me, *mig*
 mealtime, *mattid*, -en; -er
 mean, *bety'da* IIa; *menas* I (dep.)
 meet, *möta* IIb, *mötas* IIb (dep.); *träffa* I
 memory, *minn|e*, -et; -en
 mention, *nämna* IIa
 middle age, *medelålder*, -n
 Middle Ages, *medeltiden*
 mild, *ljum*, -t; -ma
 mile, *mil*, -en-
 military expedition, *härtag*, -et; -
 minority, *minderärighet*
 mirror, *spiegel*, -n; *speglar*
 mistaken, *misstaga*, -tög; -tagit
 moment, *ögonblick*, -et; -
 money, *penning*, -en; *pengar*, *penningar*
 more, *mer*
 most, *flesta*
 ~ of them, *de~av dem*
 mostly, *mestadels*, till största delen
 mouldy, *möglad*, -t; -de

mountain, *fjäll*, -et; -
 move, *röra* II *sig*; *flytta* I
 much, *mycket*, see *mycken*
 must, *måste*
 mutual, *geme'nsam*, -t; -ma
 my, mine, *min*, *mitt*, *mina*

N

nation, *natio'n*, -en; -er
 national, *nationell*, -t; -a
 native, *inföding*, -en; -ar
 near, i näheten av
 neighborhood, *grannskap*, -et; -
 nerve, *nerv*, -en; -er
 never, *aldrig*
 new, *ny*, -tt; -a
 "newly-baked", *nybakad*, -t; -de
 no, none, *nej*; *ing|en*, -et; -a
 no one, *ingen*
 nod, *nicka* I
 ~ their little heads, ~ på sina
 små huvuden
 north, *norr* (indecl.)
 ~ of (Denmark), ~ om (Danmark)
 North, the, *Norden*
 Norway, *Norge*
 Norwegian, *norsk*, -t; -a
 not, *inte*, *icke*, *ej*
 notary, *nota'rie*, -n; -r
 nothing, *ingenting*
 now, *nu*
 now-a-days, *nu* för tiden

O

object, *ändamål*, -et; -
 occupation, *sysselsättning*, -en; -ar
 occupy, *intaga*, -tög. -tagit
 occur, *inträffa* I; *förefalla*, -föll;
 fallit
 the idea occurred to me *jag kom på*
 den idén
 o'clock, *klockan*
 of, *av*
 officially, *officiellt*
 often, *ofta*
 oh! o. ack!
 old, *gammal*, -t; *gamla*
 ~ man, *gubb[e]*, -en; -ar

older, *äldre* (comp. of *gammal*)
 on, *på*
 once, *en gång*
 one; we, you, they, *en, ett; man*
 only, *bara, endast, ändå*
 opinion, *åsikt, -en; -er*
 or, *eller*
 oral examination, "*muntan*"
 order, *ordning, -en; -ar*
 other, *annan, annat; andra*
 ought, *böra, borde, bort*
 our, ours, *vår, -t; -a*
 out, *ut, ute*
 ~*of*, ~ *ur*
 oval, *ova'l, -t; -a*
 over, *över*
 ~*this, häröver*
 own, *eg|en, -et; -na*

P

parents, *föräl'drar* (pl. only)
 partly -- partly, *delvis* -- *delvis*
 past, *förflut'na, förgång'na*
 Sweden's ~, *Sveriges~*
 pay heed to, *uppmärksamma* I,
 ~*ga* I *uppmärksamhet* (ät)
 peculiar, *underlig, -t; -a*
 Pennsylvania, *Pennsylva'nien*
 people, *folk, -et; -människor*
 perhaps, *kanske*
 perish, *omkomma, -kom, -kommit*
 permitted, be, *få lov*
 perplexed, *villrädig, -t; -a*
 persuade, *övertala* I
 physically, *leka'mligen*
 picture, *bild, -en; -er*
 place, *ställe, -et; -en*
 instead of, i ~ för
 please, *var snäll*
 pleasant, *angenäm, -t; -a*
 Poland, *Polen*
 population, *befol'kning, -en; -ar*
 position, *ställning, -en; -ar*
 possess, *besitta* (-satt, -suttit)
 possible, *möjlig, -t; -a*
 power, *kraft, -en; -er*
 ~ to charm, *tjusningskraft, -en; -er*
 powerful, *mäktig, -t; -a*
 precisely, *precis*'s

preserve, *beva'ra* I
 primrose, *guldviva, -an; -or*
 produce, *frambringa* I
 prominent, *framstående,*
 framskjut|en, -et; -na
 Protestant, *protestantisk, -t; -a*
 prove, *bevi'sa* I
 pursue, *bedri'va, bedre'u, bedri'vit*
 pursuit, *bedri'vende, -et*

Q

quaintness, *sällsamhet, -en; -er*
 qualification, *kvalifikatio'n, -en; -er*
 quarter, *kvart, -en; -er*
 quickly, *raskt*
 more ~, *raskare, fortare*
 quite, *ganska*

R

race, *tävling, -en; -ar*
 raise, *hissa* I
 rapidly, *snabbt*
 rather, *hellre*
 ravaging, *härfjning, -en; -ar*
 reach, *uppnå* III
 ready, *färdig, -t; -a*
 really, *egen'tligen*
 receive, *erhålla, erhöll, erhållit*
 mottaga, -tug, -tagit
 recoil, *rygg|a, -ade: -at*
 ~ at nothing, ~ for ingenting
 reduce, *minska* I
 refreshing, *uppfriskande*
 regent, *riksföreständar|e, -en; -*
 regular, *bestämd, -t; -da*
 reign, *rege'ring, -en; -ar*
 reindeer herd, *renhjord, -en; -ar*
 relation, *förbin'delse, -n; -r*
 relatives, *släktning, -en; -ar*
 remember, *erinra* I *sig*
 represent, *representera* I
 request, *begä'ran* (indecl.)
 requested, *begä'r|d, -t; -da*
 return, *återkomma, -kom, -kommit*
 återlämna I
 reverently, *vördnadsslutt*
 ring, *ringa* IIa
 roar, *dundlar* -ret; -er

royal dynasty, *konungaätt*, -en; -er
 ruler, *regen't*, -en; -er
 run, *springa*, *sprang*, *sprungo*; *sprungit*
 Russia, *Ryssland*

S

same, *samma*
 save, *rädda* I
 say, *säga* IIa, *sade*, *sagt*
 Scandinavian, *skandina'visk*, -t; -a
 school-yard, *skolgård*, -en; -ar
 sea, *hav*, -et; -
 seat of learning, *lärosäte*, -t; -n
 secret, *hemlig*, -t; -a
 see, *se*, *såg*, *sett*
 seem, *tyckas* IIb (dep.)
 it seems to me, *mig tyckes*, *mig synes*
 seeress, *siersk|a*, -an; -or
 self-assurance, *självförtroende*
 send, *skicka* I
 ~away, ~ i *väg*
 severe, *svår*, -t; -a
 severed, *avbrut|en*, -et; -na
 shall, *skola*, *skall*, *skulle*; *skolat*
 she, *hon*
 shine, *skina*, *sken*, *skinit*
 ship, *skepp*, -et; -
 should, *skulle*, see *skola*
 shoulder, *axel*, -n; *axlar*
 shout, *ropa* I
 siege, *belä'gring*, -en; -ar
 "sight", *sevärdhet*, -en; -er
 signal, *signa'l*, -en -er
 simply, *helt enkelt*
 sky, *himmel*, -n; *himlar*
 sky, -n; -ar
 small, *liten*, *litet*, def. *lilla(e)*
 pl. *små*
 smile, *leende*, -t; -n
 snowdrift, *snödriv|a*, -an; -or
 so, *så*, *alltså*
 ~that, *så att*
 soldier, *solda't*, -en; -er
 some, *någon*, *något*, *några*
 someone, *någon*
 something *någonting*
 sound (of the whistle),
 visselpip|a, -an; -or
 spasmodic, *spasmo'disk*, -t; -a
 speak, *tala* I

spill, *spilla* IIa
 in spite of, *trots*
 spring, *käll|a*, -an; -or
 spring breeze, *vårfläkt*, -en; -ar
 sprinter, *hastighetslöpare*, -en; -
 stadium, *stadion* (indecl.)
 in the ~, *på* ~
 star, *stjärn|a*, -an; -or
 start, *start*, -en; -er
 state, *stat*, -en; -er
 stay, *stanna* I
 steam, *ånga* I
 step(s), *trapp|a*, -an; -or
 step up to, *kliva* (*klev*, *klivit*)
 ~ fram till
 still, *ännu*
 strain, *ton*, -en; -er
 street car, *spårvagn*, -en; -ar
 strong, *stark*, -t; -a
 strongest, *starkast*, -; -e
 studded with stars, *stjärnbeströ|dd*,
 -tt; -dda
 student, *studen't*, -en; -er
 Studentsong, *Studen'tsången*
 study, *studi|um*, -et; -er
 succeed, *lyckas* I (dep.)
 efterträda IIa
 success, *lyck|a*, -an
 meet with ~, *lyckas* I
 successful, *lycka|d*, -t; -ade
 successor to the throne,
 tronföljar|e, -en; -
 suffer, *lida*, *led*, *lidit*
 sun, *sol*, -en; -ar
 Sunday, *söndag*, -en; -ar
 sunny, *solig*, -t; -a
 support, *stödja* IIa, *stödde*, *stött*
 surely, *säkert*
 Swede, *svensk*, -en; -ar
 Sweden, *Sverige*
 Swedish, *svensk*, -t; -a
 Swedish, *svenska* (*språket*)
 Swedish-Russian, *svensk, rysk*, -t; -a

T

take, *ta(ga)*, *tog*, *tagit*; *eskort'era* I
 talk, *tala* I
 ~about (relate), ~om'
 tap, *slå*, *slog*, *slagit*
 teacher, *lärar|e*, -en; -

tell, säga, sade, sagt
 terrified, förfä'r'a|d, -t; -de
 terror, skräck, -en
 than, än
 thanks to, tack vare
 that, att
 that, den, det
 ~ one, den där
 that, som; vilken, -et; -
 the, den, det; de (prepositive article)
 the --- the, ju --- desto
 their, theirs, deras, refl. s:s, sitt, sina
 them, dem
 then, då
 theory, teori', -(e)n; -er
 there, där,
 ~is; ~are, det finns, det är
 these, dessa, de här
 they, de
 thin, tunn, tunt; -a
 think, tro III
 thinking, tänkande, -t
 this, denna, detta; den här, det här
 those, de där; dem
 threaten, hota I
 three, tre
 throne, tron, -en; -er
 through, genom
 time, tid, -en; -er
 at that ~, på den tiden
 on ~, i god tid
 tired, trött, -; -a
 to, till, att; för att
 today, i dag
 too, också
 touch on, röra IIa sig om
 towards, emot, mot
 trade, yrke, -t; -n
 travel, resa IIb
 treat, behan'dla I
 try, försö'ka IIb
 ~ one's hand at, ~ sig på
 turn, vända IIa
 twilight, skymning, -en; -ar

U

understand, förstå', -stod; -stätt
 undoubtedly, utan tvivel

united, före'na|d, -t; -de
 ~by, ~med
 university, universite't, -et; -
 until, förrän
 up, upp, uppe
 us, oss
 use, bruка I, använda IIa

V

vain,in, förgä'ves
 various, olika
 very, mycket
 victory, seg|er, -ern; -rar
 Viking expedition, vikingatåg, -et; -
 visit, besök', -et; -
 go on a ~, gå på ~

W

wait, vänta I
 ~for, ~på
 walk, gå, gick, gingo; gått
 war, krig, -et; -
 carry on ~, föra ~
 civil ~, inbördeskrig, -et; -
 war of conversion, omvändelsekrig, -et; -
 water, vatten, -net; -
 way, väg, -en; -ar
 we, vi
 well, väl, bra
 west, väst
 out ~, västerut
 what, vad, vilken, -et; -a
 when, när, då
 wherever, varhel'st
 which, som; vilken, -et; -a
 which (one), vilken, -et; -a
 who, vem; som; vilken, -et; -a
 whom, vem; vilken, -et; -a
 whose, vars; vilkens, -ets; -as
 wilderness, ödemark, -en; -er
 will, vilja, skola
 win, vinna, vann, vunno; vunnit
 windy, blåsig.-t:-a
 it is ~, det är ~
 with, med, hos
 without, utan
 woman, kvinna, -an; -or

word, *ord*, -et; -
 work, *arbeta* I
 working people, *arbetsfolk*, -et; -
 world, *värld*, -en; -ar
 would, *skulle*
 wounded, *sårad*, -t; -de
 write, *skriva*, *skrev*, *skrivit*
 wrong, *orätt*, -; -a
 be ~, *ha(va)* ~

Y
 year, *år*, -et; -
 you, *du*; *ni*
 young, *ung*, -t; -a
 your, yours, *din,ditt,dina; er, ert,*
era (eder,edert,edra)
 Z
 zeal, *nit*, -et

INDEX *

A

a, pronunciation of, §18.
 å, see §22.
 ä, see §§15, 17.
 Abbreviations, list of, page 27.
 Accent, "even", §50, note; expiratory (monosyllabic, acute or Tone I), §§47, 48, 49; musical (grave or bisyllabic, Tone II), §50.
 Accentuation, §47.
 Adjectives, form and function of, §79; indef. and def. defined, §80; indef. (strong), decl.of, §81; formation of neut.sing. and pl., specific rules for, §82; def.(weak) decl.of, §83; def.(weak) inflection of, use of prepositive article with, §84; def.(weak) use of e-forms, §85; participial adj., §85, 4; indef.decl., use of, §90; def. decl., use of, §91; def.decl. without prepositive article, §92; indeclinable, §93; compar., degrees of, §97; reg.compar., §§98, 99, 100; comparative and superlative, mutation, endings -re, -st §101; irregular, §102; in -ad, -se, -e, -isk, irreg. compar. and superlative by mera, mest; mindre, minst, §103; positive lacking, §104; compar.decl.of, §105; superl., decl.of, §106; indef.form of superl., use of, §107; def.form of superl., use of, §108; superl., omission of article with, §109; degrees of equality, inferiority, superiority, expressed, §110, notes 1 and 2; superl., relative and absolute, defined, §§111, 1, 2.
 Adverb, classes of, §298; classification of, §299; comparison of, §300; compar. irreg., §301; pronominal, §302; negative position of, 1: in principal clauses, 2: in subordinate clauses, §303; use of ja, jo, §304; gärna, §305, eller hur, inte heller, §306; English rendering of certain adverbs, §307; place where, place to which,

§308; phrases with till and i, §309; pronominal, §310; compound, §311.
 Alphabet, §2.
 Apostrophe, use of, §56.
 Articles, §63; indef.form and function of, §64; indef., use of, §65; def., postpositive form and function of, §69; postpositive with common nouns, §70; postpositive with neut.nouns, §71; postpositive, not used, §72; prepositive.form and function of, §73; prepositive omitted, §109; indefinite, use of, §117; indef., omission of, §118; indef., position of, §119; definite, use of, corresponding to English, §120; postpositive, examples of, §114.
 Attributive, see prepositive attributive, §362.

B

b, labio-dental, §27.
 Bisyllabic stress, §50.
bliva, §§245, 387.
böra, §§242, 382.

C

c, pronunciation of, §28.
 Capitals, use of, §53; in pronouns, titles, etc., §53, 4.
 Cardinal numbers, §143; notes on, §§144, 145, 146.
 Case, see noun.
 Causative, see låta, §246, 1, b.
 Comma, use of, §55.
 Compound noun, see noun; compound verb, see verb.
 Conditional sentences, classes of, defined, §280; present real, tense and mood, §281; past real, §282; perfect real, §283 and note; ellipsis supplied, §284; future more vivid, tense and mood, §285; contrary to fact, defined, §286; present contrary to fact, tense and mood, §287, note; present contrary to fact, tense and

*) The letters å, ä, ö are also listed at the end of this index.

INDEX

mood, §288; future less vivid, §289; past contrary to fact, tenses and moods in, §§290, 291 and note; elliptical sentences, §292, note; if-clause suppressed, §293, note 1; mixed, §293, note 2.

Conjunctions, classified, §344; co-ordinating, §345; subordinating, §346; notes on, §347; functioning as substantive, §348.

Consonants, classification of, interrelation of, diagram and description of, §26.

D

d, pronunciation of, §29; silent, §29, 2.

Dates, abbreviations, see punctuation, §54.

Declension, see noun and adjective.

Dependent clauses, word order in, see Word Order, §§358, 359, 360, 361, notes 1 and 2.

Deponent verbs, §§225, 226.

det, expletive, §§62, 229.

Diphthongs, old, §24; in modern Swedish, §25.

Double Tone (Tone II), defined, use of, §50.

E

e, pronunciation of, mid-front-half close, §11; e, mute, §14; e-sub-junctive, not formed, §267, note.

Expletive, see det.

F

f, pronunciation of, §30.

få, §246, 2.

G

g, pronunciation of, §31.

Gender, §57; notes on, §116.

Genitive, §§122, 123, 124, (Saxon) §67, 2, note.

h, pronunciation of, §32; silent, §32, 2.

hava, auxiliary verb, §236; conjugation of, §374; omission of, §86.

I

i, pronunciation of, §9.

Imperative, form and def. of, §251.

Imperfect (= past), see verb.

Impersonal passive, §211, 3, note 3.

Impersonal verb, see verb impersonal, §227.

Indefinites (pronoun, adjective), list of, §188.

Indirect discourse, see verb.

Infinitive, forms of, §252; use of, §253; without att after modal auxiliaries, §253,a; without att, accusative with infinitive, §253,b; without att, nominative with infin., §253,c; without att in contractions, §253,d; infin. with att, §254,a,b; infin. expressing purpose, §254,c, note 3.

Interjections, definition, classification of, §353; list of most common, §354.

Intonation, §48.

J

j, anterior-back-palatal-spirant 1. English equivalent, 2. in words of French origin, §33.

K

k, unvoiced-back-palatal-explosive 1. English equivalent, 2. unvoiced fricative, §34.

komma, §§246, 3, 388.

kunna, §240, conj. of, §380.

L

l, voiced-dental-lateral 1. pronunciation of, 2. silent, §35.

INDEX

Loan words, pronunciation of, §47,c;
see also §89, 4-8.
låta, §§246,1, 388.

M

m, voiced-labial-nasal
1. English equivalent, 2.unvoiced,
§36.
Modal verbs, see verb, auxiliary,
§§234,235 ff.
Monosyllabic stress, §49.
Mutation, §§101, 89,2, 202.
må, matte, §§238, 268.
måste, §239, conjugation of, §378.

N

n, voiced-dental-nasal
1. English equivalent, 2. in com-
bination with other letters, §37.
Negatives, position of, §303.
**Noun, classification of; the inde-
finite noun, §66; cases of, de-
fined, §67; gender of and notes on,
§116; compound nouns, §47,1b, 2a,
b; accentuation of, §50,2; indef.
and def. decl. of: First decl.,
§74; membership of, §75; second
decl., §77; membership of, §78;
irreg. pl., §78,4; third decl.,
§88; membership of, §89; irreg.
pl., §89,11; fourth decl., §95;
membership of, §96; fifth decl.,
§113; membership of, §115; foreign
names, §115,2,c; nouns of meas-
ure, §115,2,d; irreg., §115,3;
notes on gender, §116; cases of,
§§59,121; genitive, formation
and use of, §122; special use of
s-genitive, §123; use of with
**till, §124; partitive, §125; de-
scriptive, §126.****

Number, §58. See also noun.

**Numbers, cardinal, §143; ordinal,
§147.**

O

o, high-back-extremely-close, §23.
o, ä, mid-back-half-open-rounded,

short, §19.
o, ä, mid-back-half-close, §22.
ö, see §§12, 16, 20.
om (prep.), §332; with verbs of
asking, §332,d; (conjunction),
conditional, §346,7; interroga-
tive, §346,9; (adverb), §347.
**omfattning, see prepositive attri-
butive, §362.**
**Ordinal numbers, §147; notes on,
§§148,149.**

P

**p, labial-explosive, English equi-
valent, silent, §38.**
Participle, present, form of, §255;
indeclinable, exceptions, §256;
use of, §257; past and supine,
§258; past, inflection and use
of, §259; examples of, §260.
**Passive, see verb, formation of,
§204; apparent, §211,3, note 2;**
impersonal, §211,3, note 3.
Past (= imperfect) tense, see verb.
Perfect tense, form of, see verb.
**Personification, abstract concepts,
gender of, §116,5.**
Phonetic characters, §3.
Pluperfect (= past perfect), see verb.
Plural, see noun.
Possessives, see pronouns.
**Prefixes, inseparable, §217; separ-
able, §§218,219; stress of, §219,
notes 1,2,3; see also verb.**
**Prepositions, list of, §316; posi-
tion of, §317; régime of, §§318,
323; before word governed, §319;
after word governed, §§320,321
and note; repetition of, §322;
use of, §§324 - 339.**
**Prepositional attributive, defined,
§362.**
Present tense, see verb.
Principal parts, see verb.
**Pronouns, classes of, §156; person-
al, declined, §157; personal,
notes on, §§158 - 165; reflexive,
sig, §166; reciprocal, varandra,
§167; possessive, hans, henne,**

INDEX

dess, deras, §168 and note; demonstratives (pronoun, adjective), den, denna(-e), etc., forms and use of, §169; densamma(-e), samma, §170; sådan, dylik, §171; determinatives (pronoun, adjective), §172; (pronoun, adjective) relative som, §180; position of preposition with, §180, note 1; use of after certain pronouns, §182; vilken, §181; after certain pronouns, §182; vilket, något som, function defined, §183; vad, use of, §184; interrogative forms and function of, §§185, 186, 187; vilken in exclamations, §187; pronouns (adj.), indef., §188; indef., distinguished from adj., §189; indef., remarks on and use of, §§190-197.

Pronunciation, see Phonology, §§1-52.

Proper nouns, see capitals, §53, 1, words not capitalized, §53, 5.

Punctuation, §54; other orthographic signs, §56.

Q

q, posterior-palatal-explosive, qu = kv, §39.

Quantity, vocalic and consonantal length and stress, how indicated, §7, note; vowel sounds, description of, §§8-23; diphthongs, §§24, 25; consonants, §§26-46.

R

r, voiced-supradental-tremulant 1. English equivalent, 2. followed by d, l, n, s, t, §40.

S

s, unvoiced-spirant, §41.

Single tone (Tone I) defined; use of, §49.

Singular, see noun.

skola, §§237 ff., 270, note 2, 274, 275, note 1; conj. of, §375.

Sounds and their symbols, §1. Speech-sounds, vowels, description of, §§8-23.

Stress, degrees of, §47; stress and intonation in connected speech, §52.

Subjunctive, defined, §266; present e-subjunctive, §267; present periphrastic form of, §268; past e-form of, §269; past periphrastic form of, §270; present, use of in wishes, §271; hortatory, §272; concessive, §273; of modified assertion, §274; of purpose, §275, notes 1 and 2.

Supine, defined, use of, §261.

Syllabification, §6.

T

t, pronunciation of, English equivalent, 1. unvoiced dental stop, 2. in the combinations -ti- and -tj-, §42.

Tenses, in contrary to fact conditions, §§288, 291.

Titles and forms of address, pages 25-27.

Tone I and Tone II contrasted, §51.

U

u, mid-front-half-close, §13; mid-back-half-close, §21.

V

v, voiced-labio-dental-spirant English equivalent, §43.

Verb, Alphabetical list of, §388; notes on, page 219; agreement of subject with, pages 68A, 68B; indirect discourse, pages 184A, 184B; auxiliary hava, omission of, §86; compounds: inseparable, §217; (ilandsätta, åsidosätta); i land; å sido, §217, note 2; separable, adverb and preposition prefix, §219; separable with or without

INDEX

difference in meaning, §219,1,2; separable, adjective prefix, §218; separable, s-passive and periphrastic passive, synopsis of, §220; conjugation of present and imperfect indic. of vara, hava, sitta, §60; progressive form lacking, §60,1; singular for plural form, §60,2; conjugations of, principal parts of, §128; first conjugation, membership of, §141; irregular, §142; second conjugation, IIa, IIb, §154; irregular verbs of, §155; third conjugation, §177; irregular, §178; fourth (strong) conjugation, characteristics of, §202; deponent, defined, synopsis of, §225; deponent, most common, list of, §226; imperative form and definition of, §251; impersonal, form and function of, defined, §227; classification and synopsis of, §228; passive s-formation of, §204; use and agent of, §205, note 2; periphrastic (auxiliary), formation of, §206; auxil. bliva, (vara), vara, defined, §207; classified according to function(duration, transition), §208; examples of duration, transition, §209; contrasted, passive of, §§210,211; real and apparent passive, defined, §211, note 2; active infinitive, Swedish, passive infin., English, §211, note 5; låta + infinitive, §211, note 5; passive, substitute for, §211, note 6; personal endings of the four conjugations, supine and participle, §129; present and past indic. of bliva, skola, vilja, page 39; reflexive, defined, §216; occasionally reflexive, §216,1; always reflexive, §216,2; reflexive, synopsis of, page 112 ff., strong and weak formation defined, §140; strong, classified, §203; survey of personal endings, supine, participle, §129; present indicative, word order, normal, §61,1; inverted, use of, §130; past (imperfect) indicative, use of, §131; present perfect, use of, §132; past perfect (= pluperfect), use of, §133; future, use of, §134; future perfect, use and force of, §135; verbals, position of, §361; auxiliary: list of, principal parts of, §234; a, temporal, b, modal, c, passive-forming, §235; hava, §236; skola, §237; må, mätte, §238; måste, §239; kunna, §240; vilja, §241; böra, §242; vara, §243; varda, §244; bliva, §245; verbs, other with auxiliary function: 1, låta, 2, få, 3, komma + infin., a, b, usage defined, §246, note; paradigms, §§366-387; first conjugation, active and passive, all tenses and moods, §§366,367 notes; second conjugation, active, passive, all tenses and moods, §§368, 369, notes; third conjugation, active, passive, all tenses and moods, §§370,371, notes; fourth conjugation (strong), active and passive, all tenses and moods, §§372, 373, notes; auxiliary verbs: hava, all tenses and moods, §374; skola, tenses and moods, §375, notes; må, comment on, §376; mätte, comment on, §377; måste, §378, notes; månde, comment on, §379; kunna, all tenses and moods, §380; vilja, all tenses and moods, §381; böra, §382; tör, comment on, §383; lär, comment on, §384; vara, all tenses and moods, §385.

Vowel Triangle, §4; description and explanation of, §5.

Verbals, position of, §361.

Vowel sounds, classification of, §4.

Verbal forms, progressive, §60,1.

W

w, pronunciation of, w = v, §44.

INDEX

§61,2; defined, §358; use of, sing; z, replaced by s, §46.
 §359; in principal and subordinate clauses, §360; in questions,
 §360,1.

ä, see §22.

X

x, English equivalent, §45; in
 combination with other letters,
 §45.

Y

y, pronunciation of, §10.

Z

z, pronunciation = English s in

Ä

ä, e, mid-front-half-open, §15.
 ä, e, mid-front-half-open-broad,
 §17.

Ä**Ö**

ö, mid-front-half-close, §12.
 ö, mid-front-half-open, §16.
 ö, mid-back-half-open-broad, §20.

